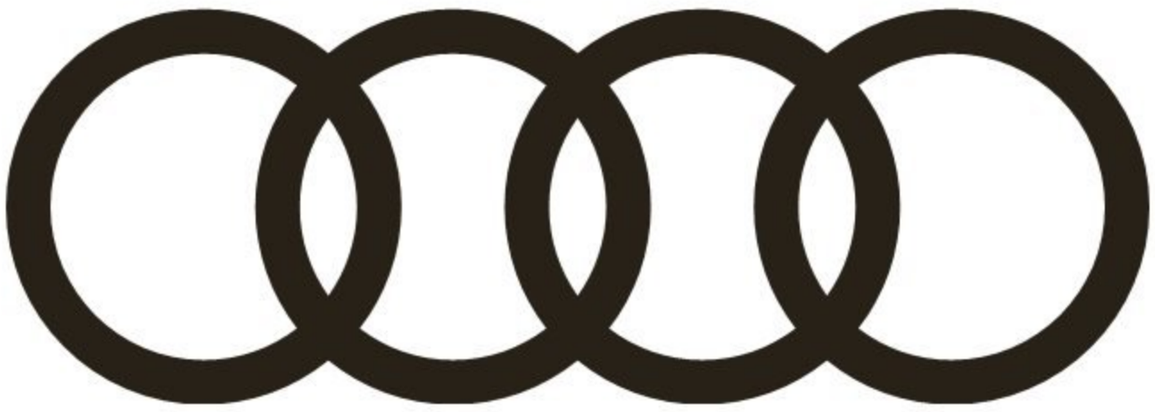


Owner's Manual

2019 A7

Audi Vorsprung durch Technik

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi – we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment that a vehicle has to offer. We recommend that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we provide many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle, and how to maintain your vehicle's value. We also give you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

4K8012721BA

Table of contents

About this Owner's Manual 5

Summary 6
Quick access 6
Cockpit 6
Indicator lights overview 7

Display and operation 11
Instrument cluster 11
Instrument cluster overview 11
Loading a personal profile 12
Operating 12
Switching views 13
Coolant temperature display 13
Tachometer 14
Odometer 14
Outside temperature display 14
Engine oil temperature indicator 14
Vehicle functions 15

Touch displays 16
General touch display operation 16
Multi Media Interface 18

Head-up display 24
Description 24

Voice recognition system 25
General information 25
Operating 25
External voice operation 26

Global functions 27
Additional function buttons 27

Starting and driving 28
Personalization 28
User 28

Opening and closing 30
Central locking 30
Keys 34
Luggage compartment lid 38
Child safety lock 41
Power windows 42
Panoramic glass roof 43
Garage door opener 44

Lights and Vision 47
Exterior lighting 47
Interior lighting 51
Vision 52
Windshield wipers 54
Digital compass 56

Sitting correctly and safely 58
Correct passenger seating position 58
Front seats 58
Steering wheel 61
Head restraints 63
Safety belts 64
Memory function 67
Airbag system 67
Child safety seats 72

Stowing and using 78
Power sources 78
Cup holders 78
Roof rack 79
Storage and compartments 79
Luggage compartment 80

Warm and cold 84
Climate control system 84

Driving 88
Engine start 88
When driving 90
Drive system 95
Start/Stop system 96
Brakes 97
Electromechanical parking brake 99
Special driving situations 102

Driving dynamic 103
Audi drive select 103
Suspension 104
Steering 105
All wheel drive (quattro) 106
Electronic Stabilization Control 107
Rear spoiler 109

Trailer towing 110
Driving with a trailer 110

Assist systems 113
Assist systems 113
General information 113
Surrounding area detection 114
Switching the systems on and off 116

Driving information 118
Speed warning system 118
Camera-based traffic sign recognition . . . 118
Traffic light information 120
Night vision assist 121

Driver assistance 124
Cruise control system 124
Efficiency assist 125
Adaptive cruise assist 129
Distance warning 137
Lane departure warning 137
Audi pre sense 139
Side assist and exit warning system 143
Intersection assistant 146
Emergency assist 147

Parking and maneuvering 149
Introduction 149
Parking system plus 149
Rearview camera and peripheral cameras . 151
Rear cross-traffic assist 155
Adjusting the parking aids 156

Infotainment system 157
Telephone 157
Introduction 157
Setup 158
Using the Audi phone box 161
Using the telephone 162
Messages 167
Settings 169
Instrument cluster 171
Troubleshooting 172

Audi connect 173
Introduction 173
Audi connect Infotainment 173
Audi connect Infotainment services 174
Audi connect vehicle control services 175
Settings 176
Troubleshooting 178

Emergency call 179
Introduction 179
Emergency call 179
Online roadside assistance 180

Navigation 181
Opening navigation 181
myAudi Navigation 181
Entering a destination 182
Canceling route guidance 186
Map 187
Personal route assistance 189
Alternative routes 189
Additional functions 190
Satellite map 191
Map update 192
Traffic information 193
Options and settings 194
Troubleshooting 196

Radio 197
Opening the radio 197
Radio functions 198
Options and settings 202
Troubleshooting 203

Media 204
General information 204
SD card reader 204
DVD drive 204
Bluetooth audio player 205
Online media 206
Multimedia connections 207
Playing media 208
Options and settings 212
Supported media and file formats 214
Troubleshooting 215

Audi smartphone interface 216
Setup 216
Troubleshooting 217

Additional settings 218
System settings 218
Connected devices 219
Legal information 220

4K8012721BA

Maintenance and Care 222
Checking and Filling 222
Fuel 222
Refueling 223
Catalytic converter 226
Engine compartment 226
Engine oil 230
Cooling system 233
Brake fluid 235
Electrical system 236
Battery 236
Windshield washer system 238
Service interval display 239

Wheels 240
Wheels and Tires 240
Tire pressure monitoring system 257

Care and cleaning 260
General information 260
Car washes 260
Cleaning and care information 261
Taking your vehicle out of service 265

Do It Yourself 266
Emergency assistance 266
General information 266
Equipment 266
Tire mobility kit 266
Changing a tire 268
Space-saving spare tire 272
Jump starting 272
Towing 274

Fuses and bulbs 277
Fuses 277
Bulbs 281

Customer information 282
Data privacy 282
Image recording 282
Data memories 282
Transmitted information 283

Accessories and technical modifications 286
Warranty 286
Audi Literature Shop 286
Driving in other countries 286
Maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications 286
Accessories and parts 288
Reporting Safety Defects 288
Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems 289

Technical data 291
Identification data 291
Vehicle data 291

Index 293

This Owner's Manual applies to all versions of this model. It contains important information, tips, suggestions, and warnings for using your vehicle.

Keep this manual and any other applicable documents in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example “Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system”. Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk “*”.

The **illustrations** in this manual are a guide. Some of the details in your vehicle may differ from the illustration.

All **directions**, such as “left”, “right”, “front” and “rear”, are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional equipment or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING” within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

4K8012721BA

Quick access

Cockpit

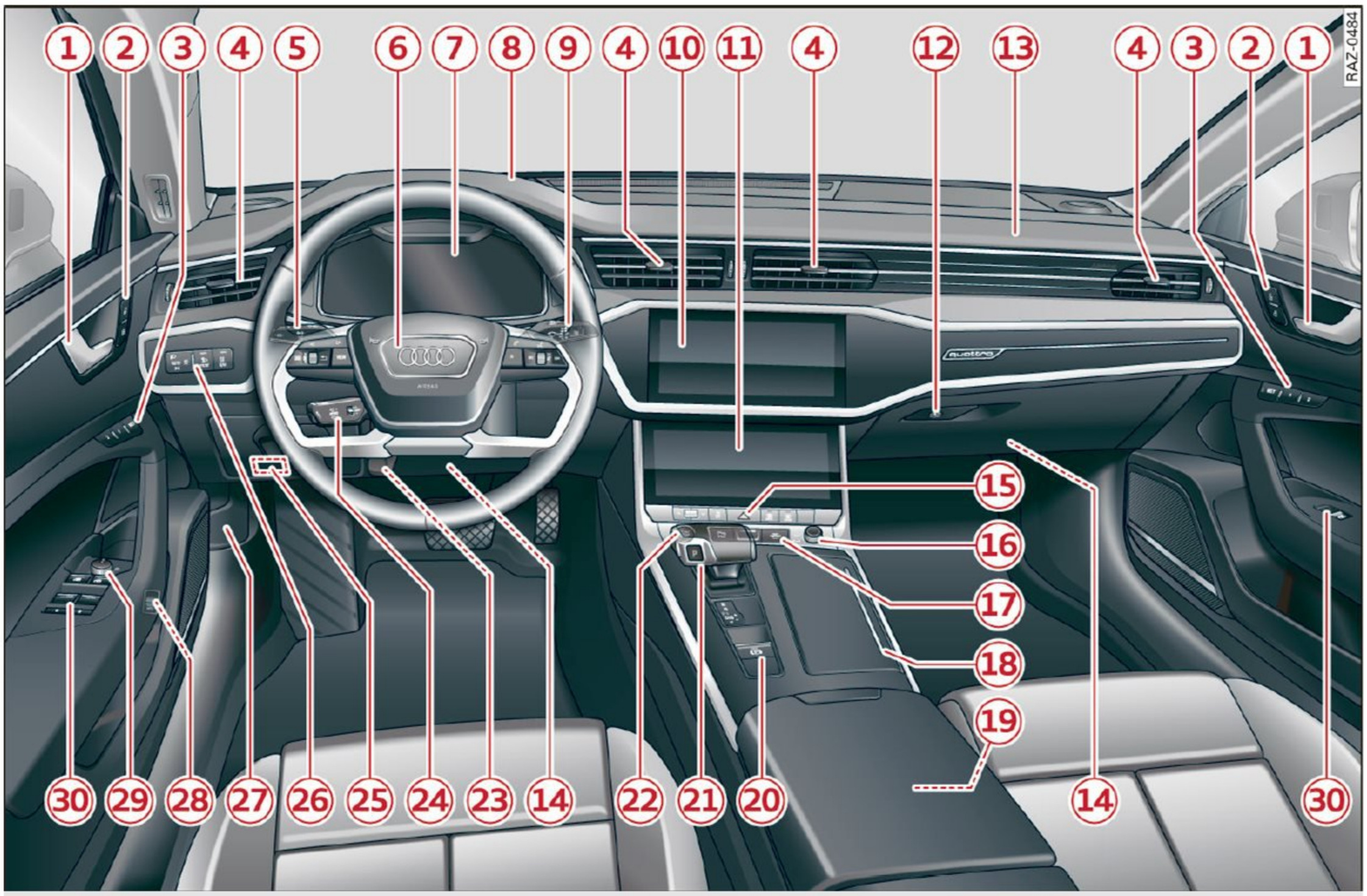


Fig. 1 Cockpit

① Door handle
② Central locking switch 32
③ Memory function buttons 67
④ Vent
⑤ Lever for:
– Turn signals and high beams 48
– High beam assistant 48
– Lane guidance 132
⑥ Multifunction steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag 67
– Driver information system controls 12
– Audio/video, telephone, navigation, and voice recognition controls 27
– Shift paddles 92
⑦ Instrument cluster 11
⑧ Head-up display 24
⑨ Windshield washer system lever . . 54
⑩ Upper display 18
⑪ Lower display 18
⑫ Lockable glove compartment with:
– CD/DVD drive 204
– Switch for cooled glove compartment 79
⑬ Front passenger's airbag 67
⑭ Knee airbag 67
⑮ Depending on equipment, buttons for:
– drive select 103
– Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 108
– Emergency flashers 50
– Defrosting 84
– Rear window defogger 84
⑯ MMI On/Off button 18, 27
⑰ Depending on equipment, buttons for:
– Parking system . . . . . 149 ▶

– Driver assistance systems 116

⑱ Depending on equipment:

– Cup holders 78
– Socket 78
– Vehicle key holder

⑲ Starting the engine when there is a malfunction 88

⑳ Electromechanical parking brake button 99

㉑ Automatic transmission selector lever 90

㉒ START ENGINE STOP button 88

㉓ Steering wheel adjustment 62

㉔ Lever for:

– Cruise control system 124
– Adaptive cruise assist 129

㉕ Data link connector for On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) 282

㉖ Buttons for:

– Lights 47
– All-weather lights 47
– Rear fog lights 47

㉗ Hood release 228

㉘ Luggage compartment lid button . 38

㉙ Exterior mirror adjustment 52

㉚ Buttons for:

– Power windows 42
– Child safety lock 41

Tips

Some the equipment listed here is only installed in certain models or is available as an option.

Indicator lights overview

Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions.

With some indicator lights, messages may appear and warning signals may sound. The indicator lights and messages may be covered by other displays. To show them again, select the second tab for messages with the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 12*.

Some indicator lights in the display can display in several colors.

⚠ Central indicator light

If the ⚠ or ⚠ indicator light turns on, check the message in the instrument cluster.

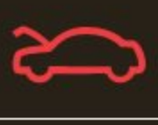
Overview

Some indicator lights turn on briefly as a function check when you switch the ignition on. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these indicator lights does not turn on, there is a malfunction in that system.

The following indicator lights may be available, depending on the vehicle equipment:

Red indicator lights

⚠	Central indicator light ✓ ⇨ *page 7*
(P)	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 101*
PARK	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 101*
(!)	Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 98*, ⇨ *page 101* ⇨ *page 235*
BRAKE	Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 98*, ⇨ *page 101* ⇨ *page 235*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 233*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 230*
MIN	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇨ *page 230*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 236*
	Safety belt ✓ ⇨ *page 65*
!	Steering ✓ ⇨ *page 105*

	Steering lock ⇨ *page 105*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 89*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 94*
	Hood ⇨ *page 229*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 135*
	Driver intervention request ⇨ *page 135*
	Distance warning ⇨ *page 137*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 138*
	Audi pre sense ⇨ *page 140*, Audi pre sense ⇨ *page 146*
	Audi pre sense ⇨ *page 143*
	Emergency assist ⇨ *page 147*
	Night vision assist ⇨ *page 122*
	Night vision assist ⇨ *page 122*
	Air suspension ⇨ *page 104*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 109*
	Loose wheel warning ⇨ *page 255*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 89*

Yellow indicator lights

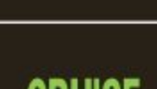
	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 7*
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) ✓ ⇨ *page 226*

	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 107*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 107*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ⇨ *page 108*
	Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 109*
	Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 109*
	Safety systems ✓ ⇨ *page 68*
	Brake system ⇨ *page 98*
	Brake pads ⇨ *page 98*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 101*
	Door lock ⇨ *page 32*
	Tire pressure ✓ ⇨ *page 257*
	Tire pressure ⇨ *page 257*
	Loose wheel warning ⇨ *page 255*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 89*
	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 14*
	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇨ *page 230*
	Engine oil level (MAX) ⇨ *page 230*
	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 230*
	Engine warm-up request ⇨ *page 231*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 236*

	Tank system ⇨ *page 224*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 239*
	Windshield wipers ⇨ *page 56*
	Keys ⇨ *page 89*
	Battery in vehicle key ⇨ *page 36*
	Bulb failure indicator ⇨ *page 51*
	Adaptive light ⇨ *page 51*
	Light/rain sensor ⇨ *page 51*, ⇨ *page 56*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 94*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 105*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 89*
	Steering ⇨ *page 105*
	Air suspension ⇨ *page 104*
	Suspension control ⇨ *page 104*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 109*
	All wheel drive, Sport differential ⇨ *page 107*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 136*
	Distance warning ⇨ *page 137*
	Audi pre sense ⇨ *page 143*
	Emergency assist ⇨ *page 147*

	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 139*
	Side assist ⇨ *page 146*
	Intersection assistant ⇨ *page 146*
	Night vision assist ⇨ *page 123*
	Parking system plus ⇨ *page 150*
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇨ *page 155*

Other indicator lights

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 48*
	Camera-based traffic sign recognition ⇨ *page 119*
	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 124*
	Pedestrian protection system ⇨ *page 226*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 130*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 136*, Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 129*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 130*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 130*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 130*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 130*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 130*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 130*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 130*

	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 133*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 125*
50	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 125*
km/h	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 125*
MPH	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 125*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 125*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 125*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 125*
	Distance warning ⇨ *page 137*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 138*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 138*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 139*
	Side assist ⇨ *page 146*
	Door lock ⇨ *page 32*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 101*
PARK BRAKE	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 101*
	Hill hold assist ⇨ *page 101*
	Start/Stop system ⇨ *page 96*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 94*
	Keys ⇨ *page 89*
	Air suspension ⇨ *page 104*

	Audi pre sense ✓ ⇨ *page 143*
	Intersection assistant ⇨ *page 146*
Km/h	Speed warning system ⇨ *page 118*
MPH	Speed warning system ⇨ *page 118*
	Steering ⇨ *page 105*
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇨ *page 155*
OLED	OLED tail lights ⇨ *page 51*
	Low beam headlight ⇨ *page 47*
	Parking light ⇨ *page 47*
	High beams ⇨ *page 48*
AUTO	High beam assistant ⇨ *page 48*
AUTO	High beam assistant ⇨ *page 48*
 AUTO	Laser lights ⇨ *page 49*
 	Child safety lock ⇨ *page 41*

Instrument cluster

Instrument cluster overview



Fig. 2 Instrument cluster overview (Audi virtual cockpit)



Fig. 3 Instrument cluster overview (analog)

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following items may appear in the instrument cluster:

① Display
– Engine coolant temperature 13
② Left dial
– Tachometer 14
③ Tab area 12
④ Central area 12
⑤ Status line (one or two lines)
⑥ Right dial
– Convenience display
– Speedometer
⑦ Fuel level 224
⑧ Right additional display with speedometer
⑨ Left additional display with:
– Gear 90
– Audi drive select mode 103

Tips

– The following pages primarily show illustrations of the Audi virtual cockpit*. The appearance or the location of the items shown may differ in an analog instrument cluster.
– You can select the units used for temperature, speed, and other measurements in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 218*.

4K8012721BA

– If there is a malfunction in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer display. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible.
– Certain instrument cluster content can also be displayed in the head-up display* ⇨ *page 24*.
– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.
– Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster: When the lights are switched off and the ignition is switched on, the instrument illumination (needles and gauges) will switch on. The illumination for the gauges reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the low beams on at the appropriate time.

Loading a personal profile



Fig. 4 Instrument cluster: loading a personal profile

You can manage personal profiles in the MMI ⇨ *page 28*. Before driving, you can select your personal profile in the instrument cluster and apply customized vehicle settings, such as the seat position.

Requirement: the driver's door must have been opened and the ignition must not be switched on.

- ▸ Confirm the displayed profile ①, or
- ▸ To load another profile, select and confirm **Switch profile** ②.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired profile. The user-specific settings will load.
- ▸ To cancel the seat, mirror, and steering column adjustment, select **Cancel**.

Tips

For more information and usage options for personal profiles, see ⇨ *page 28*.

Operating

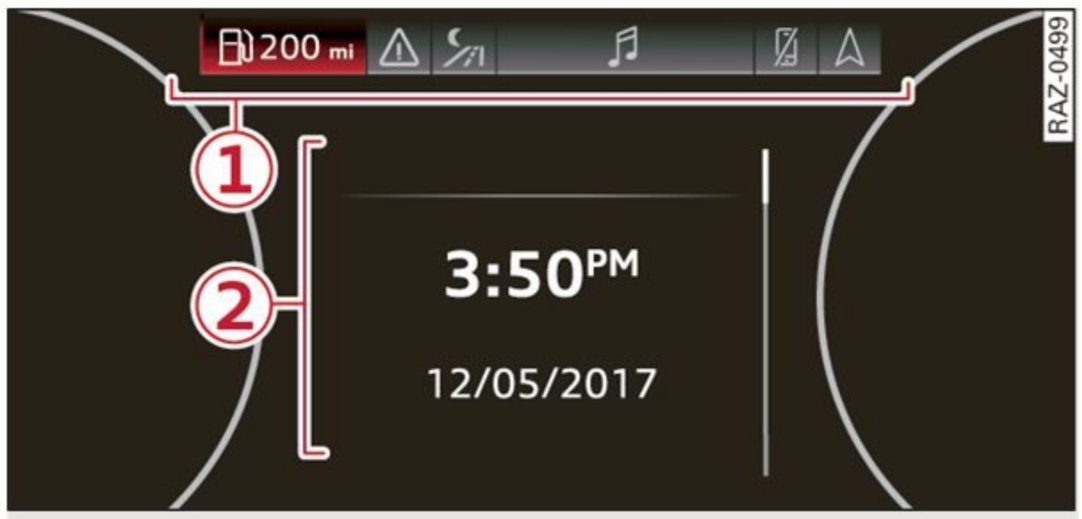


Fig. 5 Driver information system display

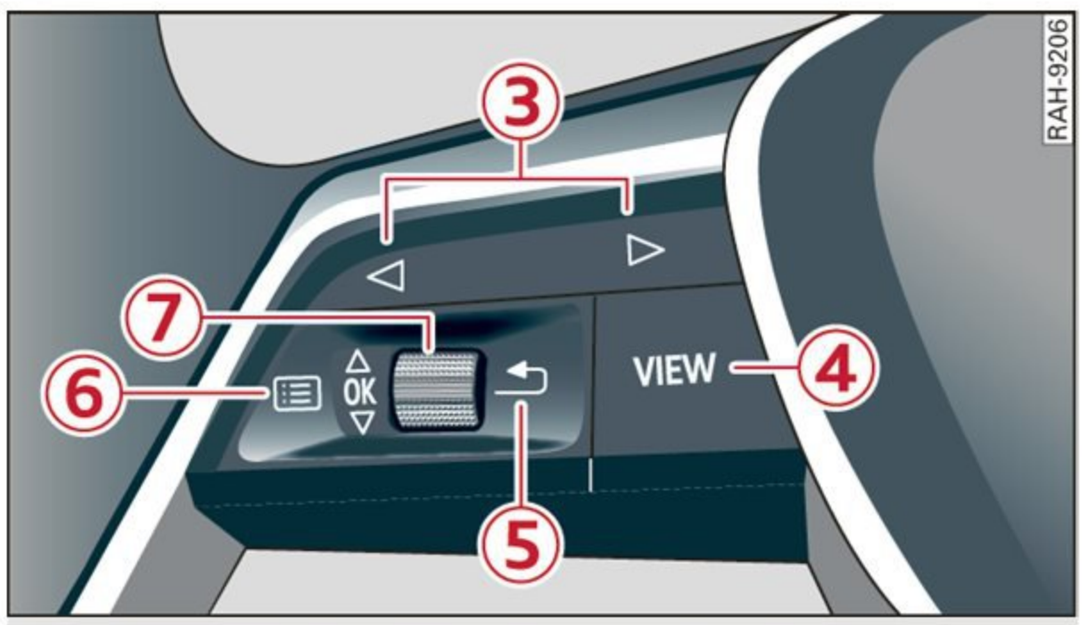


Fig. 6 Left side of multifunction steering wheel

Information is organized within various tabs ① in the instrument cluster. The tab contents are displayed in the central area ②.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

Selecting a tab

- ▸ Press the ◁/ ▷ button ③ repeatedly until the desired tab is selected.

Returning to functions at higher levels

- ▸ Press the ⮌ button ⑤.

Opening and closing the menu

- ▸ Press the ☰ button ⑥.

Selecting and confirming a function

Requirement: a menu or list must be displayed.

- ▸ To select a function, turn the left thumbwheel ⑦ to the desired function.
- ▸ To confirm a selection, press the left thumbwheel ⑦.

Change view

▸ Press the VIEW button ④ ⇨ *page 13*.

The following tabs may be available, depending on vehicle equipment:

First tab	Vehicle functions ⇨ *page 15*
Second tab	Driver messages (this is only displayed if at least one indicator light/message is being displayed)
Third tab	Night vision assist (this is only displayed if the night vision assist has been activated) ⇨ *page 121*
Fourth tab	Radio ⇨ *page 197*
	Media ⇨ *page 208*
Fifth tab	Telephone ⇨ *page 171*
Sixth tab	Navigation ⇨ *page 181*

Switching views

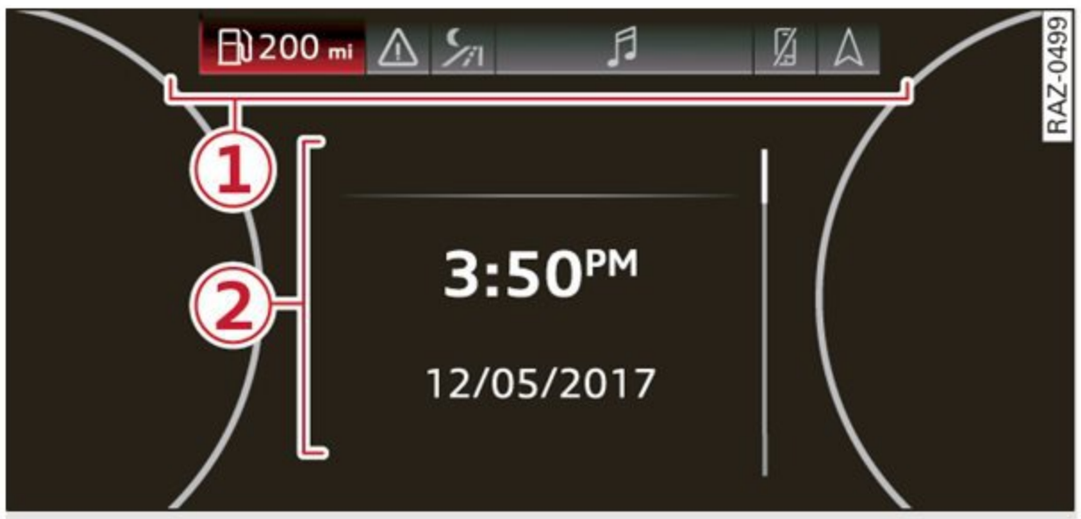


Fig. 7 -Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit-Classic view



Fig. 8 -Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit-Enhanced view

Change view

▸ Press the VIEW button to switch between the default view ⇨ *fig. 7* and the enhanced view ⇨ *fig. 8*.

Adjusting the additional display

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the additional displays that can be selected may vary.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Virtual cockpit** > **Additional display**.
▸ Select the desired additional display.

Reducing the display

▸ Select on the instrument cluster: vehicle functions tab > ☰ button > **Reduced display**.

Coolant temperature display

The coolant temperature display ① ⇨ *page 11* only functions when the ignition is switched on. To reduce the risk of engine damage, please observe the following notes about the temperature ranges.

Cold range

If only the LEDs at the bottom of the gauge turn on, the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration, and heavy engine loads.

Normal range

The engine has reached its operating temperature once the LEDs up to the center of the gauge turn on. If the indicator light in the instrument cluster display turns on, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 233*.

Note

– Auxiliary headlights and other accessories in front of the air intake impair the cooling effect of the coolant. This increases the risk of the engine overheating during high outside temperatures and heavy engine load.
– The front spoiler also helps to distribute cooling air correctly while driving. If the spoiler is damaged, the cooling effect will be impaired and the risk of the engine overheating will increase. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tachometer

The tachometer (2) ⇨ *page 11* displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM). The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in. Before reaching the red zone, you should shift into the next higher gear, select the "D" or "S" gear lever position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Engine speed limitation

If the indicator light turns on, the engine will be automatically limited to the RPM displayed in the instrument cluster. This protects the engine from overheating.

The engine speed limitation deactivates once the engine is no longer in the critical temperature range and you have released the accelerator pedal.

If the engine speed limitation was activated by an engine control malfunction, the indicator light also turns on. Make sure the engine speed does not go above the speed displayed, for example when downshifting. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Note

The needle in the tachometer may only be in the red area of the gauge for a short period of time before there is a risk of damaging the engine. The location where the red zone begins varies depending on the engine.

Odometer

The trip odometer and odometer are displayed in the status line (5) ⇨ *page 11*.

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances. The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

Resetting the trip odometer

- Select on the instrument cluster: vehicle functions tab > ☰ button > **Reset mi**.

Outside temperature display

The outside temperature is displayed in the status line (5) ⇨ *page 11*.

If your vehicle is stationary or if you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed in the instrument cluster may be slightly higher than the actual temperature outside due to heat radiating from the engine.

At temperatures below 41 °F (+5 °C), a snowflake symbol appears in front of the temperature display ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Do not assume the roads are free of ice based on the outside temperature display. Be aware that there may be ice on roads even when the outside temperature is around 41 °F (+5 °C) and that ice can increase the risk of accidents.

Engine oil temperature indicator

Applies to: vehicles with engine oil temperature indicator

The engine oil temperature is only displayed in the enhanced view.

When engine oil temperatures are low, the display --- °F (--- °C) appears in the instrument cluster. The engine has reached its operating temperature when the engine oil temperature is between 176 °F (80 °C) and 248 °F (120 °C) under normal driving conditions. The engine oil temperature may be higher if there is heavy engine load and high temperatures outside. This is not a cause for concern as long as the ⇨ *page 230* or ⇨ *page 230* indicator lights do not turn on.

Vehicle functions

Overview

The trip computer is displayed in the first tab of the driver information system. Additional vehicle functions can be accessed depending on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Press the ☰ button on the multifunction steering wheel.

– On-board computer ⇨ *page 15*
– Reduced display ⇨ *page 13*
– Reset trip odometer ⇨ *page 14*

On-board computer

Resetting values to zero

Requirement: the **Consumption**, **Short-term memory**, or **Long-term memory** display must be selected.

▸ To reset the values in one of the memories to zero, press and hold the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel for one second, or
▸ Press the ☰ button on the multifunction steering wheel and select **Reset mi**.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can call up the following displays in the on-board computer one at a time by turning the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel:

– Time and date ⇨ *page 218*
– Digital speedometer
– Average consumption ⇨ *page 15*
– Short-term memory overview
– Long-term memory overview
– Energy consumers ⇨ *page 15*
– Driver assistance
– Traffic sign recognition ⇨ *page 118*

Short-term memory and long-term memory

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values will be included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

Average consumption

The current fuel consumption can be shown using a bar graph. The average consumption stored in the short-term memory is also displayed. If the bar is green, your vehicle is saving fuel using the following methods:

– **Recuperation**: electrical energy can be stored in the vehicle battery when the vehicle is coasting or driving downhill. The bar will move toward .

Energy consumers

The **Energy consumers** view lists other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption. The display shows up to three equipment items. The equipment using the most power is listed first. If more than three items using power are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most power is displayed. A gauge also shows the current total consumption of all other equipment.

Tips

The date, time of day, and time and date format can be set in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 218*.

Touch displays

General touch display operation

General information

Applies to: touch displays

The touch display is controlled through the touchscreen. Operation is very similar to operating a smartphone.

All touch displays in the vehicle can be operated with the gestures described in the following information.

Tips

Certain gestures may not be available on all touch displays or in every menu.

Pressing

Applies to: touch displays

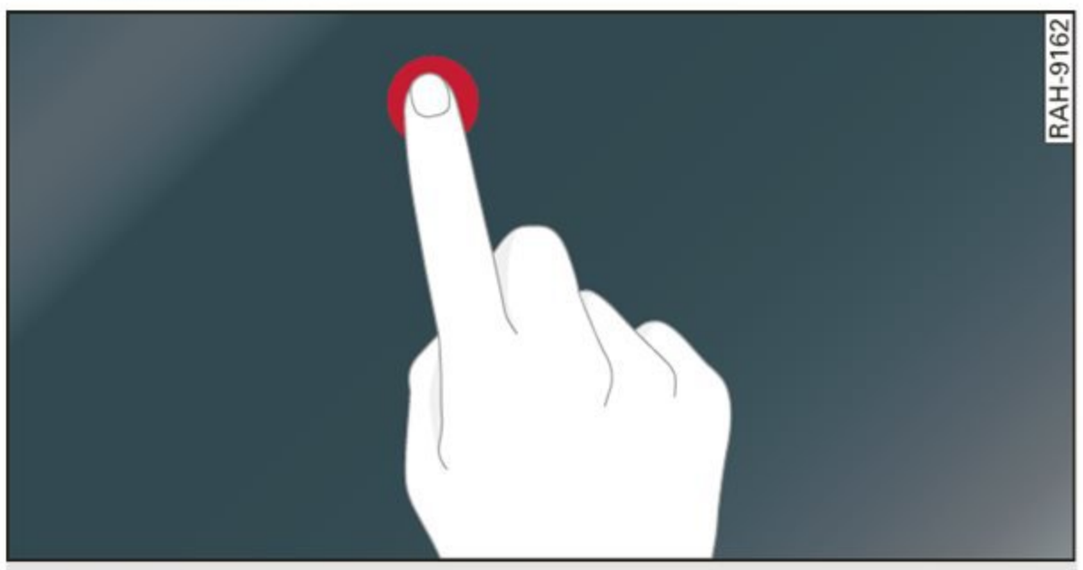


Fig. 9 Touch display: pressing

Selecting a function or button

▸ Press the desired function or button.

Pressing and holding

Applies to: touch displays

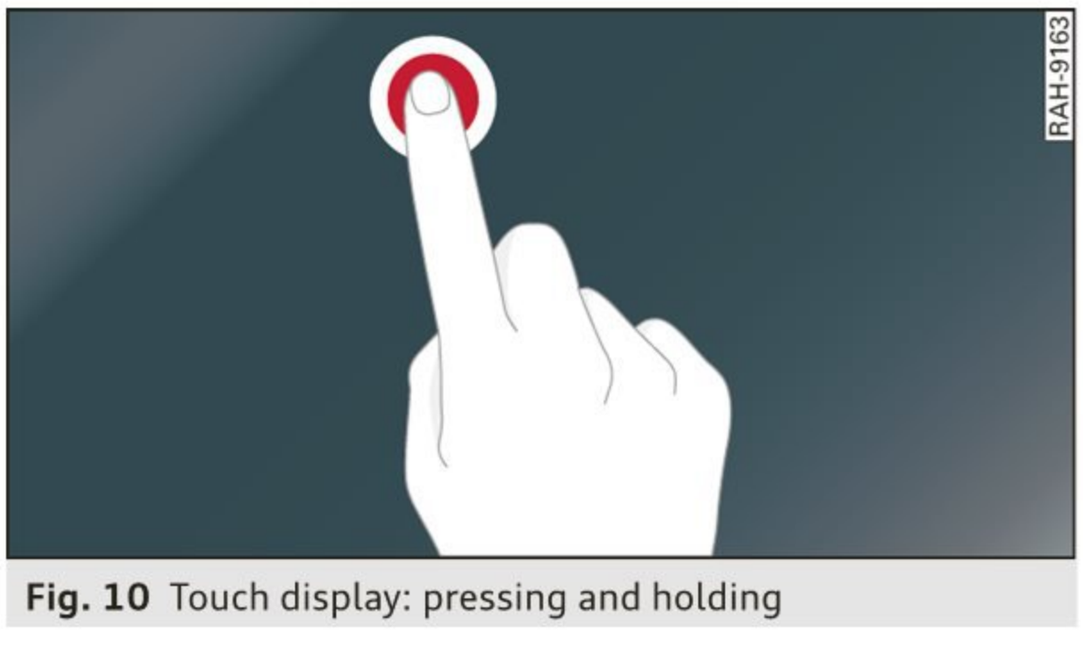


Fig. 10 Touch display: pressing and holding

Accessing options

For some items, you can access additional options that are not directly visible.

▸ Press and hold an item until the associated options are displayed.

Pressing and pulling

Applies to: touch displays

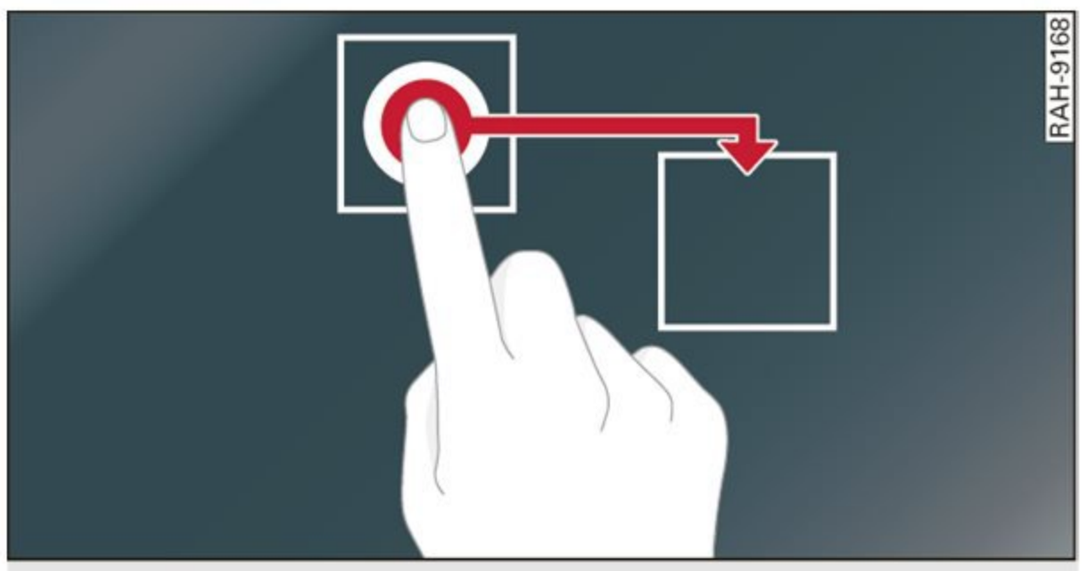


Fig. 11 Touch display: pressing and pulling

Moving an item

You can position some items at any location on the screen.

▸ Press and hold an item, and then use your finger to pull it to the desired location.

Pinching fingers together and pulling apart

Applies to: touch displays

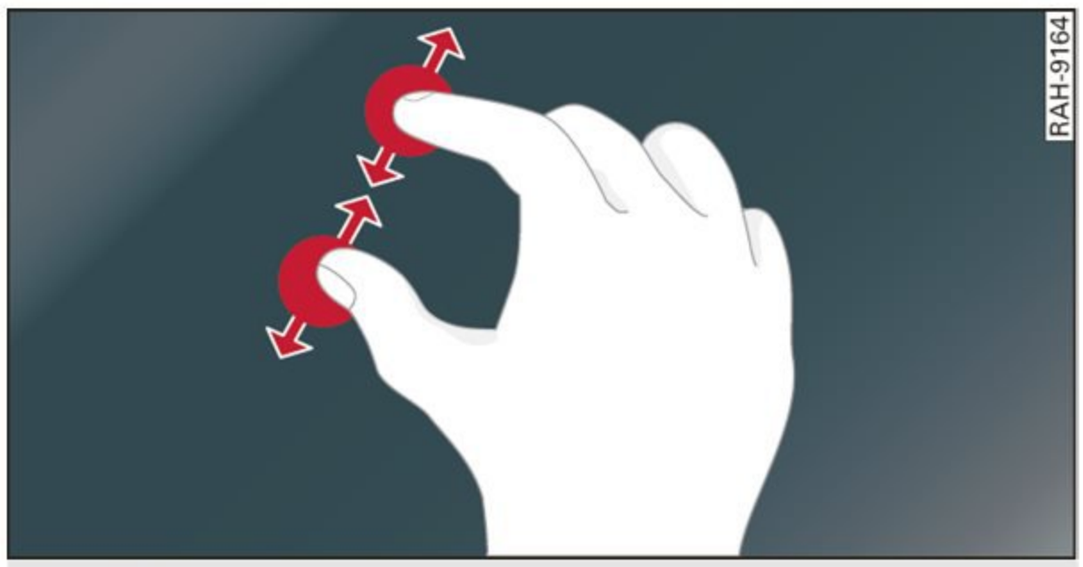


Fig. 12 Touch display: pinching fingers together and pulling them apart

Zooming in and out on an item

▸ To increase the size of an item, touch it with two fingers and pull your fingers apart.
▸ To decrease the size of an item, touch it with two fingers and pull your fingers together.

Rotating

Applies to: touch displays

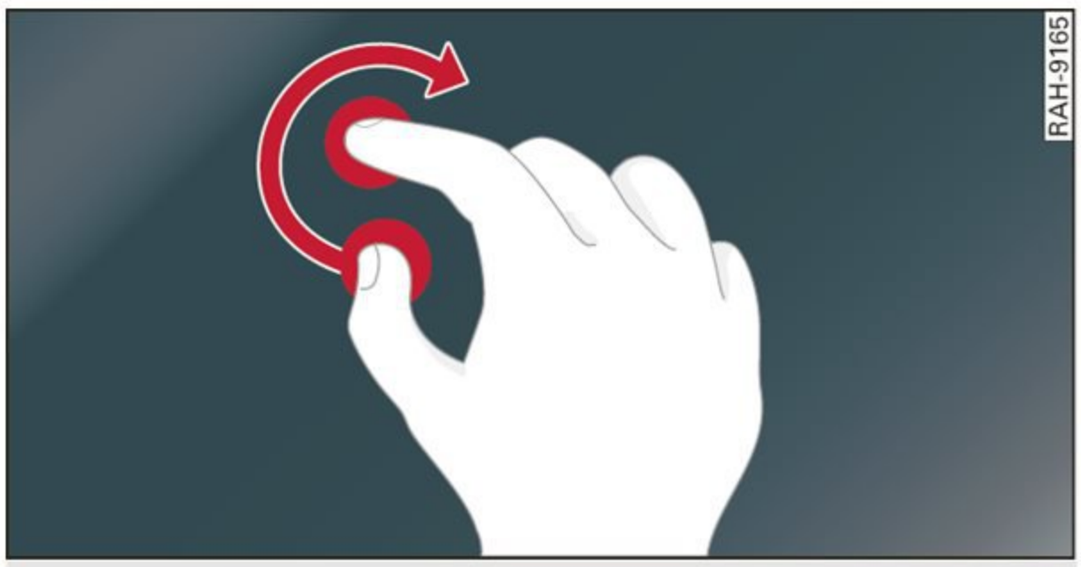


Fig. 13 Touch display: rotating

Rotating the view or perspective

▸ Rotate the item using two fingers.

Dragging

Applies to: touch displays

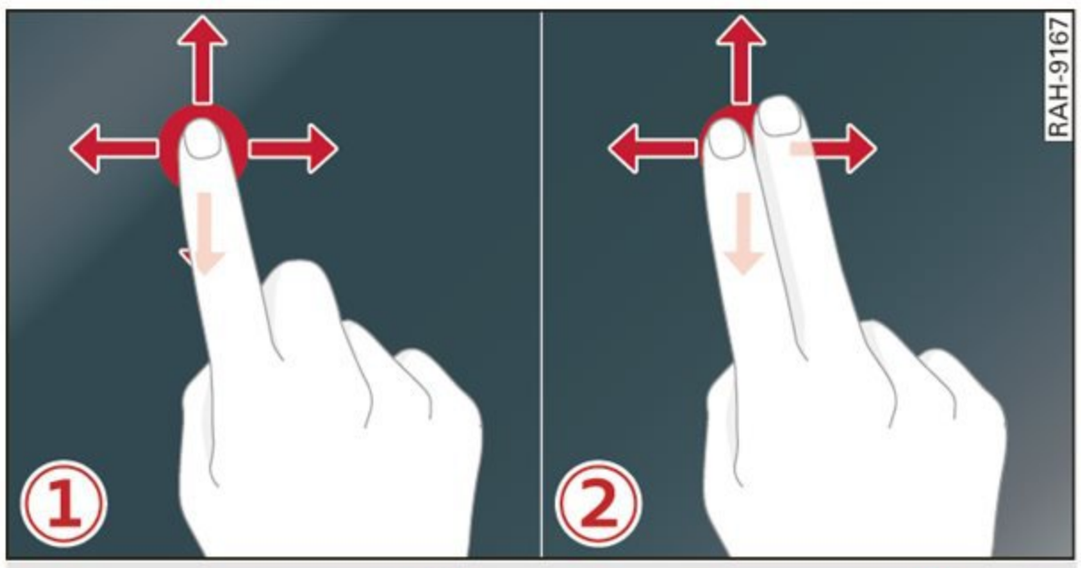


Fig. 14 Touch display: ① dragging with one finger, ② dragging with two fingers

Scrolling or browsing through menus/lists

▸ To scroll through menus and lists, swipe upward or downward with one finger.
▸ To browse through menus and lists, swipe to the right or left with one finger.

Tilting 3D displays

▸ Drag upward or downward with two fingers.

Dragging away from/toward the edge of the screen

Applies to: touch displays

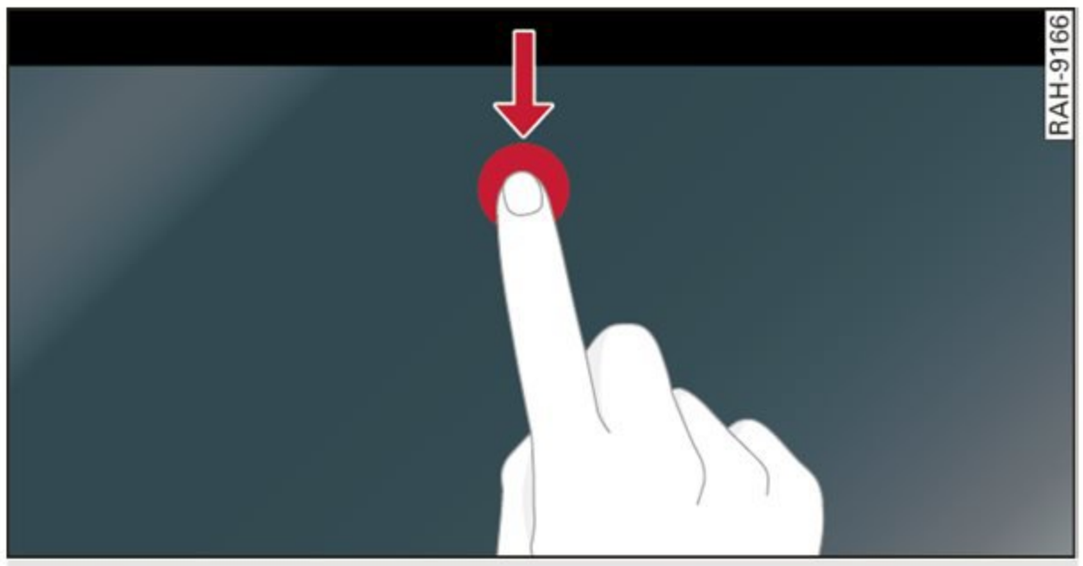


Fig. 15 Touch display: dragging away from the edge of the screen (example)

Opening hidden menus

The ▭ symbol indicates that there is a hidden menu.

▸ Use your finger to drag inward from the upper or lower edge of the screen, or
▸ Press the ▭ button.

Closing hidden menus

▸ Press within the menu and drag it toward the upper or lower edge of the screen.

Closing an element

▸ Press on an item and drag it toward the right edge of the screen.

Information about menu paths

This guide shows you at a glance the paths for opening a desired menu and its settings and functions.

Example of a path

▸ Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Date & time**.

Following the path

▸ Applies to MMI: To open the home screen, press ⌂.
▸ If the **SETTINGS** button is not displayed, swipe toward the left or right with one finger until it appears.
▸ Press the **SETTINGS** button. ▶

4K8012721BA

- ▸ If the **General** button is not displayed, swipe toward the left or right with one finger until it appears.
- ▸ Press the **General** button.
- ▸ If the **Date & time** button is not displayed, swipe upward or downward with one finger until it appears.
- ▸ Press the **Date & time** button.

Tips

If a menu or symbol is in parentheses in the path, for example, (**General**) or (⚙), then it is an optional menu item that does not need to be used in every system.

Settings

You can adjust or turn off the MMI touch display feedback.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **MMI**.

Possible settings:

– **Brightness**

– **Touchscreen Feedback**

Multi Media Interface

Traffic safety information

Audi recommends performing certain Infotainment system functions, such as entering a destination, only when the vehicle is stationary. Always be prepared to stop operating the Infotainment system in the interest of your safety and the safety of other road users.

WARNING

Only use the Infotainment system when traffic conditions permit and always in a way that allows you to maintain complete control over your vehicle.

Tips

Certain functions are not available while driving.

Switching on or off

Switching the MMI on or off

- ▸ To switch the MMI off, press and hold the On/Off knob ⇨ *page 27, fig. 22* until the upper display and all Infotainment system functions are switched off.
- ▸ To switch the MMI on, press the On/Off knob.

Restarting the MMI

- ▸ Press and hold the On/Off knob for at least 10 seconds.

Switching displays on or off

- ▸ To switch the upper display off, press ⏻ on the lower display.
- ▸ To switch the upper display on, touch the upper display or press ⏻ on the lower display.
- ▸ To switch both displays on or off, press and hold ⏻ on the lower display.

Introduction

You can display and operate Infotainment system and vehicle functions using both of the Multi Media Interface (MMI) touch displays.

Configuration wizard

After starting for the first time, the configuration wizard helps you to set up the vehicle, for example to set the desired system language and connect a telephone.

- ▸ Follow the instructions in the display.
- ▸ To access the configuration wizard at a later time, select on the home screen: **HELP** > **Configuration wizard**.

Tool tips

Tool tips are displayed on the upper display after starting for the first time. They introduce various MMI functions to you.

- ▸ Follow the instructions in the display.
- ▸ To access the tool tips at a later time, select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Help** > **Show tool tips**.
- ▸ To receive additional tool tips, select on the home screen: **HELP** > **Tool tips** > **Basic information** or **Expert information**.

Menus and symbols

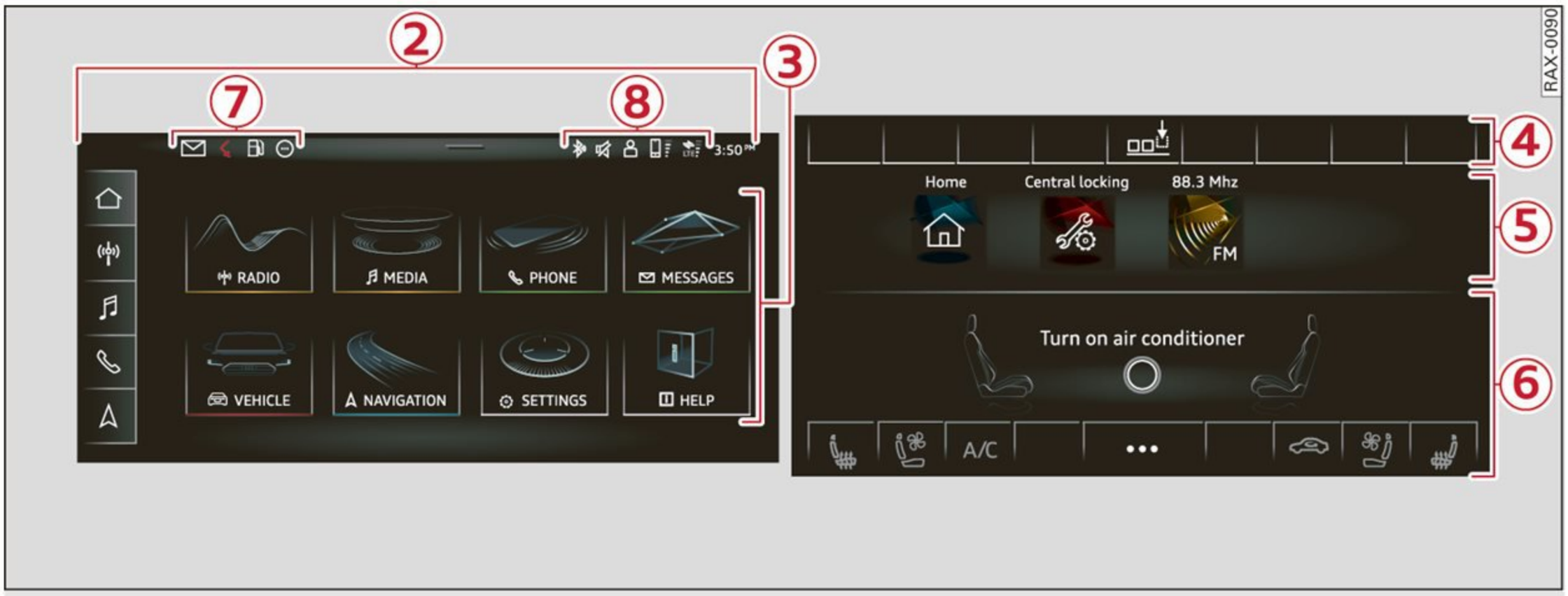


Fig. 16 Upper/lower display: diagram

	Label	Description
①	**Quick access bar**	Return to the home screen or open a menu quickly ⇨ *page 19*
②	**Status bar**	Displays existing notifications ⑦ ⇨ *page 20*, status display ⑧ ⇨ *page 20*, time
③	**Display area**	Select a menu, apply settings, display content ⇨ *page 20*
④	**Function bar**	Activate functions or access attached content ⇨ *page 21*
⑤	**Shortcuts**	Using shortcuts ⇨ *page 21*
⑥	**Climate control settings**	Adjust the climate control system settings ⇨ *page 84*

Description of common symbols

You can operate the default functions using the symbols that follow. The symbols may be found in any menu, depending on the context.

Symbol	Description
←	Go back one level
✕	Close the menu
🔍	Search for content
ⓘ	Open explanations for a menu
⚙	Open settings for the selected menu
⊞	Open the submenu
✎	Adjust the settings
☆/★	Set as favorite
☐/☑	Switch functions on or off
⊂⊃/⊂⊃	Switch functions on or off
○/◎	Switch functions on or off

Symbol	Description
•••	Open additional actions
>	Open additional information for the selected menu

Tips

The following pages primarily show Illustrations of the upper display with the largest possible screen size. The display or location of the items shown may vary depending on the vehicle equipment.

Quick access

With quick access, you can return to the home screen and quickly switch between four menus that can be individually configured.

Returning to the home screen or opening a menu quickly

▸ Press ⌂ or one of the four buttons. ▶

Configuring quick access

- ▸ Press and hold a button on the home screen display area or in the quick access bar.
- ▸ To move a button to the quick access bar, pull it from the display area to the quick access bar.
- ▸ To adjust the placement of the buttons in the quick access bar, pull them to the desired position in the bar.

Tips

The position of ⌂ cannot be adjusted.

Display area

You can freely change the location of the buttons on the home screen display area.

Configuring the display area

- ▸ Press and hold a button on the home screen display area.
- ▸ To adjust the placement of the buttons, pull them to the desired locations.

Switching between menu pages

If a menu contains multiple menu pages, ▬▭▭ is displayed in the display area. The white bar shows the location of the current menu page.

- ▸ To switch between menu pages, swipe your finger to the right or left.

Status display

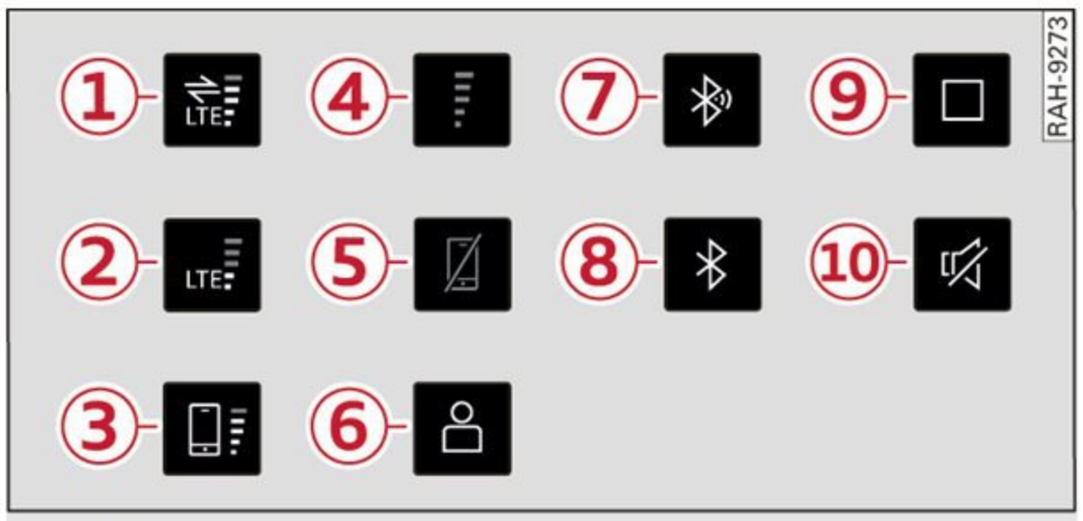


Fig. 17 Upper display: common symbols in the status bar

The symbols in the status bar show you information at a glance, such as if a mobile device is connected or if there is a data connection. The most common symbols are listed in the table.

	Description
①	There is a data connection. The bar indicates the signal strength of the data connection. Data is being transmitted now.
②	There is a data connection. The bar indicates the signal strength of the data connection. No data is being transmitted now.
③	A mobile device is connected. The bar indicates the signal strength of the cell phone connection.
④	There is no data connection.
⑤	An error occurred with the mobile device connection to the MMI.
⑥	The personal profiles are switched on. The digits **1** - **6** indicate which personal profile is currently active. The guest profile is active if there are no digits.
⑦	A Bluetooth device is connected.
⑧	Bluetooth is switched on, but no Bluetooth device is connected.
⑨	Audio playback was interrupted.
⑩	The audio source is muted.

Notification center

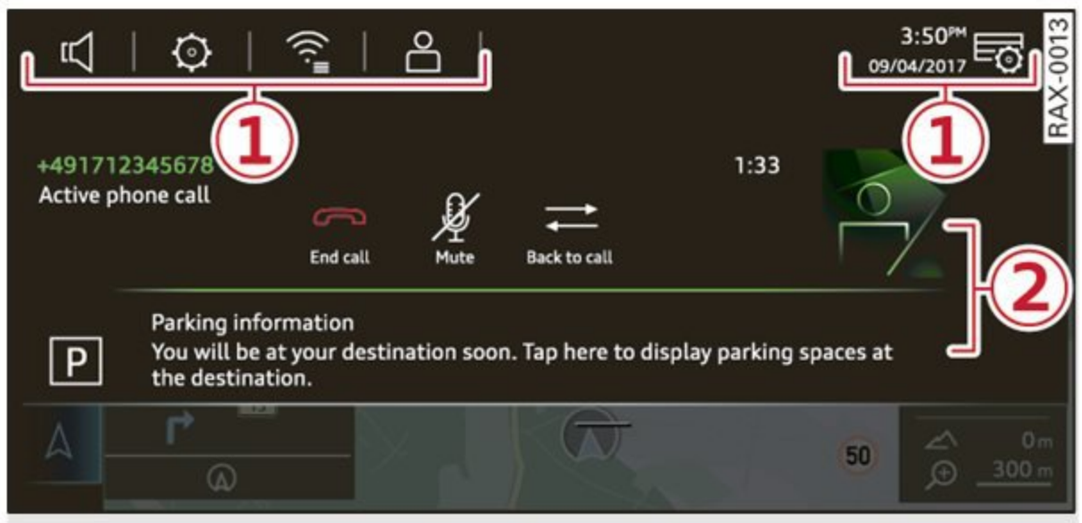


Fig. 18 Upper display: notification center diagram

Notifications can be displayed in the upper display. After a specified time, they will be hidden and a corresponding symbol will appear in the status bar ⑦ ⇨ *page 19, fig. 16*. In the notification center, you can view these notifications ② ⇨ *fig. 18* and apply quick settings ①.

Using the notification center

- ▸ To open the notification center, pull the status bar downward, or
- ▸ Press the ▭ button on the status bar. ▶

- ▸ To apply quick settings, press the respective symbol ①.
- ▸ To obtain additional information about a notification, press it.
- ▸ To delete a notification, pull it toward the right edge of the screen.
- ▸ If there are more than four notifications in the notification center, the older notifications will be hidden. To display the older notifications, drag your finger upward on the screen.

Setting displayed content

You can set whether some notifications should be displayed.

- ▸ To set the displayed content, press , or
- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Notifications**.
- ▸ Select and confirm which notifications should be displayed.

Possible quick settings

Symbol	Description
	Apply sound settings
	Open menu settings
	Manage connected devices
	Manage personal profiles
9/4/2017	Set date and time
	Set displayed content in the notification center

Function bar

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can operate various functions in the function bar.

Symbol	Description
A OFF	Switch Start/Stop system on or off
OFF	Switches the lane departure warning on or off
P	Opens the parking search
	Opens the garage door opener function

Symbol	Description
	Press: extends and retracts the rear spoiler
	Press and hold: retracts the rear spoiler at low speeds
OFF	**Press**: shows settings for the head-up display
	Press and hold: switches the head-up display on or off
	Press: switches the upper display on or off
	Press and hold: switches both displays on or off

Shortcuts

By creating shortcuts, you have quick access to various items, such as radio stations, frequently used contacts, or vehicle settings.

Adding shortcuts

The ••• buttons in the upper display indicate, for example, if a selected radio station can be added to the shortcuts. Depending on the context, you may also be able to add items from a list to the shortcuts.

- ▸ Press ••• or press and hold an item in a list.
- ▸ Press **Save as a shortcut**. The selected item will be added to the shortcuts on the lower display and displayed as a tile.

Using shortcuts

- ▸ Press the button in the function bar on the lower screen. The saved shortcuts will be displayed or hidden.
- ▸ To access the stored function, press the respective tile.

Moving or deleting shortcuts

- ▸ Press and hold a shortcut on the lower display.
- ▸ To adjust the order of the shortcuts, drag a shortcut to the desired location.
- ▸ To delete a shortcut, press ⊗.

Text input

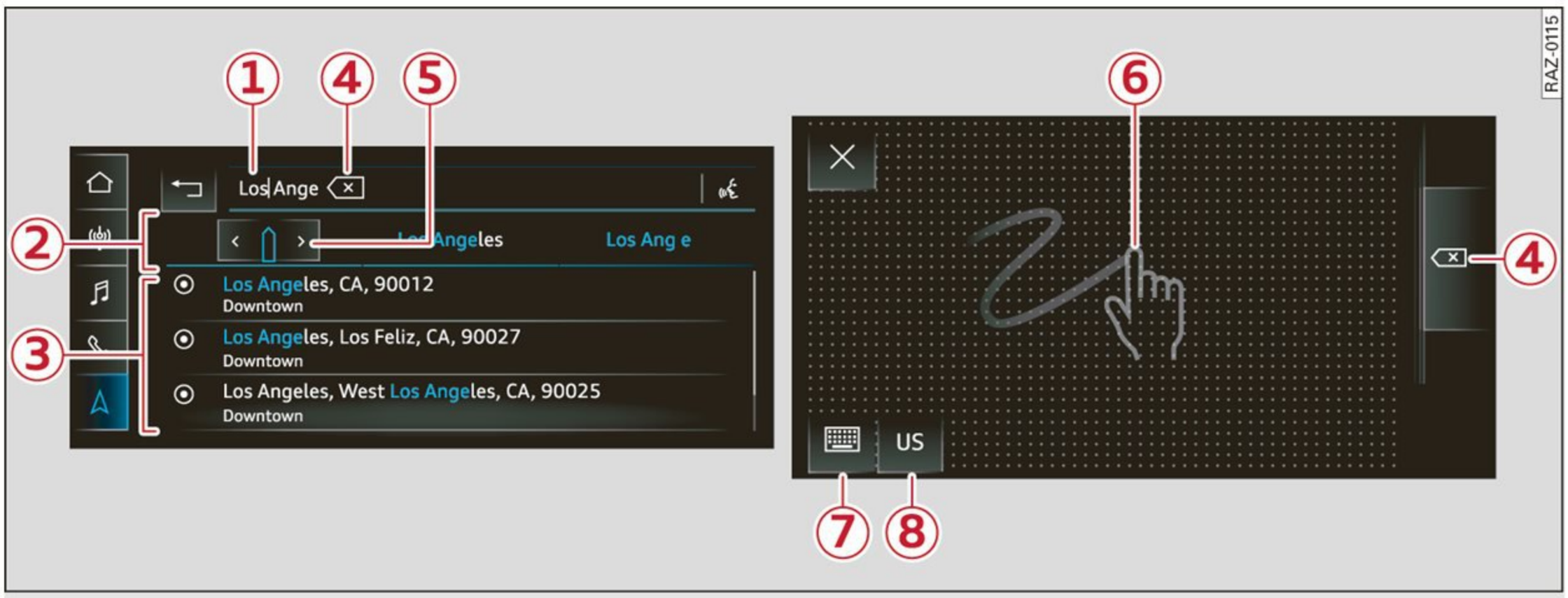


Fig. 19 Upper/lower display: text input diagram

In the input fields of various menus, you can enter letters, numbers and characters, for example to find an address in navigation.

On the lower section of the screen, you can enter the text with handwriting or using the on-screen keyboard. The current text input is displayed on the upper section of the screen ①. Depending on the context, word suggestions may be given based on the characters that have been entered ② and a results list may be shown ③.

Opening text input

- ▸ Press in the input field ①.

Switching input languages

Requirement: multiple input languages must be defined in the MMI ⇨ *page 23*.

- ▸ To switch between the defined input languages, press the button ⑧.

Switching the input methods

- ▸ To switch between handwriting input or the on-screen keyboard, press the button ⑦.

Entering text

- ▸ Applies to handwriting input: To enter text, simply write in the input area using one finger ⑥. You can write the separate characters next to each other or one on top of the other without having to move your finger over after writing a character. When you end the entry, the writing is interpreted by the system.
- ▸ Applies to the on-screen keyboard: To enter text, press the buttons on the keyboard. Depending on the usage context, you may also be able to swipe over the letters [1)].
- ▸ Applies to the on-screen keyboard with input language with accented characters: To enter accented characters (such as â, ç, ñ, ö), press and hold a character that has accented versions available and select the desired accented character.
- ▸ Applies to handwriting input: To enter a space, drag a line from left to right in the input section ⑥.
- ▸ To select a location in the text input, press on the desired location in the input field. You can control the location more accurately using the displayed slider ⑤.
- ▸ To delete individual characters, press ⌫ ④, or
- ▸ Applies to handwriting input: Drag a line from right to left in the input section ⑥.
- ▸ To delete multiple characters, press and hold ⌫ ④.
- ▸ To delete all characters in a specific location, press and hold ⌫ ④ and drag up to the desired location [1)]. When released, the highlighted characters are deleted. ▶

[1)] In certain countries.

Applying suggested words or entries from the results list

- ▸ To apply a suggested word ② or entry from the results list ③, press on it.
- ▸ To display more content in the results list, drag your finger upward or downward on the screen.

Setting the input language or keyboard layout

- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Language & keyboard** > **Keyboard**.
- ▸ To define additional input languages, press the ⊂⊃ button.
- ▸ To change the keyboard layout for an input language, press >. For example, you can select between QWERTZ and QWERTY.

4K8012721BA

Head-up display

Description

Applies to: vehicles with head-up display

The head-up display projects certain warnings or selected information from the assist systems* or navigation system* on the windshield. The display appears within the driver's field of vision.

Switching on and off

The button is located in the function bar on the lower display ⇨ *page 19*.

- ▸ To switch the head-up display on or off, press and hold the button.

Settings in the Infotainment system

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Head-up display**, or
- ▸ Press the button.

Possible settings:

– **Picture rotation**
– **Brightness**

Display height

You can adjust the height of the display. Sit in the correct seating position ⇨ *page 58* and adjust the head-up display.

Display content

You can set which information should be displayed. The display of certain information and some of the red indicator lights cannot be hidden.

Note

To reduce the risk of scratches on the glass covering the head-up display, do not place any objects in the projection opening.

Tips

– Sunglasses with polarization filters and unfavorable lighting conditions can impair visibility of the display.
– An optimum display depends on the seat position and the height adjustment of the head-up display.
– A special windshield is needed for the head-up display function.
– For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *table Interior cleaning on page 262*.
– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Voice recognition system

General information

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

You can operate many functions in the vehicle easily using voice commands.

Using the voice recognition system optimally

- ▸ Speak clearly and distinctly at a normal volume. Speak louder when driving faster.
- ▸ Emphasize the words in the commands evenly and do not leave long pauses.
- ▸ Close the doors, the windows, and the sunroof* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not speaking when you are giving a voice command.
- ▸ Do not direct the vents toward the hands-free microphone, which is in the roof headliner near the front interior lights.
- ▸ Only the driver should speak to the system, because the handsfree microphone is aimed toward this seating position.

WARNING

- – Direct your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.
- – Do not use the voice recognition system in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may take longer to dial the number or may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

Tips

There are no voice guidance* prompts when a dialog is active.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system



Fig. 20 Upper display: voice recognition system diagram

Switching the voice recognition system on or off

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on. A system language supported by the voice recognition system must be set. There must be no phone calls in progress and the parking aid must not be active.

- ▸ To switch the voice recognition system on, briefly press the button on the multifunction steering wheel, or depending on the context, press in the upper display.
- ▸ To switch the voice recognition system off, press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel, or say or press **Cancel** (1).

Using the voice recognition system

In the voice recognition system menu, possible commands or help settings are displayed for the current dialog (3).

- ▸ Say the desired command after the signal tone.
- ▸ To receive additional help for the current dialog, say or press **Help** (2).
- ▸ To pause voice recognition, say or press **Pause** (4). To reactivate voice recognition, press (4) again or briefly press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Speech dialog system** > **Allow commands during voice output**. If the function is switched on, you can simply say a new command during a prompt.

Activating the online recognizer

Applies to: vehicles with online recognizer

To obtain additional functions and even better results when using voice recognition, you can ▶

activate the online recognizer. When there is an active Internet connection, the spoken command is evaluated in the vehicle and online.

- ▸ When you switch on the voice recognition system for the first time, a menu for the online recognizer opens. Or:
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Speech dialog system** > **Consent to speech dialog system online recognizer**.
- ▸ Read the licensing agreements and accept them.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

AUDI AG simply provides access to control your mobile device with voice operation and does not assume any responsibility for the content and commands within the external voice control.

External voice operation

Applies to: vehicles with external speech dialog system

You can access and control the voice operation on a connected mobile device through your vehicle.

Switching external voice operation on or off

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on. A cell phone must be connected to the MMI with the **Handsfree** profile ⇨ *page 158*. The mobile device being connected must have voice control that can be controlled externally. There must be no phone calls in progress and the parking aid must not be active.

- ▸ To switch on the external voice operation, press and hold the button longer on the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▸ To switch off the external voice operation, press and hold the button longer on the multifunction steering wheel or press **Cancel**.

Using external voice operation

- ▸ Say the desired command after the signal tone.
- ▸ To reactivate voice recognition when it is paused, press the button briefly on the multifunction steering wheel or press **Resume**.

Global functions

Additional function buttons

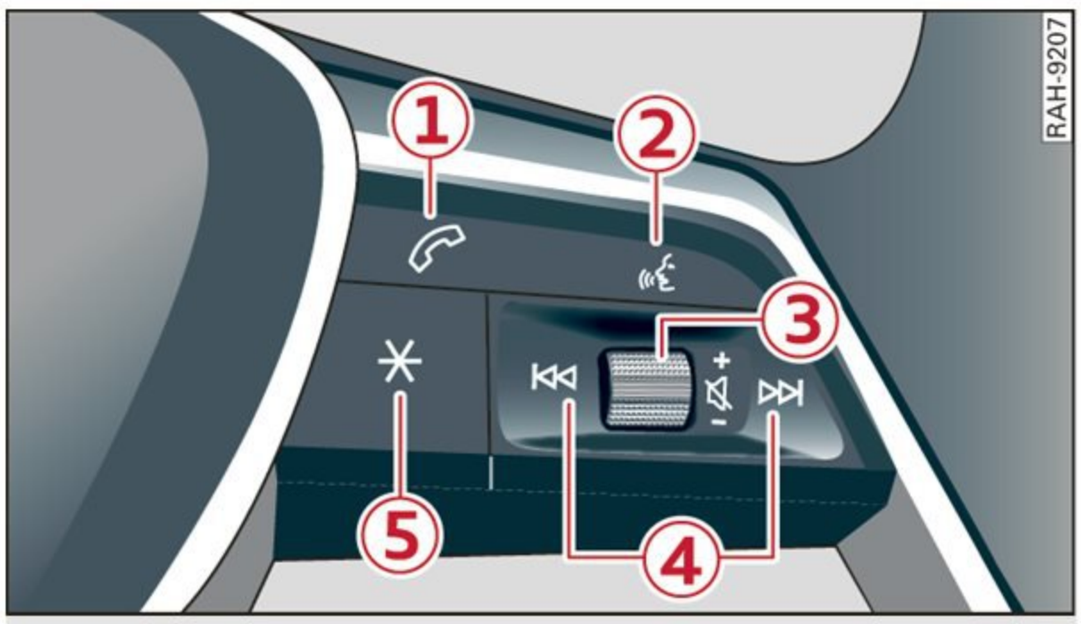


Fig. 21 Right side of the multifunction steering wheel



Fig. 22 MMI On/Off knob with joystick function

Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) when the sound is playing.

- ▸ To increase or decrease the volume, turn the right thumbwheel ③ ⇨ *fig. 21* upward or downward, or turn the On/Off knob ③ ⇨ *fig. 22* to the right or left.
- ▸ To mute, push the right thumbwheel or the On/Off knob.

Selecting the previous/next track or station

- ▸ Press the |◁◁ / ▷▷| button ④ or briefly press the On/Off knob to the left or right.

Fast forward/rewind

- ▸ Press and hold the |◁◁ / ▷▷| button ④, or press the On/Off knob to the left or right until the desired playback position is reached.

Programmable steering wheel button

You can use the ✳ programmable button ⑤ to quickly access various functions.

- ▸ To bring up the function that is currently set, press the ✳ button.
- ▸ To perform the function that is currently set, press and hold the ✳ button, or
- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Steering wheel button assignment**.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired function.

Switching the voice recognition system on or off

button ②, see ⇨ *page 25*.

Using the telephone functions

button ①, see ⇨ *page 162*.

WARNING

Adjust the volume of the audio system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Personalization

User

Personal profiles

You can store your customized settings in a personal profile. Specific settings are stored automatically in the personal profile that is currently active.

The profile that is used is in turn assigned to the vehicle key, the Audi connect key*, or the Audi connect key card* that is in use at the time. The profile that was last active with the key is loaded when the vehicle is unlocked.

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **USER**.

Use various profiles to link them to specific vehicle settings.

– Create your customized profile. This is helpful in some situations, for example if multiple people share the vehicle and each person would like to use his or her individual vehicle settings.
– **Guest**: the guest profile can be used to adjust settings in the vehicle without changing the other profiles.

Depending on the equipment, certain settings for the following systems may be stored:

– Climate control system
– Central locking system
– Interior/exterior lighting*
– Parking aid* (Cross traffic assist*, Park assist*)
– Driver assistance* ⇨ *page 124*
– Seats
– Mirror
– Steering wheel
– MMI
– Head-up display*
– Instrument cluster

Active profile

– **Rename**: you can rename your profile so that you can recognize by name which settings are stored.
– **Copy**: you can copy your profile. Select the location where the profile will be copied or which profile should be overwritten. The settings will be applied.
– **Reset**: you can reset your active profile to the factory default settings.
– **Reload***: Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. You can reload your profile, for example if the seat, mirror, and steering wheel settings could not be applied when changing profiles.

Profile selection

If you would like to change the profile, select another profile from the list.

Switching personal profiles off

– Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **USER** > ⚙ > **Personal profiles**.

The personal profiles are switched on at the factory. If you do not wish to use the personal profiles, you can switch the function off.

Tips

– The guest profile cannot be renamed.
– When changing profiles, the new profile settings are loaded in the vehicle.
– You can reset all personal profiles to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 219*.

myAudi

Requirement: you must have successfully registered at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **USER** > **myAudi login**.
▸ Log in to myAudi in the vehicle using your e-mail address and password.

After logging in to myAudi successfully, you can set if and when an automatic login should occur.

– **Personal profile**: you can link your myAudi access data to your personal profile. You will then always be logged in automatically when your personal profile is active.
– **Bluetooth device 1/Bluetooth device 2***: you will be automatically logged in when your Bluetooth device is connected to the MMI, and automatically logged out when the Bluetooth ▶

connection to your mobile device is disconnected.

To transfer existing destinations from the MMI to your myAudi account one time, confirm the system prompts with **Yes**.

Tips

– For some Audi connect Infotainment services, you may also have to enter your myAudi access information when accessing services in the MMI.
– Regardless of the key user and additional users, you can only connect one myAudi account to your vehicle.

User management

For some Audi connect vehicle control services*, the vehicle owner must be set up as the key user.

Set key user

Requirement: a key user must not be set yet.

► To set a key user for the vehicle, you will need a myAudi account. Register at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
► Link your vehicle to the account at www.audiusa.com/myaudi and then verify your myAudi account immediately in order to use the Audi connect vehicle control services*.
► You can also verify your myAudi account later. Log in at www.audiusa.com/myaudi with your access information and verify your myAudi account in user management using the verification process that is given.
► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **USER** > **User management** > **Key user** > **Set key user**.
► Enter the 10-digit vehicle code ⇨ *page 34*. The key user is set. You have the rights to use the Audi connect vehicle control services* ⇨ *page 175* as well as the ability to manage other vehicle functions and any other users.

Manage additional users

You can grant authorization for additional users to use Audi connect vehicle control services* at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

Remove key user

If you remove the key user, all other users, their authorizations, and all Audi connect keys* will be deleted. The Audi connect vehicle control services* can no longer be used.

Requirement: a key user must be set. The vehicle was not started with an Audi connect key* or an Audi connect key card*.

► Applies to MMI: select on the home screen: **USERS** > **User management** > **Key user** > **Remove key user**.

Tips

– Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may be able to reset specific functions to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 219*.
– Logging in to myAudi in the vehicle is not required to use Audi connect vehicle control services*.
– If you sell your vehicle, remove or change the key user or reset all settings to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 219*.

4K8012721BA

Opening and closing

Central locking

Description

All doors and the luggage compartment lid can be centrally unlocked and locked at once. You can select in the MMI if the entire vehicle or only the driver's door should unlock when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 31*. The turn signals flash twice when you unlock the vehicle and flash once when you lock the vehicle. If they do not flash when locking, then one of the doors, the luggage compartment lid, or the hood is not closed completely.

You have the following options for centrally unlocking or locking your vehicle:

– Vehicle key ⇨ *page 35*
– Sensors* in the door handles ⇨ *page 35*
– Lock cylinder on the driver's door ⇨ *page 32*
– Central locking switch inside ⇨ *page 32*
– Audi connect key on your mobile device ⇨ *page 37*
– Audi connect key card ⇨ *page 37*.

Key / vehicle key

When the “key” is mentioned, it can mean the remote control or convenience key*, a mobile device with the Audi connect key*, or the activated Audi connect key card*.

The term “vehicle key” refers to the remote control key or convenience key*. The convenience key* is a remote control key with special functions ⇨ *page 35* and ⇨ *page 88*.

Power closing*

When closing a door or the luggage compartment lid, you only have to let it fall lightly into the latch. It then closes automatically ⇨ ⚠.

Automatic locking

If you unlock the vehicle but then do not open any of the doors, the luggage compartment, or the hood within a short period time, the vehicle locks again automatically. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked for a long period of time.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

Only lock your vehicle when all of the doors and the luggage compartment lid are closed and there is no key in the vehicle. This reduces the risk of locking yourself out accidentally.

The following features help to reduce the risk of locking your vehicle key in the vehicle:

– If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the 🔒 button on the remote control key or by touching the locking sensor* on a door.
– If the last convenience key* that was used is detected inside the vehicle, the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside for a brief time.

An Audi connect key* or an Audi connect key card is not detected in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise, children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident.
– Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: When the vehicle is locked from the outside, no one - especially children - should remain in the vehicle, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 33*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

⚠ WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with power closing

– To reduce the risk of injury, make sure that the area where the door is closing is clear during the closing process.
– The closing process can be stopped at any time by pulling on the outer or inner door handle.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

If the convenience key that was last used is detected inside the vehicle, then the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside. If you do not open the vehicle within a short time to remove the vehicle key, then the vehicle will lock automatically. This prevents the vehicle from being left unlocked for long periods of time. The key will then be locked inside the vehicle.

Tips

- Do not leave valuables unattended in the vehicle. A locked vehicle is not a safe!
- The LED in the driver's door rail blinks when you lock the vehicle. If the LED lights up for approximately 30 seconds after locking, there is a malfunction in the central locking system. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Setting the central locking system

You can adjust the central locking system to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Central locking**.

Door unlocking

- If you select **All**, all doors and the luggage compartment lid will be unlocked when unlocking.
- If you select **Driver's door**, only the driver's door will be unlocked. To unlock all doors and the luggage compartment lid, press the button on the vehicle key twice. In vehicles with a convenience key*, only the driver's door will unlock when you pull the driver's door handle. If you pull another door handle, the entire vehicle will be unlocked.

The entire vehicle will always be locked when you press the button.

Long press to open windows

You can select if all windows and the roof should open using the vehicle key ⇨ *page 42, Convenience opening and closing*. If you press and hold the button on the vehicle key, all of the windows and the roof will close.

Disable rear lid handle

You can select if the luggage compartment lid can open with the handle. If you activate this function, the luggage compartment lid can only be opened with the button on the vehicle key or in the driver's door. In vehicles with a convenience key*, you can still open the luggage compartment lid using the handle if an authorized convenience key is detected ⇨ *page 38*.

Fold mirrors

You can select if the exterior mirrors automatically fold in when locking.

Tone when locking[1)]

You can select if an audio signal sounds when locking the vehicle.

Open with convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

You can deactivate the feature for unlocking using the sensor. The function for locking via the sensor will still be enabled ⇨ *page 35*.

Tips

The settings are automatically stored and assigned to the active personal profile.

1) This function is not available in all countries.

Central locking switch

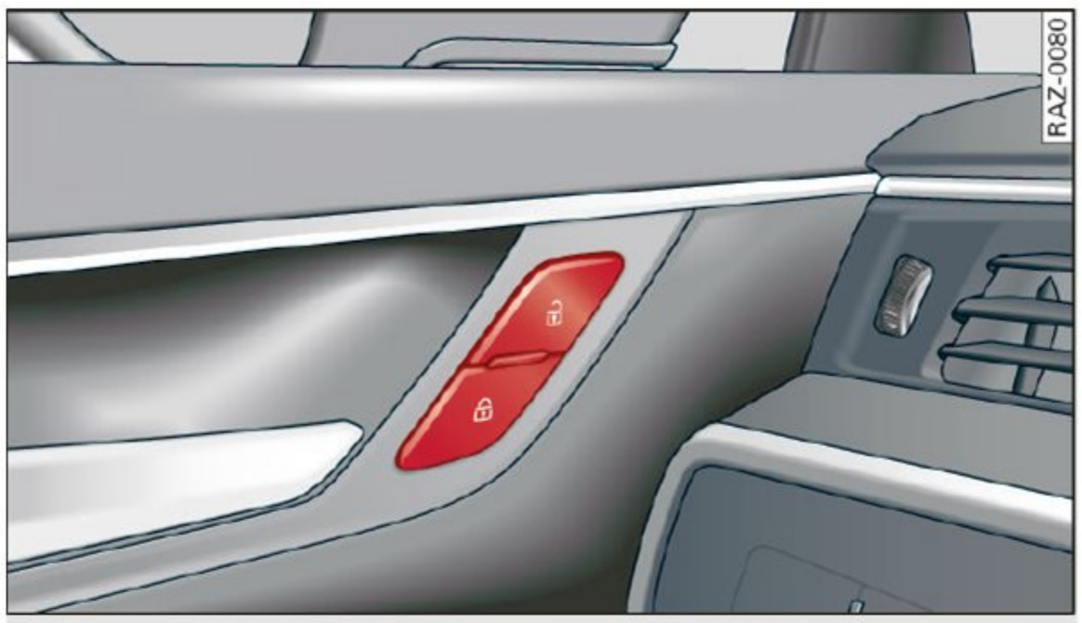


Fig. 23 Driver's door: central locking switch

► To lock or unlock the vehicle, press the or button ⇨ .

When locking the vehicle with the central locking switch, the following applies:

– The doors and the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened from the outside for security reasons, such as to prevent unauthorized opening while stopped at a light.
– The LED in the central locking switch turns on when all doors are closed and locked.
– You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle one time. To open the rear doors individually, you must pull the door handle twice.
– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors unlock automatically to allow access to the vehicle.

WARNING

– The central locking button works when the ignition is switched off. If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise, children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident.
– The central locking switch is inoperative when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

Messages

Driver's door: malfunction! Shift to P before leaving vehicle. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the driver's door. Secure the vehicle before exiting by selecting the “P” selector lever position. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Central locking: malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a central locking malfunction. If the doors cannot lock, you can emergency lock the doors ⇨ *page 32*. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Mechanically unlocking and locking the doors

If the central locking fails, you must unlock or lock the doors separately.

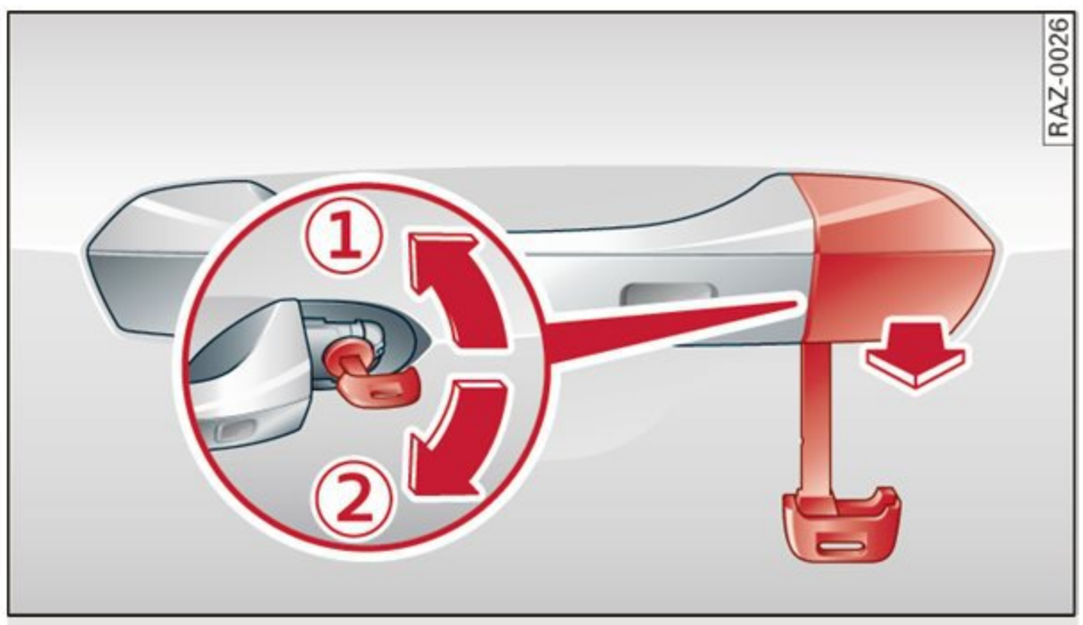


Fig. 24 Driver's door: door lock cylinder



Fig. 25 Door: mechanically locking

Unlocking or locking the driver's door with the mechanical key

► Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 34*.
► Insert the mechanical key into the slot under the door handle and pry the cap off ⇨ *fig. 24*.
► To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the open position in the direction of arrow (1). ▶

- ▸ Pull firmly on the door handle to open the driver's door. The door handle swings out slightly farther than normal.
- ▸ To lock the driver's door, select the "P" position and turn the key once to the close position ②⇨ ⚠.

Locking the front passenger's door and rear doors using the mechanical key

The mechanical lock is located on the edge of the doors. It is only visible when the door is open.

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 34*.
- ▸ Remove the cap from the opening ⇨ *fig. 25*.
- ▸ Insert the mechanical key into the slot on the inside and turn it all the way to the left (when locking the right door), or to the right (when locking the left door).
- ▸ Install the cap in the opening and close the door.

Once the front passenger's door or rear doors close, it will no longer be possible to open them from the outside. The door can be unlocked from the inside by pulling on the door handle one time and then opened by pulling the door handle again. If the child safety lock in one of the rear doors is activated, you must first pull the door handle from the inside. Then you can open the door from the outside.

⚠ WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 33, Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system



Fig. 26 Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key: Front edge of driver's door: interior/towing protection monitor button

If the anti-theft alarm system detects a vehicle break-in, audio and visual warning signals are triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is switched on or off when locking or unlocking your vehicle. If the alarm is triggered, it will shut off automatically after a certain amount of time.

Switching the alarm off manually

- ▸ To switch the alarm off, press the button on the vehicle key or switch the ignition on.

Break-in security feature

The alarm will sound if there is a break-in at the doors, hood, and/or luggage compartment lid.

Deactivating the interior/towing protection monitor

There are the following options for deactivating the interior/towing protection monitor:

- ▸ Press the button on the vehicle key a second time **within two seconds**. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor on the door handle a second time **within two seconds**. Or
- ▸ Turn the mechanical key in the door lock to the close position a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key: Press the OFF button before locking ⇨ *fig. 26*. Then the LED in the button will turn on. ▶

If you lock the vehicle, then the interior/towing protection monitor will stay off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked.

WARNING

No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Tips

The interior/towing protection monitoring only functions correctly when the windows and the roof* are closed.

Keys

Key set



Fig. 27 Your vehicle key set

① Vehicle key

You can unlock and lock your vehicle with the vehicle key.

② Mechanical key and release button for mechanical key

A mechanical key is integrated in the vehicle key. To remove it, press the release button and remove the mechanical key.

Using the mechanical key, you can:

– Lock/unlock the glove compartment.
– Manually unlocking and locking the doors ⇨ *page 32*.
– Unlock the luggage compartment lid using the emergency release ⇨ *page 41*.

③ Key fob with vehicle code

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control

Open the key tag and scratch to reveal the vehicle code. You can unlock the Audi connect vehicle control services* for your vehicle with this vehicle code. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 175*. If a key fob is lost, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

④ PANIC button

In an emergency, you can press the PANIC button to trigger the alarm for the anti-theft alarm system ⇨ *page 36*.

Audi connect key card

Applies to: Audi connect key

The Audi connect key card can perform some of the same functions as the vehicle key. It is shaped like a credit card ⇨ *page 37*.

Lost key/replacing a key

If a vehicle key is lost, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have this vehicle key deactivated. It is important to bring all keys with you.

Applies to Audi connect key: If a mobile device with an Audi connect key is lost, the lost mobile device must be deactivated ⇨ *page 37*. If you cannot access the myAudi app immediately, you can deactivate any of the assigned Audi connect keys in the MMI ⇨ *page 37, Deactivating or activating the Audi connect key*. If an Audi connect key card is lost, you can deactivate it at any time by switching the ignition on with the vehicle key or the Audi connect key*. To replace an Audi connect key card, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

If a key is lost, you should report it to your insurance company.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized use of the vehicle.

In some cases, it may not be possible to start the vehicle if there is a vehicle key from a different vehicle manufacturer on the key chain. ▶

Data in the vehicle key

When driving, service and maintenance-relevant data is continuously stored in your vehicle key. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can read out this data and tell you about the work your vehicle needs.

WARNING

If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise, children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Protect the key against high temperatures and direct sunlight.

Tips

– The vehicle key function can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters near the vehicle working in the same frequency range (such as a mobile device or radio equipment). Always check if your vehicle is locked.

– Applies to MMI: You can view the number of keys programmed to the vehicle by selecting on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Vehicle information**.

– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 289*.

Vehicle key

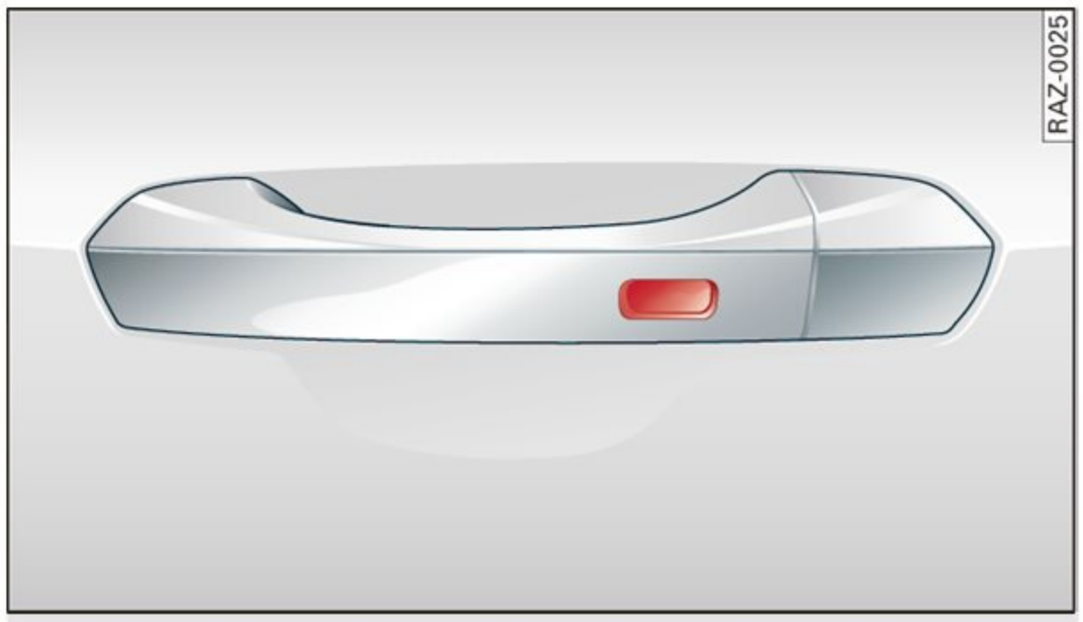


Fig. 28 Door handle: sensor for locking

You can unlock and lock your vehicle using either the buttons on the vehicle key or the sensors* in the door handles, or you can unlock your vehicle using the sensors in the luggage compartment lid handle. The settings in the MMI specify which doors will unlock ⇨ *page 31*.

Unlocking or locking using the vehicle key buttons

- ▸ To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ *page 34, fig. 27*.
- ▸ To lock the vehicle, press the button **once**.
- ▸ To unlock the luggage compartment lid, press the button briefly.
- ▸ To open the luggage compartment lid, press and hold the button for at least one second ⇨ *in General information on page 38* and ⇨ *in General information on page 38*.
- ▸ To close or lock the luggage compartment lid, press and hold the button for at least one second when the ignition is switched off ⇨ *in General information on page 38*.

Unlocking or locking using the sensors

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

- ▸ To unlock a door or the luggage compartment lid, grasp the door handle or luggage compartment lid handle.
- ▸ To lock the vehicle, close the doors and touch the outer sensor on the door handle **once** ⇨ *fig. 28*. Do not grasp the door handle while locking the vehicle, or else the vehicle will not lock. The door cannot be opened for a brief period directly after locking it. This way you have the opportunity to check if the doors locked correctly.

Panic function

Only use the panic function in an emergency. The vehicle horn and emergency flashers will turn on if you trigger the alarm.

- To trigger the alarm, press the PANIC button ④ ⇨ *page 34, fig. 27*.
- To turn the alarm off, press the red PANIC button again.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 33*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Tips

– Only use the vehicle key when you can see the vehicle.
– The vehicle can only be locked when the "P" selector lever position is engaged.
– Do not use the vehicle key to lock and unlock when you are inside the vehicle. Otherwise, you could accidentally trigger the anti-theft alarm*.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

– When unlocking or locking the vehicle, the convenience key cannot be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away from the door handle or luggage compartment.
– Unlocking with the convenience key (keyless access) can be deactivated in the MMI system ⇨ *page 31*.
– The energy management system gradually turns off unnecessary convenience functions to prevent the vehicle battery from draining and to maintain the vehicle's ability to start for as long as possible. You then may no longer be able to unlock your vehicle with the sensors.

LED and battery in the vehicle key



Fig. 29 Vehicle key: removing the battery holder

LED in the vehicle key

The LED ① indicates the vehicle key function.

- If you press a button briefly, the LED blinks once.
- If you press and hold a button (convenience opening/closing), the LED blinks several times.
- If the LED does not blink, the vehicle key battery is drained. Replace the battery in the vehicle key.

Replacing the vehicle key battery

- Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 34* and insert it at an angle into the opening ⇨ *fig. 29*.
- Push the mechanical key in the opening in the direction of the arrow to operate the release button on the inside ②. To reduce the risk of damage, do not try to pry off the cover.
- Remove the cover from the battery tray.
- Insert the new battery with the “+” symbol facing up.
- Close the battery tray with the cover.
- Insert the mechanical key.

For the sake of the environment

Discharged batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash.

Tips

Replacement batteries for the vehicle key must meet the same specifications as the original battery.

Audi connect key

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

You can open, close, and start your vehicle with your mobile device.

Applies to all users: Requirement: your mobile device must be compatible (see www.audi.com/bluetooth), you must be registered at www.audiusa.com/myaudi, the myAudi app must be installed on your device, and the service must be activated in the MMI. A key user must be set ⇨ *page 29*.

Assigning an Audi connect key

Applies to: key user

- ▸ Assign a key for yourself or another user on the myAudi website or in the myAudi app.
- ▸ Retrieve the security code in your vehicle. Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Audi connect key** > **Retrieve security code**. A 6-digit code is displayed.
- ▸ Enter the security code on the myAudi website or in the myAudi app. You will receive your key or the user being invited will receive an invitation to install the key.

Accepting an Audi connect key

Applies to: invited users

- ▸ Accept the invitation in the myAudi app.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

- ▸ Hold the mobile device centered on the driver's door handle to unlock or lock the vehicle.

Starting the engine

To start the engine with the Audi connect key, see ⇨ *page 88*.

Deactivating or activating the Audi connect key

You can activate or deactivate the function in the vehicle. If you deactivate the function, you can no longer use any of the assigned Audi connect keys and the Audi connect key card. Once you have reactivated the function, all assigned Audi connect keys and the Audi connect key card can be used again.

- ▸ Use your vehicle key to switch the vehicle ignition on.
- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Audi connect key**.
- ▸ Activate or deactivate the **Audi connect key**.

Tips

- The Audi connect keys can be managed on the myAudi website and in the myAudi app.
- As the main user, you can remove an Audi connect key already assigned and assign it to another user at any time.
- As an invited user, you can also remove an existing Audi connect key.
- If the mobile device battery is drained and has not been charged for several days, the Audi connect key may malfunction.
- If you sell your vehicle, remove or change the key user ⇨ *page 29* or reset all settings to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 219*.

Audi connect key card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

You can open, close, and start your vehicle with your Audi connect key card.

Therefore, you must not hand off your mobile device, for example when servicing the vehicle or in cases of emergency. The key card must be activated before use.

Requirement: you must have an Audi connect key ⇨ *page 37*.

Deactivating or activating the Audi connect key card

- ▸ Switch the ignition on using the Audi connect key ⇨ *page 88*.
- ▸ Remove your mobile device from the Audi phone box.
- ▸ Place the key card in the Audi phone box. Follow the directions in the MMI.

The key card is automatically deactivated again as soon as the ignition is switched on with an Audi connect key or a vehicle key. If the key card is deactivated, you can store it in the vehicle.

You can retrieve your key card status in the MMI ⇨ *page 38*.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

▸ To open or close the vehicle, hold the key card centered on the driver's door handle.

Starting the engine

To start the engine with the Audi connect key card, see ⇨ *page 88*.

Checking the status

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

You can display the status of the assigned Audi connect key and the Audi connect key card in the vehicle.

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Audi connect key** > **Audi connect key**.

Luggage compartment lid

General information

WARNING

– Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: When the vehicle is locked from the outside, no one - especially children - should remain in the vehicle, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 33*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.
– Always close and lock the luggage compartment lid and the doors when the vehicle is not in use. Otherwise someone such as a child could enter the vehicle through the luggage compartment and become locked inside it. To reduce the risk of injury, do not allow children to play in or around the vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of injuries by pinching, make sure that no one is in the operating area of the luggage compartment lid, including the hinge areas and the upper and lower edge of the luggage compartment lid.
– After closing the luggage compartment lid, make sure that it is latched. The luggage compartment lid could open suddenly while driving, which would increase the risk of an accident.
– Never drive with the luggage compartment lid ajar or open, because poisonous gases can enter the vehicle interior and create the risk of asphyxiation.
– Applies to: vehicles with power-operated or sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid: If there is a luggage rack (such as a bicycle rack) on the luggage compartment lid, the luggage compartment lid may not open completely, or it may close by itself if open due to the extra weight. Therefore, the open luggage compartment lid must be given additional support or the cargo must first be removed from the luggage rack.
– Applies to: vehicles with power-operated or sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid: Pay careful attention when closing the luggage compartment lid. Otherwise, you could cause serious injury to yourself or others despite the pinch protection.

Note

The luggage compartment lid can bump into objects such as the garage ceiling when opening and become damaged.

Tips

– When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the vehicle key. The luggage compartment lid locks automatically when it is closed again.
– The ability to open the luggage compartment lid using the handle can be deactivated or activated in the MMI ⇨ *page 31*.

Opening and closing the luggage compartment lid



Fig. 30 Driver's door: opening the luggage compartment lid

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- When the ignition is switched off, press and hold the button on the vehicle key for at least one second. Or
- Engage the "P" selector lever position and pull the button* in the driver's door. Or
- Applies to: vehicles without convenience key: Unlock the vehicle using the button on the vehicle key and press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. Or
- Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. The vehicle key cannot be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- See ⇨ *page 39, Automatic luggage compartment lid*.

Automatic luggage compartment lid

Applies to: vehicles with automatic luggage compartment lid

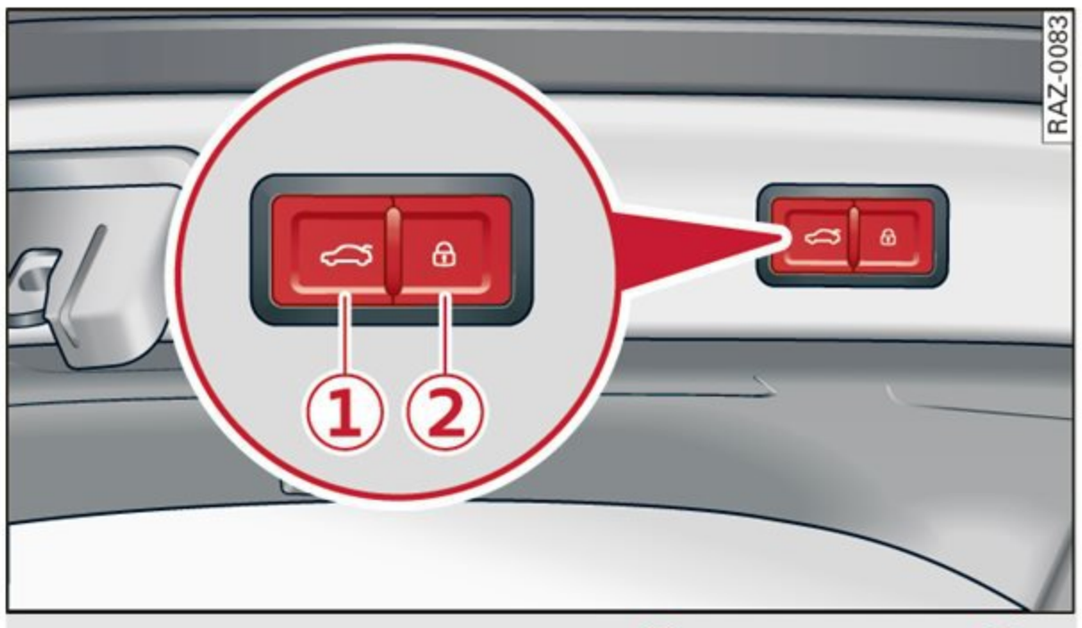


Fig. 31 Luggage compartment lid: ① closing button*, ② lock button* (vehicles with convenience key*)

The luggage compartment lid can be opened and closed automatically ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 38*.

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- When the ignition is switched off, press and hold the button on the vehicle key for at least one second ⇨ *page 34, fig. 27*. Or
- Engage the "P" selector lever position and pull the button* in the driver's door. Or
- Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. The vehicle key cannot be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- Press the button in the luggage compartment lid. Or
- Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. Or
- Press the luggage compartment lid downward slightly. Or
- When the ignition is switched on, pull the switch in the driver's door ⇨ *page 39, fig. 30* until the luggage compartment lid is closed. Or
- Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Press and hold the button on the vehicle key while the ignition is switched off until the luggage compartment lid closes. Make sure there is enough distance (maximum of approximately 9 ft (3 m)) between you and the luggage compartment lid. Or
- Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: While the ignition is switched off, press the / * button in the luggage compartment lid. The vehicle key must not be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment and it must not be inside the vehicle. If you press the * button, then the vehicle will lock.

Storing the luggage compartment lid opening position

The position must be at a certain height or higher to store.

- Bring the luggage compartment lid into the desired open position. If you want to move the ▶

luggage compartment lid to a lower position, move it slowly in small increments; otherwise, the luggage compartment lid will close automatically.

- ▸ Press and hold the button in the luggage compartment lid for at least four seconds to store the new open position. A visual and audio signal will follow.
- ▸ To set a higher open position, wait at least five seconds and then carefully press the luggage compartment lid upward.
- ▸ Press and hold the button again for at least four seconds to store the desired opening position.

The automatic opening or closing will stop if:

– You press the /* buttons or press the handle in the luggage compartment lid again Or
– If something blocks the luggage compartment lid or makes it difficult for the lid to move.

If you press the /* buttons or press the handle in the luggage compartment lid again, the luggage compartment lid will open again.

Tips

The luggage compartment lid can be operated manually if the vehicle battery is low. It is necessary to use more force when doing this. Move the lid slowly to reduce the amount of force needed.

Opening and closing the luggage compartment lid with foot motion (kicking movement)

Applies to: vehicles with sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid

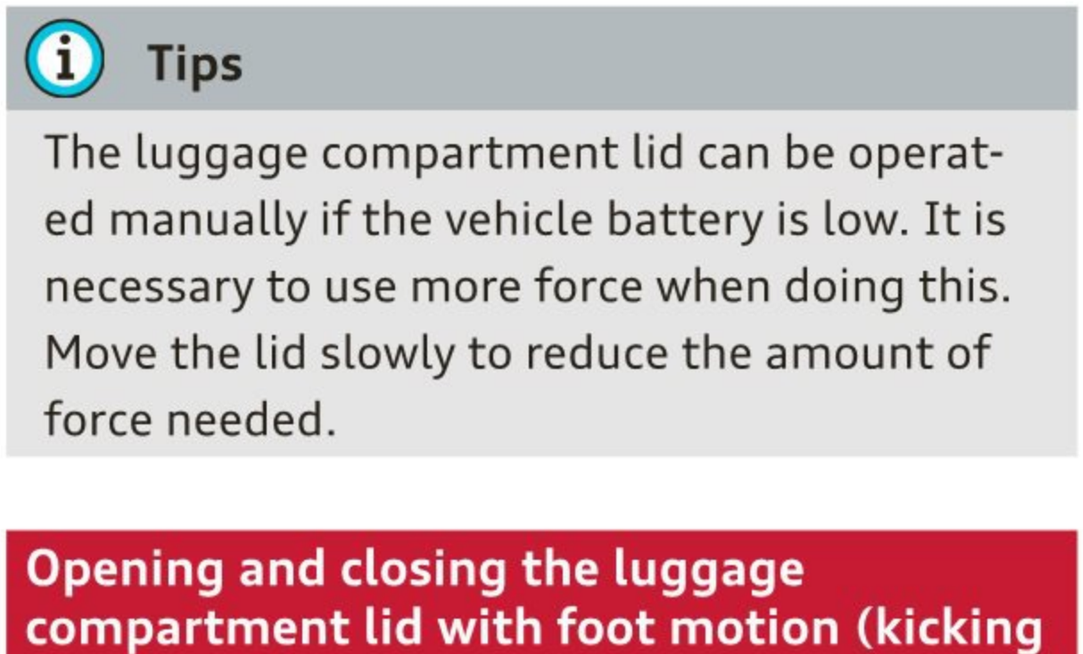


Fig. 32 Vehicle rear: foot motion (example)

The luggage compartment lid can be opened and closed automatically ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 38*.

Requirements: you must be carrying your convenience key* with you. The ignition must be switched off. You must be standing at the center behind the luggage compartment lid.

- ▸ Move your foot back and forth under the bumper one time ⇨ *fig. 32*. Do not touch the bumper. Make sure you have firm footing. The luggage compartment lid will open or close once the system detects the movement. The automatic opening or closing will be canceled if you repeat one of the movements described.

Tips

The luggage compartment lid will only open or close if you perform the movement as described. This prevents the luggage compartment lid from opening or closing due to similar movements, such as when you walk between the rear of the vehicle and your garage door. In some situations, the function may be limited or temporarily unavailable. This may happen if:

– You are standing too close to the bumper or too far away from it
– The luggage compartment lid was closed or opened immediately beforehand
– You park close to a hedge and the branches move back and forth under the vehicle for a long period of time
– You clean your vehicle, for example with a pressure washer or in a car wash
– There is heavy rain
– The bumper is very dirty, for example after driving on salt-covered roads
– There is interference to the vehicle key's radio signal, such as from mobile devices or remote controls

Mechanically unlocking the luggage compartment lid

The luggage compartment lid can be released from the inside in an emergency.

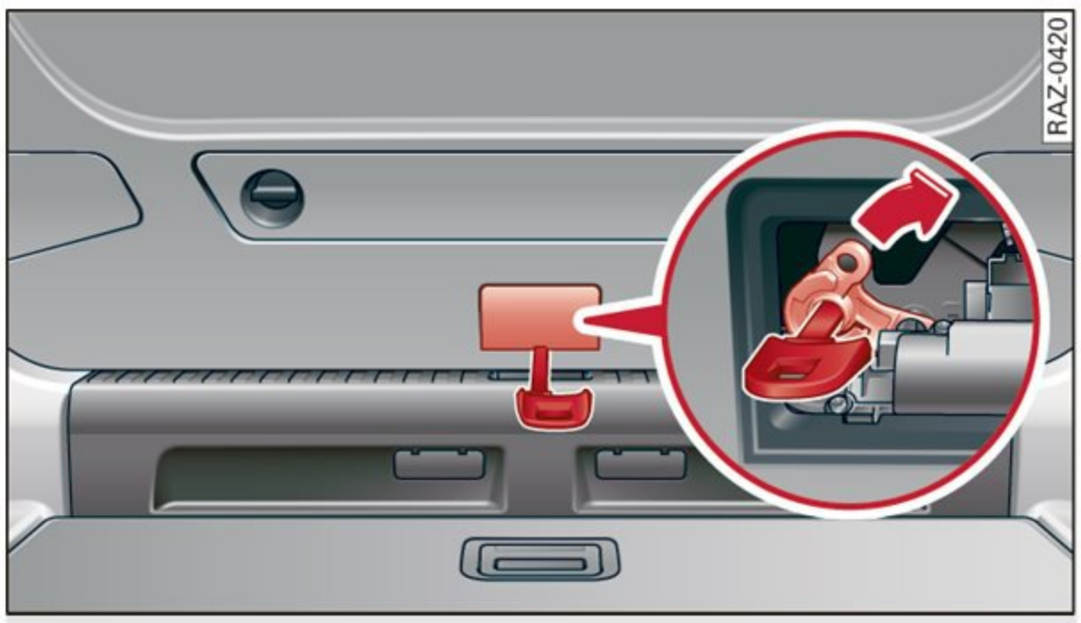


Fig. 33 Inner luggage compartment lid: access to the emergency release

- ▸ Fold the backrest on the rear bench seat forward ⇨ *page 82*.
- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 34*.
- ▸ Using the mechanical key, pry the cover off the luggage compartment trim panel.
- ▸ Press the lever with the mechanical key in the direction of the arrow to release the luggage compartment lid.

WARNING

If you have folded the backrests into the upright position, always check if the lock is correctly engaged by pulling forward on the backrest.

Child safety lock

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside and the rear power windows from being operated.

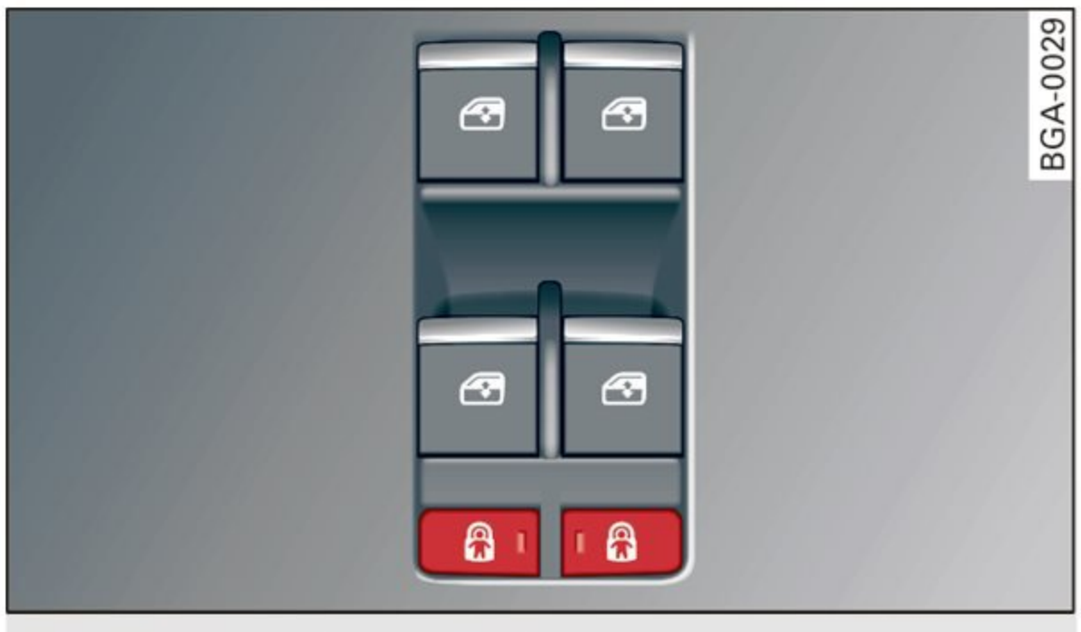


Fig. 34 Driver's door: controls

- ▸ To activate or deactivate the child safety lock (rear power windows and interior door handle) for the rear doors, press the left and/or right button in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 34*. The indicator light in the button turns on/blinks.
- ▸ Make sure the child safety lock is working by checking the function on the rear power window switch and door handle.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with controls for the climate control system in the rear: To also restrict the operation of the climate control system in the rear, select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Operation in rear**

When the child safety lock is switched on, the following functions are disabled:

– The rear inner door handles
– The rear power windows
– The control panel* for the climate control system in the rear

Message in the instrument cluster display

/ Child safety lock: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the child safety lock. Press the button again.

If the message stays on, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise, children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident.
– A malfunction in the child safety lock could allow the rear doors to be opened from the inside, which increases the risk of an accident.

Power windows

Opening and closing the windows

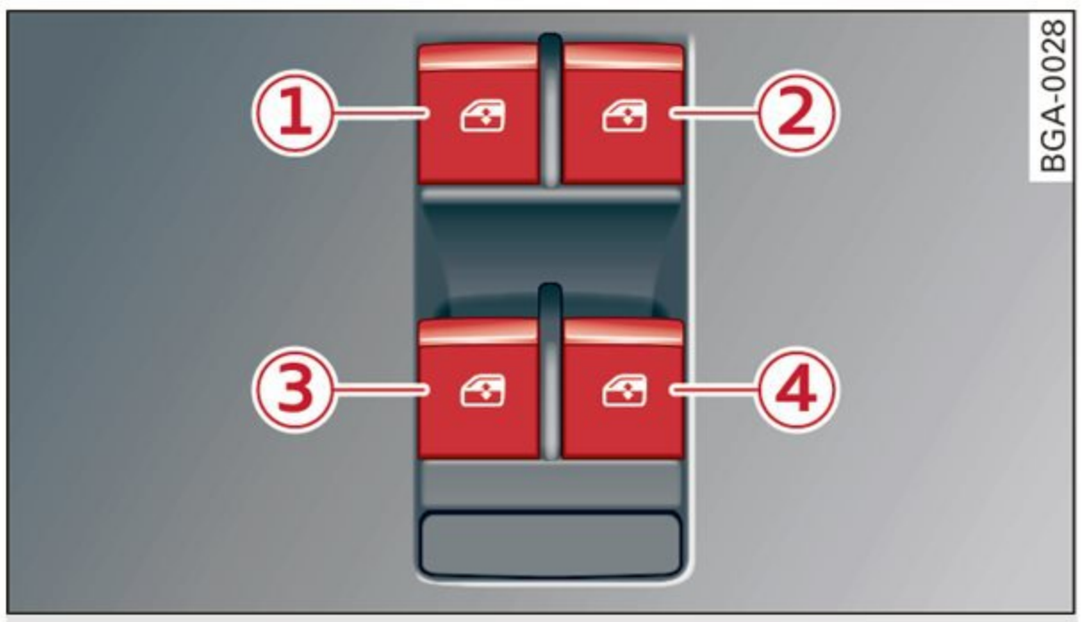


Fig. 35 Driver's door: power window switch

Power window switches:

① Left front door
② Right front door
③ Left rear door
④ Right rear door

Opening and closing the windows

The driver can control all power windows. All power window switches are equipped with a two-stage function:

- ▸ To open or close the window completely, press the switch down or pull the switch up briefly to the second level. The operation will stop if the switch is pressed or pulled again.
- ▸ To select a position in between opened and closed, press or pull the switch to the first level until the desired window position is reached.

Correcting power window malfunctions

You can reactivate the one-touch up/down function if it malfunctions.

- ▸ Pull the power window switch up until the window is completely raised.
- ▸ Release the switch and pull it up again for at least one second.

WARNING

– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise, children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident. The power windows continue to function until the driver's door or front passenger's door has been opened.
– Never close the windows or sunshades carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury.
– Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: When the vehicle is locked from the outside, no one - especially children - should remain in the vehicle, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 33*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Tips

– The windows will automatically open slightly when you open the doors.
– If the window in the driver's or front passenger's door is completely open, it will raise slightly when the door is opened. The window will lower again when you close the door.
– You can still open and close the windows for several minutes after turning the ignition off. The power windows do not switch off until the driver's door or front passenger's door has been opened.

Convenience opening and closing

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

Convenience opening and closing the windows and roof*

You can set in the MMI if all windows or the roof* should open or close all at once ⇨ *page 31, Setting the central locking system*.

- ▸ Press and hold the or button on the vehicle key until all windows and the roof* have reached the desired position ⇨ .
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor* on one of the door handles and continue touching it until all of the windows and the roof* are closed. Do not place your hand in the door handle when doing this. ▶

When all of the windows and the roof* are closed, the turn signals will flash once.

WARNING

– Never close the windows or the roof* carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury.
– For security reasons, the windows and the roof* can only be opened and closed with the vehicle key at a maximum distance of approximately 6.5 feet (2 m) away from the vehicle. Always pay attention when using the button to close the windows and the roof* so that no one is pinched. The closing process will stop immediately when the button is released.

Panoramic glass roof

Operating the roof and roof sunshade

Applies to: vehicles with panoramic glass roof and roof sunshade

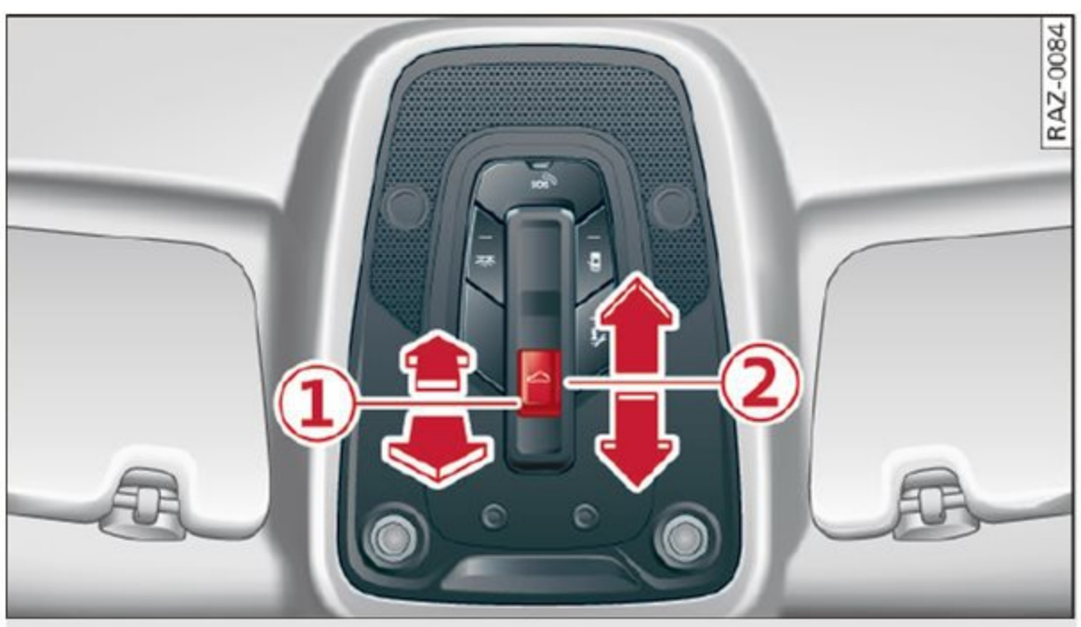


Fig. 36 Headliner: panoramic glass roof and sunshade* buttons

The control buttons are equipped with a two-stage function.

When tilting or opening the roof, the roof sunshade will open partially or completely if the sunshade is closed.

Operating the roof sunshade

- Opening and closing the sunshade: push the switch in the headliner (2) briefly toward the rear or forward to the second level.
- Partially opening the sunshade: press the switch to the first level until the sunshade reaches the desired position.

Operating the roof

- Tilting the roof: press the switch in the headliner briefly upward to the second level (1).
- Closing the tilted roof: pull the switch downward briefly to the second level.
- Applies when the sunshade is open: Opening the roof: push the button toward the rear briefly to the second level (2).
- Closing the roof: push the switch forward briefly to the second level.
- Applies when the sunshade is open: Opening partially: push, press, or pull the switch to the first level until the roof reaches the desired position.

Quick opening and closing

You can also open or close the roof and roof sunshade in one movement.

- Opening the roof and sunshade: slide the switch back briefly twice in a row to the second level (2).
- Closing the opened roof: push the switch forward briefly twice in a row to the second level.

Roof emergency closing

If an object is detected when closing, the roof will open again automatically. In this case, you can then close it with the power emergency closing function.

- Within five seconds after the sunroof opens automatically, pull the applicable button until the roof is closed.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury, always pay attention when closing the roof. Always switch the ignition off and take the key with you when leaving the vehicle.

Note

Always close the roof when you leave the vehicle and when there is precipitation to reduce the risk of damage to the interior equipment, particularly the electronic equipment. ▶

Tips

– After switching off the ignition, the roof and sunshades can still be operated for several minutes as long as neither of the front doors are opened.
– It is not possible to open the roof when temperatures are too low.

Garage door opener

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

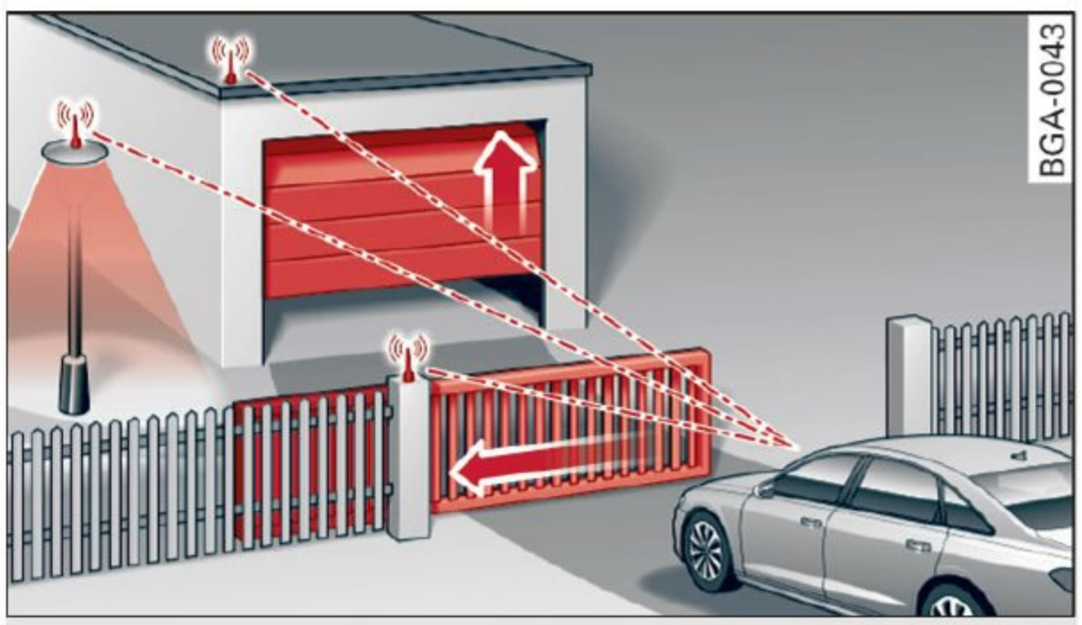


Fig. 37 Garage door opener: examples of usage for different systems

With the garage door opener, you can activate systems such as the garage doors, security systems or house lights from inside your vehicle. These functions are operated in the MMI. Multiple receivers can be programmed, which can control the functions of up to eight[1)] hand-held transmitters.

WARNING

– When operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no people or objects are in the area immediately surrounding the equipment. People can be injured or property can be damaged if struck when closing.
– Do not allow yourself to be distracted from traffic by the viewing and operating the displays.

Tips

– For security reasons, deleting all data stored in the MMI before selling the vehicle is recommended.
– Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **System maintenance** > **Restore factory settings** > **Garage door opener**.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 289*.

Tips

Before you program your system to the garage door opener, first check the compatibility:

– Ask an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or check at www.homelink.com. You can also find more information about HomeLink there.
– You can display information about HomeLink (compatibility level/status/country code/HomeLink generation) in the MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener** > ⓘ.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

Requirements: the remote control transmitter must be programmed ⇨ *page 45*, the vehicle must be within range of the system, and the ignition must be switched on.

There are multiple options to open or close the system (such as the garage door).

▸ If you have only programmed one remote control transmitter, press the ⌂ button on the lower display. Or
▸ If you have programmed multiple remote control transmitters, press the ⌂ button on the lower display and then press the respective system button. Or
▸ If you have configured the programmable steering wheel button*, press the ✻ button ▶

1) The possible number of hand-held transmitters depends on the equipment.

⇨ *page 27* and then press the respective button for the system. Or

- ► Applies to: vehicles with GPS pairing: If you have programmed **GPS pairing**, press on the respective button in the upper display (notification center ⇨ *page 20*). As you approach the system, the button is displayed on the MMI.

If transmission was successful, the message: **Send to: XXX** will appear.

Programming

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

You can program both fixed code and rolling code systems in the MMI using the procedure that is described.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

Programming the system

Requirement: the hand transmitter must be present and the vehicle must be within range of the system (such as the garage door) that you would like to program.

- ► If you are programming the garage door opener for the **first time**, press the button on the lower display. Follow the instructions in the MMI. Or
- ► If you would like to program **other** systems, select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**. Select the desired button: ⊕. Follow the instructions in the MMI.
- ► If you would like to **reprogram** systems that are already programmed, select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**. Press the button and select for the system to be reprogrammed. Select: **Program**. Follow the instructions in the MMI.

With some systems, the garage door opener will be immediately available after programming. With other systems, the garage door opener must also be synchronized.

Synchronizing[1)]

Requirement: the hand transmitter must already be programmed and the vehicle must be within range of the system (such as the garage door).

If the system synchronization is performed directly after the programming procedure, follow the instructions on the MMI.

If you would like to sync at a later time:

- ► Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ► Press the button for the system that you would like to synchronize.
- ► Follow the instructions in the MMI.

GPS pairing

Applies to: vehicles with GPS pairing

For easier operation, you can program your system's location.

- ► Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ► Press the button.
- ► Press the button for the system your vehicle is facing.
- ► Select: **GPS pairing**.
- ► Follow the instructions in the MMI.

Only a maximum of three systems can be displayed in the notification center ⇨ *page 20*. If you would like to have all systems displayed, press .

Renaming programmed systems

You can rename the programmed systems individually.

- ► Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ► Press the button.
- ► Press the button for the system that you would like to rename.
- ► Select: **Rename**.
- ► Follow the instructions in the MMI. ▶

1) Only applies to rolling code systems

Deleting programmed systems

The programmed systems can be deleted individually or all at once.

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ▸ Press the button.
- ▸ To delete an **individual** system, press the ☐ button for the desired system. If the checkmark ✓ is set, select: **Delete**.
- ▸ To delete **all** systems, select: **All** > **Delete**.

Tips

– Make sure the batteries in the hand transmitter are charged before starting the programming process.
– The programming process may take up to 30 seconds. It may be necessary for the hand transmitter to be pressed again in the meantime.
– The garage door opener may need to be synchronized with the system after programming. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for doing this.

Tips

In some cases, the system may need to be programmed in a different mode (“D-Mode”).
– Switch the ignition on.
– Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
– Press and hold the desired button ⊕.
– Select **Yes, in D-Mode** and follow the instructions on the MMI.

Lights and Vision

Exterior lighting

Switching lights on and off

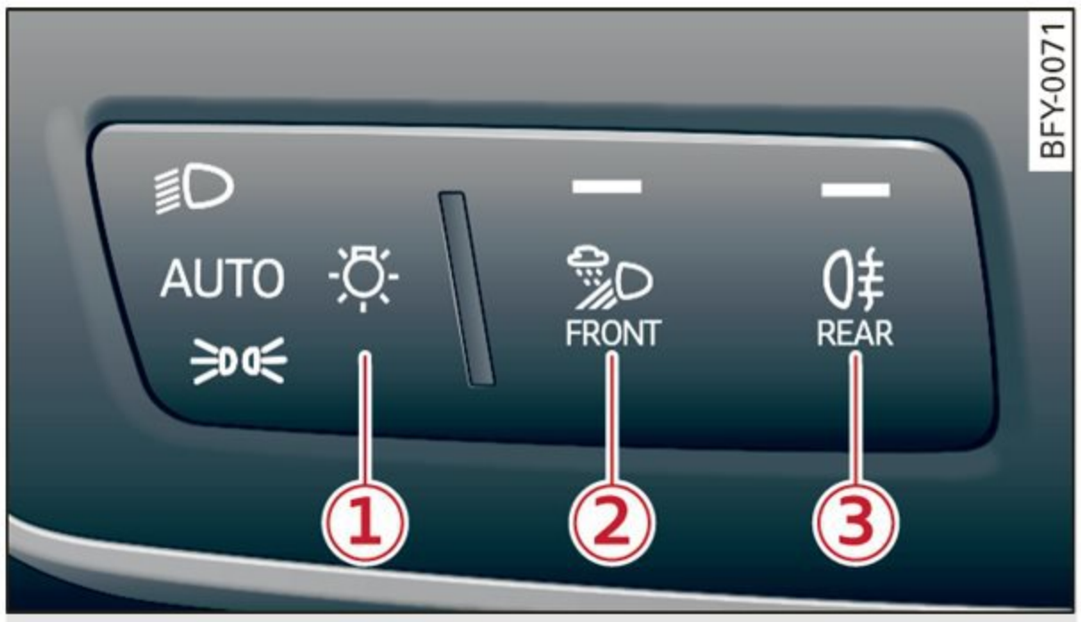


Fig. 38 Instrument panel: light button module

① Light switch

Press and hold ① until the desired light function is selected. The selected function is displayed briefly in the instrument cluster. When switching on the ignition, the AUTO light function is automatically selected.

– AUTO - The automatic headlights adapt to the surrounding brightness automatically. The daytime running lights will automatically turn on. In vehicles for certain markets, you can switch the automatic daytime running lights on and off in the MMI.
– - Low beam headlights. As soon as the ignition is switched on, you can switch on the low beam headlights manually.
– - Parking lights. You can switch on the parking lights at speeds under 20 mph (32 km/h).
– USA models: OFF - you can switch off all light functions at speeds under 6 mph (10 km/h).
– Canada models: OFF - you can only switch of all light functions when the vehicle is parked and the ignition is switched off.

When the low beam headlights or parking lights are switched on, the respective or indicator light appears in the instrument cluster.

② All weather light FRONT

The headlights automatically adjust so that there will be less glare, for example when the road surface is wet.

③ Rear fog lights REAR

To reduce glare for traffic behind your vehicle, the rear fog lights should only be turned on in accordance with the legal requirements in the country where you are operating the vehicle.

Automatic headlight range control

Your vehicle is equipped with automatic headlight range control. It reduces glare for oncoming traffic if the vehicle load changes. The headlight range adjusts automatically.

Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive light

Audi adaptive light provides better visibility when driving in the dark. The lights are adapted to the road conditions based on speed, such as when driving on expressways, rural roads, at intersections, and around curves. The adaptive light only functions when the automatic headlights are activated.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
– Automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually based on the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the low beams under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark.

Tips

– If the vehicle battery has been discharging for a while, the parking light may switch off automatically. Avoid using the parking lights for several hours.
– Follow the regulations applicable to the country where you are operating the vehicle when stopping the vehicle and when using the lighting systems.
– A warning tone will sound if you open the door when the exterior lights are switched on.

– Only the front headlights turn on when the daytime running lights are switched on*. In vehicles in certain markets, the tail lights will also turn on.
– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals, and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.
– When the parking lights are switched on and the ignition is switched off, the symbol appears in the light switch module.

Turn signal

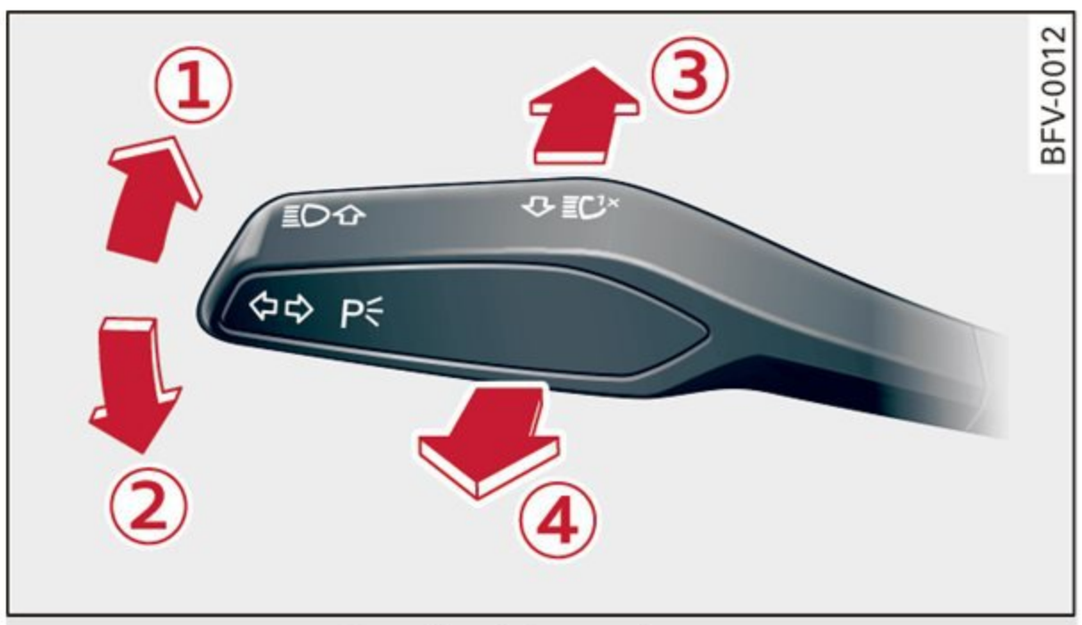


Fig. 39 Turn signal and high beam lever

The lever operates the turn signals, the high beams and the headlight flasher.

Switching on

The turn signals activate when you move the lever into a turn signal position when the ignition is switched on. The respective ⇦ or ⇨ indicator light flashes.

① - Right turn signal

② - Left turn signal

The turn signal blinks three times if you tap the lever (convenience turn signal).

If an indicator light blinks twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Carefully drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

High beam assistant and headlight flasher

Applies to: vehicles with high beam assistant

The high beam assistant automatically turns the high beams on or off depending on the surrounding conditions.

A camera on the rearview mirror mount can detect light sources from other road users. The high beams switch on or off automatically depending on the position of vehicles driving ahead and oncoming vehicles, the vehicle speed, and other environmental and traffic conditions.

Switching on the high beam assistant

Requirement: the automatic headlights must be set and the high beam assistant must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 50*.

▸ To activate the high beam assistant, tap the lever forward ③ ⇨ *page 48, fig. 39*. The AUTO indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display and the high beams are switched on or off automatically. If the high beams were completely or partially switched on, the AUTO indicator light will turn on.

Switching the high beams on or off manually

If the high beams did not switch on or off automatically as expected, you may switch them on or off manually instead:

▸ To switch the high beams on manually, tap the lever forward ③ ⇨ *page 48, fig. 39*. The indicator light turns on.
▸ To switch the high beams off manually, pull the lever back ④ ⇨ *page 48, fig. 39*. The high beam assistant is deactivated.

Operating the headlight flasher

▸ To operate the headlight flashers, pull the lever back ④ ⇨ *page 48, fig. 39*. If the high beam assistant is activated, but the high beams were not turned off, the high beam assistant remains activated.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*. ▶

– High beam assistant is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for controlling the headlights and may need to switch them on and off manually depending on light and visibility conditions.
– High beams can cause glare for other drivers, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for other drivers.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Laser lighting

Applies to: vehicles with laser lighting



Fig. 40 Headlights: label

The laser high beams increase the range of the headlights.

Technical changes to the headlights have significantly increased the range. An additional module integrated in the headlight converts a blue laser light into a white light using a luminescent material.

Switching laser lights on and off

The high beam is controlled by the high beam assistant. The laser high beams switch on shortly after activating the LED high beams if the requirements that follow are met.

Requirement: the AUTO light function must be set, and the high beam assistant and the laser lights must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 50*.

▸ To switch on the high beam assistant, tap the lever forward ③ ⇨ *page 48, fig. 39*. The AUTO indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display and the high beams are switched on or off automatically.

The laser high beams are switched on at speeds above approximately 44 mph (70 km/h), when the high beams are activated. The AUTO indicator light turns on if the high beams are switched on. The AUTO indicator light turns on if the laser lights are switched on.

The laser beam is switched back off when the speed decreases below approximately 30 mph (50 km/h) or when the high beam assistant switches the LED headlights off.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
– All repair procedures on the headlights must be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility that will perform the work according to Audi factory specifications. Incorrect repairs could result in eye injury, impair the function, and may void the vehicle's operating license.
– Opening the laser module is not permitted and could cause permanent injuries to the eyes.
– Dangerous exposure to laser beams may occur if the covers are removed or if the headlamp module housing is opened. ▶

Tips

– The headlight contains a class 4 laser. The technical design converts the laser beam so that there is no danger when it is used for its intended purpose.
– The laser beam emission from the headlamp has been classified in accordance with IEC 60825-1:2007.
– The possible emission is below the threshold for laser class 2.
– Maximum laser beam output: 5W (continuous emission), wavelength range λ= 400 nm – 700 nm.
– The headlamp light functions are rated in accordance with IEC 62471-5:2015.
– The beam emitted from the headlamp was classified as risk group 2.
– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Adjusting the exterior lighting

You can adjust the exterior lighting separately. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

► Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Light & Visibility** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

You can adjust the following settings in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time - you can adjust if the headlights switch on **Early**, **Medium** or **Late** according to the sensitivity of the light sensor.

High beam assistant - you can switch the high beam assistant on and off.

High beam assistant > **Laser lights** - you can switch the laser lights on and off.

Entry/exit lighting

When it is dark, the **Entry/exit lighting** illuminates the area around the vehicle when unlocking the vehicle and after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door. The entry/exit lighting only works when it is dark and the light switch is in the **AUTO** light function.

Daytime running lights

USA models: the daytime running lights can be switched on and off.

Canada models: this function cannot be switched off. They activate automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Emergency flashers



Fig. 41 Center console: emergency flashers

The emergency flashers help to make other drivers aware of your vehicle in dangerous situations.

► Press the ⚠ (1) button to switch the emergency flashers on or off.

You can indicate a lane change or a turn when the emergency flashers are switched on by using the turn signal lever. The emergency flashers stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

Tips

You should switch the emergency flashers on if:

– you are the last car in a traffic jam so that all other vehicles approaching from behind can see your vehicle
– your vehicle has broken down or you are having an emergency
– your vehicle is being towed or if you are towing another vehicle

Messages

If the indicator light turns on, a bulb has failed. The displayed message indicates the cause and possible solutions. If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Audi adaptive light: malfunction! See owner's manual

Adaptive light is not working. The headlights still function. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

OLED tail light: malfunction! Switched off permanently. See owner's manual

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Headlight assistant: malfunction! See owner's manual

You can still switch the high beams on or off manually. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

High beam assistant: currently unavailable. Camera view limited due to surroundings. See owner's manual

This message appears if the camera's visual field is blocked. The system will switch itself off. Try switching the systems on again later.

Automatic headlights: malfunction! See owner's manual

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning. The low beams remain switched on at all times for safety reasons with the AUTO light function. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Interior lighting

Front interior lighting



Fig. 42 Headliner: interior lighting (example)

Press the corresponding button in the headliner to activate the following:

* - Interior lighting on/off

- Door contact switch on/off. The interior lighting is controlled automatically.

Touch-sensitive reading lights*

- ▸ To turn a reading light on or off, touch the surface (1) briefly.
- ▸ To activate the manual dimming function, touch the surface (1) when the light is switched off and keep touching it until the desired brightness is reached.

Rear interior lighting

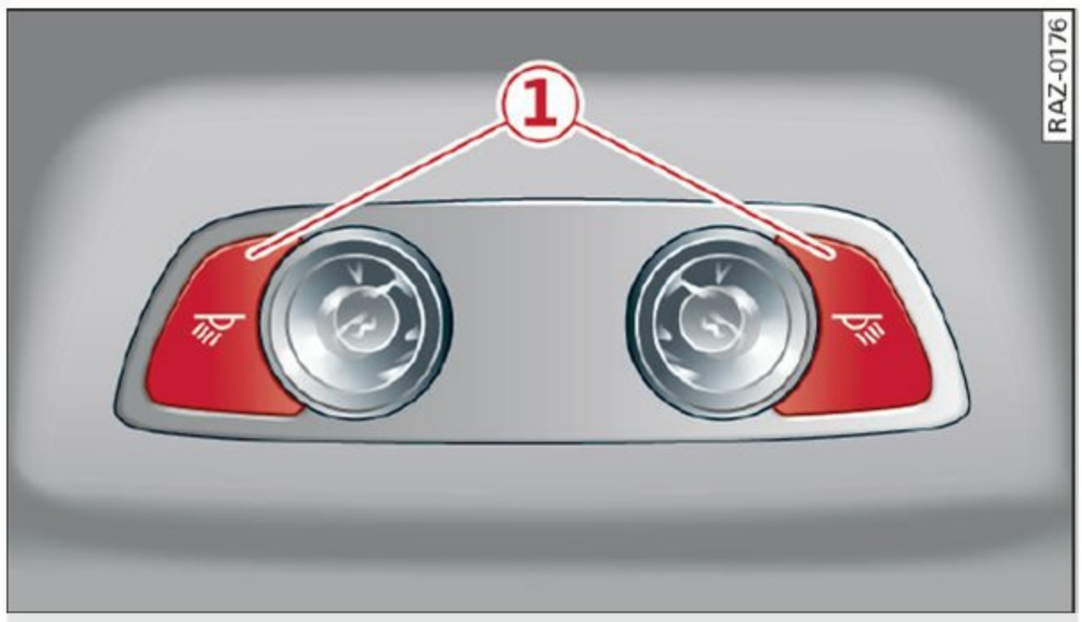


Fig. 43 Headliner: reading lights

Reading lights

- ▸ To switch the reading lamp on or off, press the button (1).
- ▸ To activate the manual dimming function*, touch the surface when the light is switched off ▶

and ① and keep touching it until the desired brightness is reached.

Interior lighting

Applies to: vehicles with interior lighting

The ambient lighting turns on when the ignition is switched on. The ambient lighting is deactivated when the light function is OFF.

You can adjust the interior lighting individually. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Light & Visibility** > **Interior lighting**.

You can choose among predefined color profiles, such as **Maritime**.

Additional settings and profiles:

- **Brightness**: you can adjust the brightness for all of the interior lighting.
- **Individual**: you can adjust the brightness and color of the interior lighting separately, divided into contour and surface lighting.
- **Drive select**: the contour and surface lighting color changes depending on the driving program selected in **Audi drive select**.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Display brightness

You can adjust the instrument and display illumination separately. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness**.

Possible settings in the MMI:

- **Cockpit dimming**
- **Head-up display**
- **MMI**
- **Virtual cockpit**

Vision

Adjusting exterior mirrors



Fig. 44 Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors

Turn the knob in the driver's door to the desired position:

0 - All adjustment functions are deactivated.

/ - Adjusts the left/right exterior mirror. Move the knob in the desired direction.

- Heats* the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature.

- Folds the exterior mirrors*. To fold the mirrors out, turn the knob to one of the other positions. You can select if the mirrors fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle In the MMI ⇨ *page 31*.

Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

To help you see the curb when backing into a parking space, the surface of the mirror tilts slightly. For this to happen, the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's exterior mirror.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction.

The mirror moves from the reversing position back to the original position:

- When you switch the ignition off
- Once you drive forward at speeds faster than 9 mph (15 km/h)
- When the knob is no longer in the position for the front passenger exterior mirror ▶

WARNING

Curved mirror surfaces (for example convex) enlarge the field of vision. However, they make objects in the mirror appear smaller and farther away. When using these mirrors to estimate your distance to vehicles behind you when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Applies to: vehicles with power folding exterior mirrors: If the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must use the power folding function to fold the mirror all the way out. The mirrors will make a loud noise when they latch into place. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this could impair the function of the mirror mechanism.
– Applies to: vehicles without power folding exterior mirrors: If the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must move it back in place by hand.
– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Never fold power folding exterior mirrors* by hand. Only fold them in and out using the power controls.

Tips

– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.
– If the power adjusting function malfunctions, the glass in both mirrors can be adjusted by pressing on the edge of it by hand.

Dimming the mirrors

Manual dimming rearview mirror

▸ Pull the lever on the bottom of the mirror back.

Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

▸ The interior and exterior mirrors dim automatically when light shines on them, for example from headlights on a vehicle behind you.

WARNING

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory system. If there is contact with the fluid, flush immediately with plenty of water. Consult a physician if necessary.
– Repeated or long-term exposure to electrolyte fluid can lead to irritation of the airways, especially in people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Take deep breaths immediately after leaving the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all of the doors and windows as wide as possible.
– If electrolyte fluid enters the eyes, flush them thoroughly with a large amount of clean water for at least 15 minutes and then seek medical attention.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then clean with soap and water and seek medical attention. Clean affected clothing and shoes thoroughly before wearing again.
– If the fluid was swallowed and the person is conscious, flush the mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless this is recommended by medical professionals. Seek medical attention immediately.

Note

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid damages plastic surfaces and paint. Clean this liquid as quickly as possible, for example with a wet sponge.

Tips

– If the light reaching the rearview mirror is obstructed, the automatic dimming mirror will not function correctly, ▸

– The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.

Sun visors

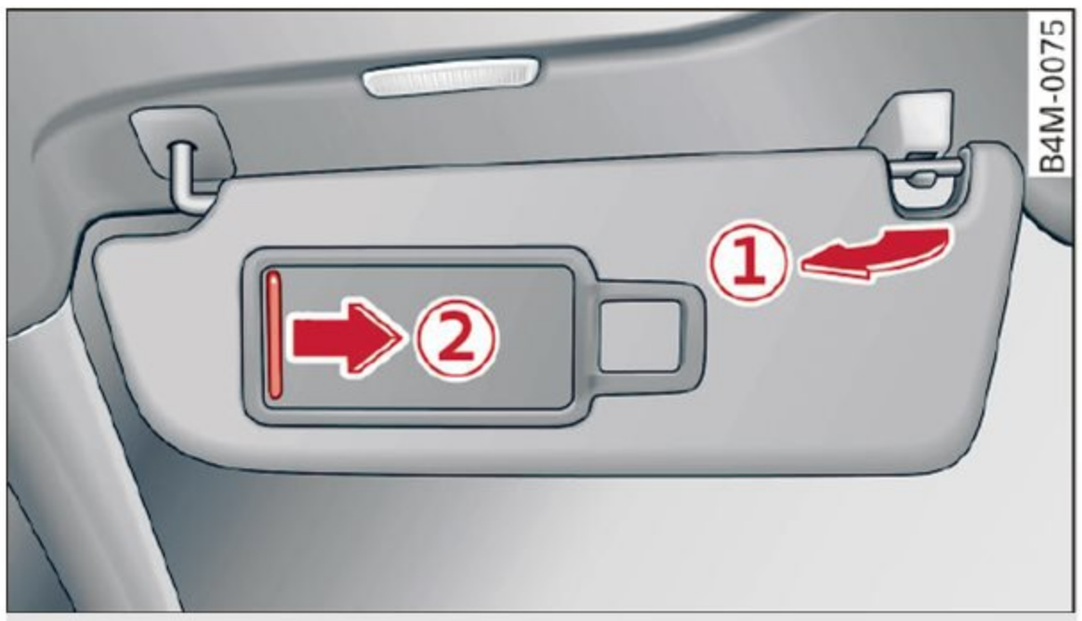


Fig. 45 Sun visor

Sun visor

The sun visors for the driver and front passenger can be released from their mounts and turned toward the doors ①.

They can also be moved back and forth lengthwise in this position.

Vanity mirror

The mirror light switches on when the cover over the vanity mirror ② opens.

Windshield wipers

Switching the windshield wipers on

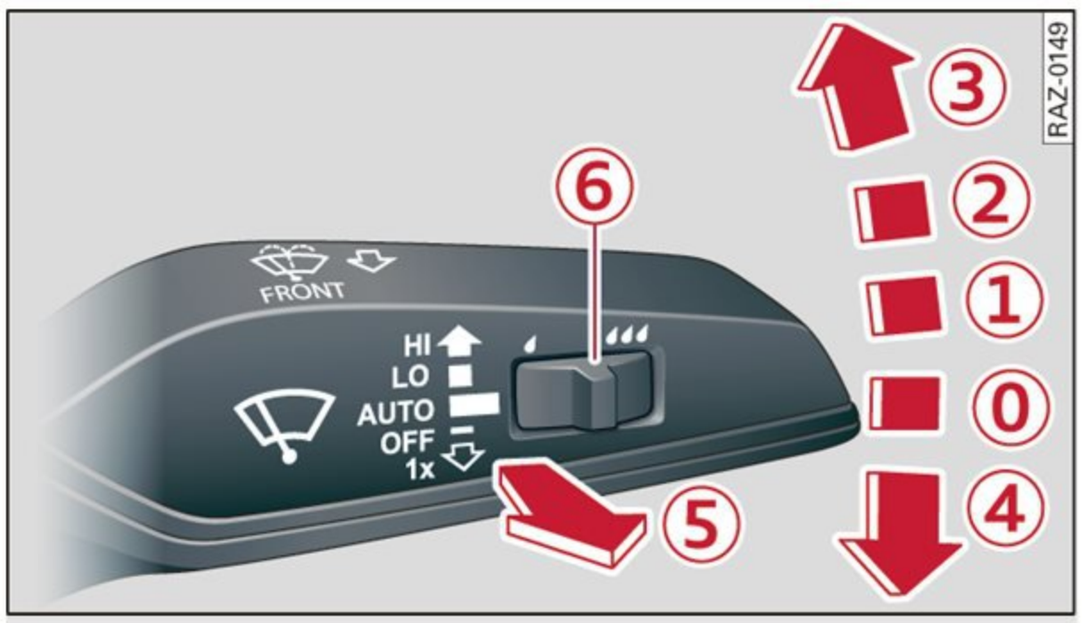


Fig. 46 Windshield wiper lever

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

⓪ - Windshield wipers off

① - Rain sensor/interval mode. The windshield wipers switch on once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h) and it is raining. The higher the sensitivity of the rain sensor that is set (switch ⑥ to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode, which switches the interval mode on. In intermittent mode, you can adjust the interval time using the switch ⑥. Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Light & Visibility** > **Rain sensor**.

② - Slow wiping

③ - Fast wiping

④ - Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping.

⑤ - Clean the windshield. The wipers wipe one time after several seconds of driving to remove water droplets. You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position ⑤ within 10 seconds of the afterwipe. The afterwipe function is reactivated the next time you switch the ignition on.

Clean the headlights. The headlight washer system operates only when the low beam headlights are switched on. If you move the lever to position ⑤, the headlights and the night vision assist camera* are cleaned at intervals.

WARNING

– The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver may still be responsible for manually switching the wipers on based on visibility conditions.
– The windshield must not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, can cause increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.
– Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 55, Cleaning or replacing the wiper blades*.

Note

– If there is frost, make sure the windshield wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers when the blades are frozen to the windshield can damage the wiper blades.
– Prior to using a car wash, the windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position 0). This prevents the wipers from switching on unintentionally and causing damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

– The windshield wipers switch off when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched on again by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.
– Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
– The washer fluid nozzles for the windshield washer system are heated when the ignition is on if the outside temperature is low.
– When stopping temporarily, such as at a traffic light, the speed of the windshield wipers automatically reduces by one level.

Cleaning or replacing the wiper blades

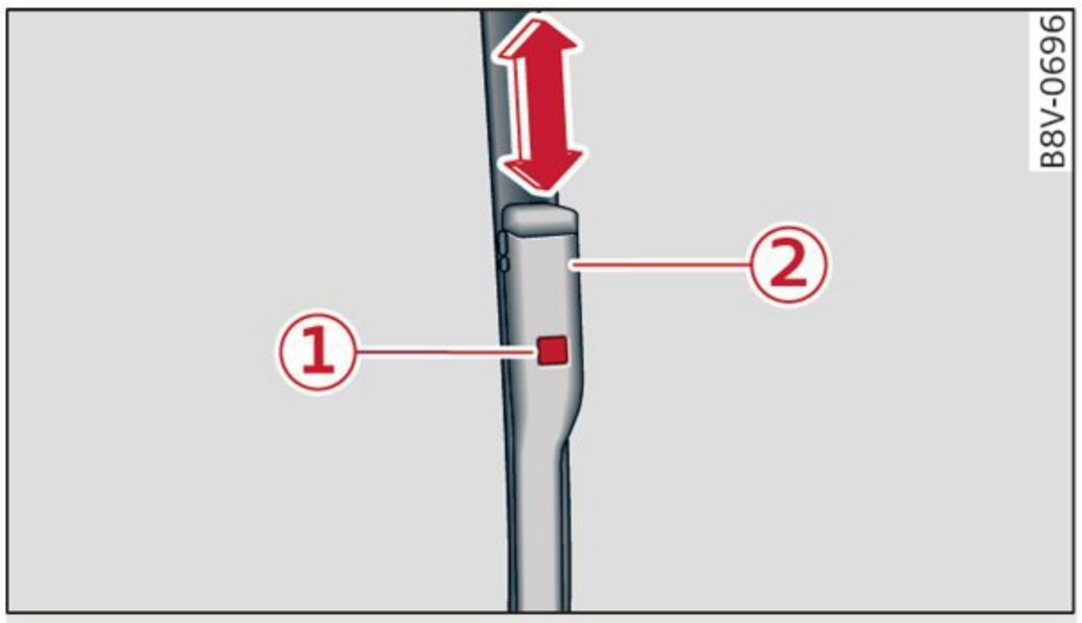


Fig. 47 Removing windshield wiper blades

Windshield wiper service position/blade replacement position

► Switch off the ignition and hold the windshield wiper lever in position 4 ⇨ *page 54, fig. 46* until the windshield wiper moves into the service position.
► To bring the windshield wipers back to the normal position, switch the ignition on and hold the windshield wiper lever in position 4 until the windshield wipers go back to the normal position, or drive faster than 8 mph (12 km/h).

You can also turn the service position on or off in the MMI:

► Switch the windshield wipers off (position 0 ⇨ *page 54, fig. 46*).
► Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Wiper change position**.

Cleaning the wiper blades

Before cleaning the wiper blades, they must be in the service position.

► Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
► For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *table on page 261*.

Replacing the wiper blades

Before removing the wiper blades, they must be in the service position.

► Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
► Press the locking knob 1 on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
► Remove the wiper blade from the windshield wiper arm mount 2.
► Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
► Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
► Exit the service position.

WARNING

– For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.
– Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident. ▶

Note

– The windshield wipers must only be folded up when in the service position! Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
– You should not move your vehicle or press the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded up from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.

Tips

– You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.
– You cannot activate the service position when the hood is open.

Messages

If the indicator light turns on, then there is a windshield wiper malfunction. The displayed message indicates the cause and possible solutions. If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Automatic wipers: malfunction! See owner's manual

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning. You can still control all functions that are independent of the rain sensor through the windshield wiper lever. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Digital compass

Switching the compass on and off

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

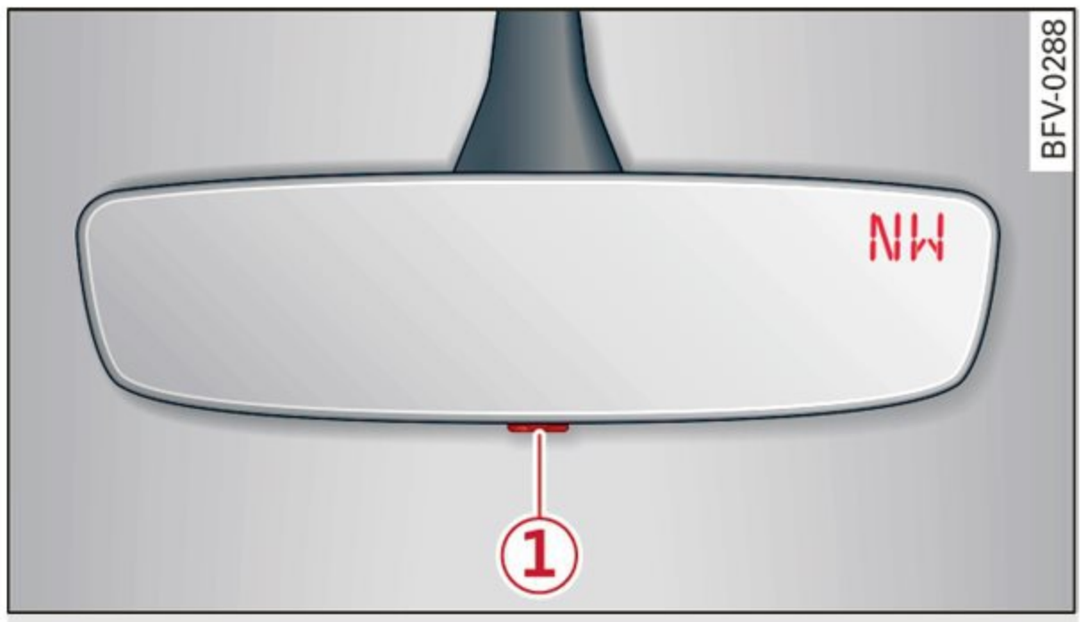


Fig. 48 Rearview mirror: digital compass is switched on

▸ To turn the compass on or off, press the button 1 until the compass display in the mirror turns on or off.

The digital compass only works when the ignition is turned on. The directions are indicated with abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (northeast), **E** (east), **SE** (southeast), **S** (south), **SW** (southwest), **W** (west), **NW** (northwest).

Tips

To prevent inaccurate compass readings, do not bring any remote controls, electrical devices or metallic objects near the mirror.

Adjusting the magnetic zone

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

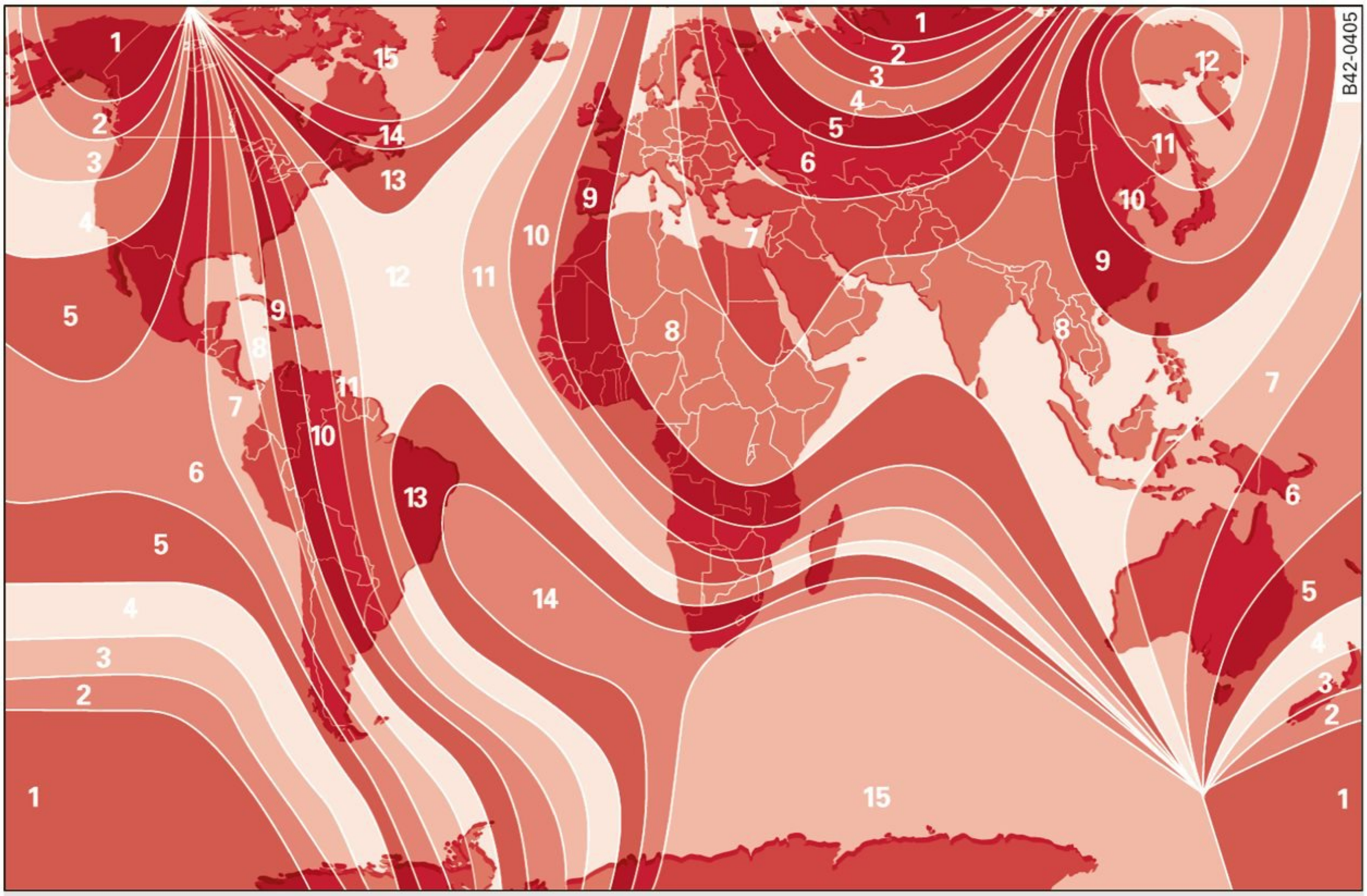


Fig. 49 Magnetic zone map

The magnetic zone must be adjusted correctly for the compass to read accurately.

- ▸ Press and hold the button ① ⇨ *page 56, fig. 48* until the number of the magnetic zone appears in the interior rearview mirror.
- ▸ Press the button ① repeatedly to select the correct magnetic zone. The selection mode turns off after a few seconds.

WARNING

To reduce the risk to yourself and other drivers, calibrate the compass in an area where there is no traffic.

Calibrating the compass

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

You must recalibrate the compass if it does not display the correct direction.

- ▸ Press and hold the button ① until a **C** ⇨ *page 56, fig. 48* appears in the interior rearview mirror.
- ▸ Drive in a circle at about 6 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is displayed in the rearview mirror.

4K8012721BA

Sitting correctly and safely

Correct passenger seating position

General information

The correct seating position for all passengers is vital for safe driving and is the responsibility of the driver.

Correct seating position

Before you begin driving, seat yourself correctly and always maintain the correct seating position during the trip. Before each trip, instruct your passengers to seat themselves correctly and to maintain this seating position during the trip. Make sure that:

- Every passenger in the vehicle has adjusted his or her seat correctly ⇨ *page 58*
- The steering wheel is adjusted correctly ⇨ *page 61*
- The mirrors are adjusted so that there is a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle ⇨ *page 52*
- Every passenger in the vehicle has his or her head restraint adjusted correctly ⇨ *page 63*
- Every passenger in the vehicle has his or her safety belt fastened correctly ⇨ *page 64*
- Every passenger in the vehicle keeps his or her feet in the footwell
- The activation status of the front passenger's airbag is suitable for the passenger in the front passenger's seat ⇨ *page 70*
- Children are secured in suitable child safety seats that are secured to appropriate vehicle seats ⇨ *page 72*. Read and observe the important safety information pertaining to the use of child safety seats on the front passenger's seat ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 72*.

WARNING

Incorrect seating positions, failure to wear a safety belt, or being too close to an airbag increase the risk of serious injury or death to vehicle occupants, especially if the airbags deploy and come into contact with occupants who are not seated correctly. Note the important information and warnings in the chapters for the topics given above.

Tips

- Save your seat profile* ⇨ *page 67*. This allows you to access your personal seat profile quickly and easily at any time.
- If you or other vehicle passengers have physical limitations that prevent sitting in a correct position, modifications to the vehicle may be necessary. For more information, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or call Audi customer support at 1-800-822-2834.

Front seats

General information

Make sure that:

- You can press the pedals down completely when your legs are slightly bent
- The distance between your upper body and the steering wheel or instrument panel is at least 10 in (25 cm)
- The distance between your knees and the instrument panel is at least 4 in (10 cm)
- Your thighs are lightly supported by the front surface of the seat
- The backrest is in an upright position and your back is resting against it
- You have a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle
- You have a clear view of the instrument cluster, indicator lights, and the head-up display*

Seat settings menu: quick access

Applies to: vehicles with seat settings in the MMI

If you press on the image of the driver's or front passenger's seat in the climate control system menu ⇨ *page 84, fig. 80* ①, you will go directly to the seat settings for that seat.

WARNING

- If you are too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel, the airbag system cannot ▶

provide the optimum protection, which increases the risk of injury and death.
– To reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking maneuvers or accidents, never drive with the backrest reclined very far. The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the seat belt correctly. If the backrest is angled back too far, the safety belt can shift to soft areas of the body, such as the stomach, which increases the risk of injury.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary.
– Be careful when adjusting the seat. Lack of control or attention when adjusting can result in injuries due to pinching to vehicle occupants both in the front seats and rear seats.
– Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Objects could shift and enter the area around the pedals, which could prevent you from using them. You would then be unable to use the pedals if sudden driving or braking maneuvers were needed, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Make sure that the floor mats are always securely attached.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, never place additional floor mats or other floor covers over the installed floor mats, because this reduces the pedal's range of motion and can impair pedal operation.
– To reduce the risk of injury, never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window, or on the seat surfaces. This also applies to passengers in the rear seats.

Tips

If a seat is controlled by two different controls at the same time, for example by the buttons on the seat and on the MMI, the adjustment process will be automatically canceled.

Adjusting the front power seats

Applies to: vehicles with power adjustable seats

You can adjust the basic settings using the buttons.

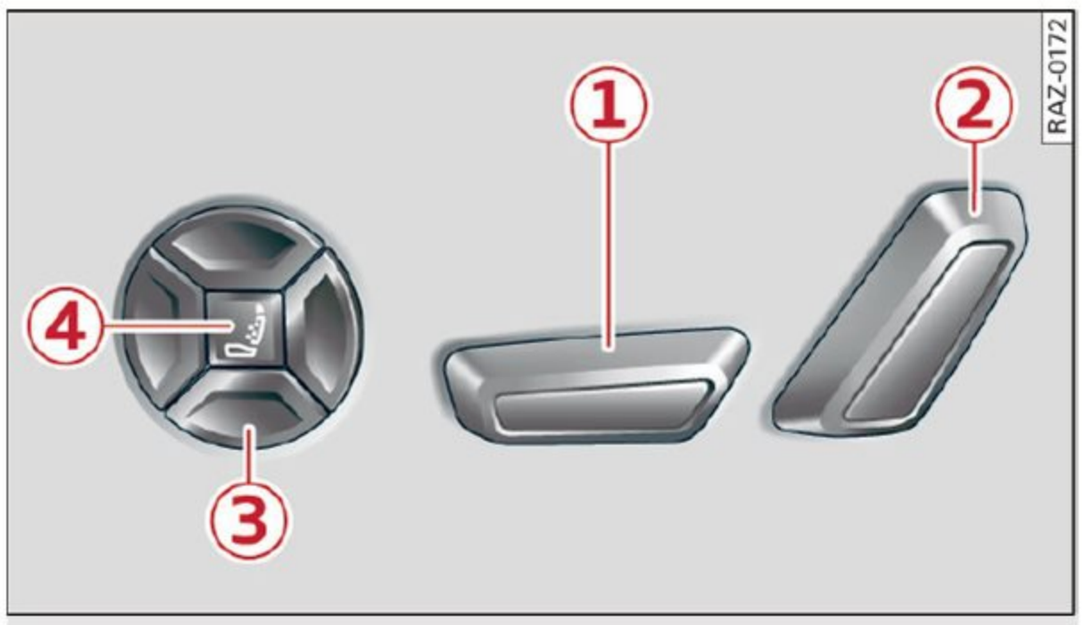


Fig. 50 Front seat: seat adjustment buttons

Adjusting the seat position

- ▸ To adjust the seat forward or back, press the button ① forward or backward.
- ▸ To move the seat up or down, press the button ① upward or downward.
- ▸ To adjust the front or rear seat surfaces, press the front or rear part of the button ① upward or downward.

Adjusting the backrests

- ▸ To adjust the backrest so that it is higher or lower, press the button ② forward or backward.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- ▸ To adjust the curvature of the lumbar support, press the left or right button ③.
- ▸ To adjust the height of the lumbar support, press the upper or lower button ③.

Massage function*

Switch the massage function on or off ④. Adjust the massage type and intensity ⇨ *page 60*

WARNING

The power front seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off. To reduce the risk of injury, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with manually adjustable head restraints

To reduce the risk of damage, be very careful when adjusting the seat to make sure the head restraints do not come into contact with the headliner or the sunroof*.

Adjusting the front seats in the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with seat settings in the MMI

You can adjust additional settings in the MMI.



Fig. 51 Upper display: seat adjustment (example)

Operating

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Seats**.
- ▸ To access the various menus ③, swipe to the left or right. The number of menus depends on the vehicle equipment.
- ▸ To switch between the driver's and front passenger's seat settings, press the 〉 or 〈 button ④.

A red marking in the symbol indicates if you are adjusting the driver's or front passenger's seat.

Seat adjustment*

- ▸ To select a seat setting, press a button ① if necessary.
- ▸ Press the respective arrow ② until the desired position is reached.

Side bolsters* - you can increase or decrease the lateral support in the seat using the side bolsters on the seat surface and the backrest.

Upper thigh support* - you can increase or decrease the upper thigh support.

Massage*

See ⇨ *page 60*

Additional seat settings

See ⇨ *page 61*

Front seat massage function

Applies to: vehicles with massage function

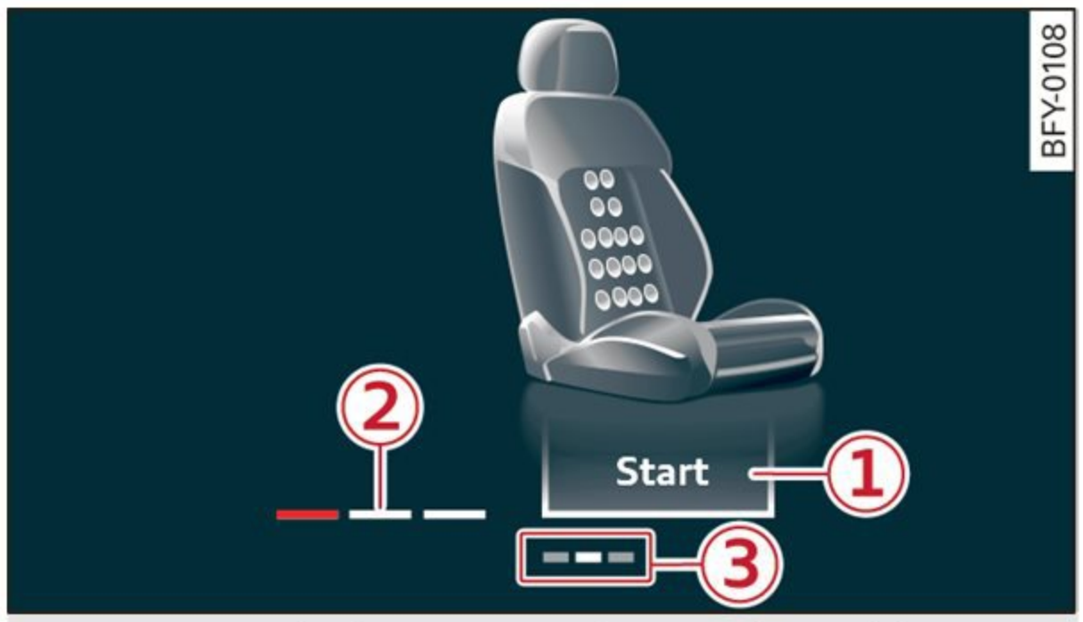


Fig. 52 Upper display: massage function (example)

Operating

- ▸ To access the **Massage** menu, press the button ④ ⇨ *page 59, fig. 50*. Or:
- ▸ Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Seats** > **Massage**.

Switching the massage function on or off

- ▸ To switch the massage function on or off, press the button ④ ⇨ *page 59, fig. 50*. Or:
- ▸ Press **Start/Stop** ① on the MMI.

Adjusting the massage type and intensity

- ▸ To adjust the massage type, press the desired button on the MMI, for example **Wave**.
- ▸ To adjust the intensity of the massage, press the button ② on the MMI until the desired level is activated.

Tips

- – The massage function switches off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.
- – If you swipe to the left or right in the **Massage** menu, you may access additional menus ③ with seat settings, depending on vehicle equipment.

Additional seat settings in the MMI

You can adjust additional settings and switch functions on or off in the MMI.

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Seats** > **Additional seat settings**.

Reset seat position*

You can move the front passenger's seat back to the factory default settings.

Driver's seat entry assistance*

If the function is switched on, the driver's seat will automatically move back when the driver's door is opened. The steering column will automatically move upward ⇨ *page 62*. The air will be released from the side bolsters*.

Front passenger's seat entry assistance*

If the function is switched on, the front passenger's seat will automatically move back when the front passenger's door is opened. The air will be released from the side bolsters*.

Adjusting the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat

Applies to: vehicles with front passenger seat adjustment

The driver can move the front passenger's seat into various positions.

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Seats** > 〉.
▸ To switch on the function, press the button. The lower edge of the button will turn red.
▸ You will then be able to adjust the front passenger's seat using the driver's seat buttons ⇨ *page 59, fig. 50*.

Tips

The function switches off automatically when you exit the menu.

Front center armrest

Applies to: vehicles with a front center armrest

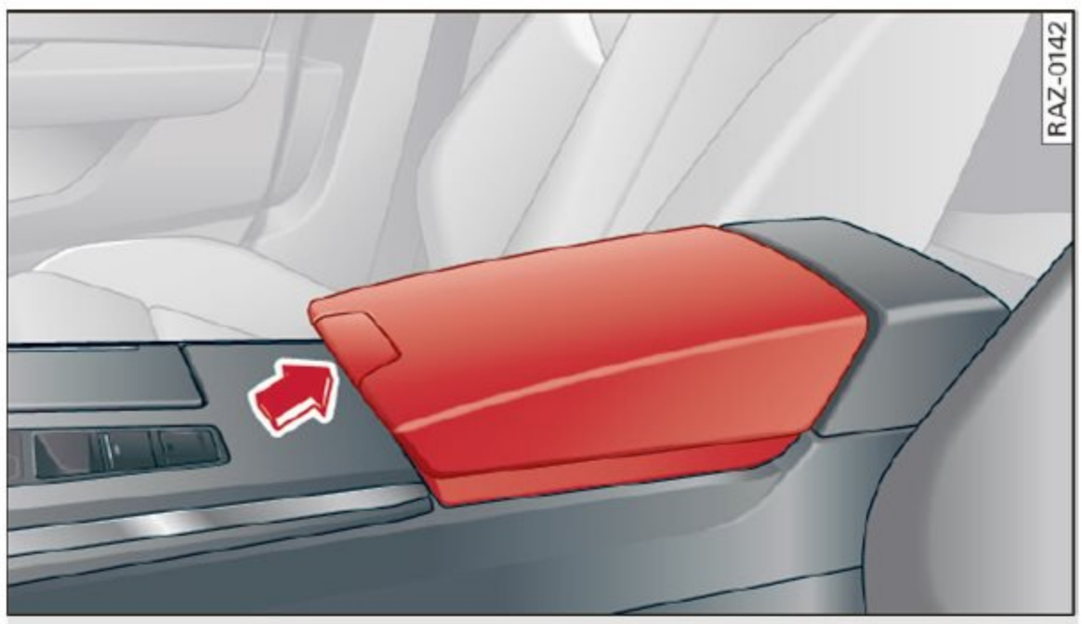


Fig. 53 Cockpit: center armrest

Opening the storage compartment

▸ Move the armrest upward.

Adjusting the center armrest

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable center armrest

The armrest can slide forward and back.

▸ To adjust the angle, raise the armrest from the starting position in stages.
▸ To bring the armrest back into the starting position, raise it out of the top level and fold it back down.

WARNING

In certain positions, the front center armrest can interfere with the driver’s arm movement, which increases the risk of injury.

Steering wheel

General information

Make sure that:

– The distance between your upper body and the steering wheel is at least 10 in (25 cm)
– Your arms are bent slightly at the elbows
– You have a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle and can always keep the instrument cluster and head-up display* in view
– You are always holding the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge at the sides (9:00 and 3:00 position) when driving ▶

WARNING

- If you are too close to the steering wheel, the driver's airbag cannot provide optimum protection, which increases the risk of injury or death.
- Never hold the steering wheel in the 12:00 position or in any other way, such as holding the center of the steering wheel. Otherwise, your arms, hands, and head could be injured in the event that the driver's airbag deploys.

Adjusting the steering wheel position manually

Applies to: vehicles with manual steering wheel adjustment

The steering wheel position is adjustable up and down and forward and back.

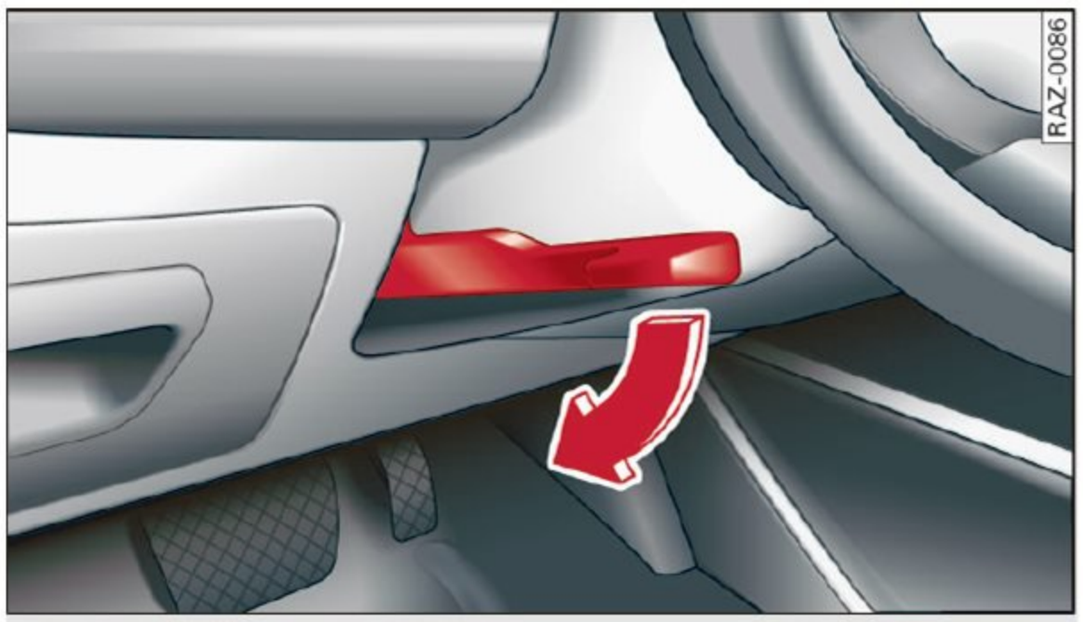


Fig. 54 Steering column: lever for adjusting the steering wheel position

- ▸ Pull the lever in the direction of the arrow.
- ▸ Bring the steering wheel into the desired position.
- ▸ Push the lever all the way up until it engages.

Power steering wheel position adjustment

Applies to: vehicles with power steering wheel adjustment

The steering wheel position can be adjusted electrically up/down and forward/back.

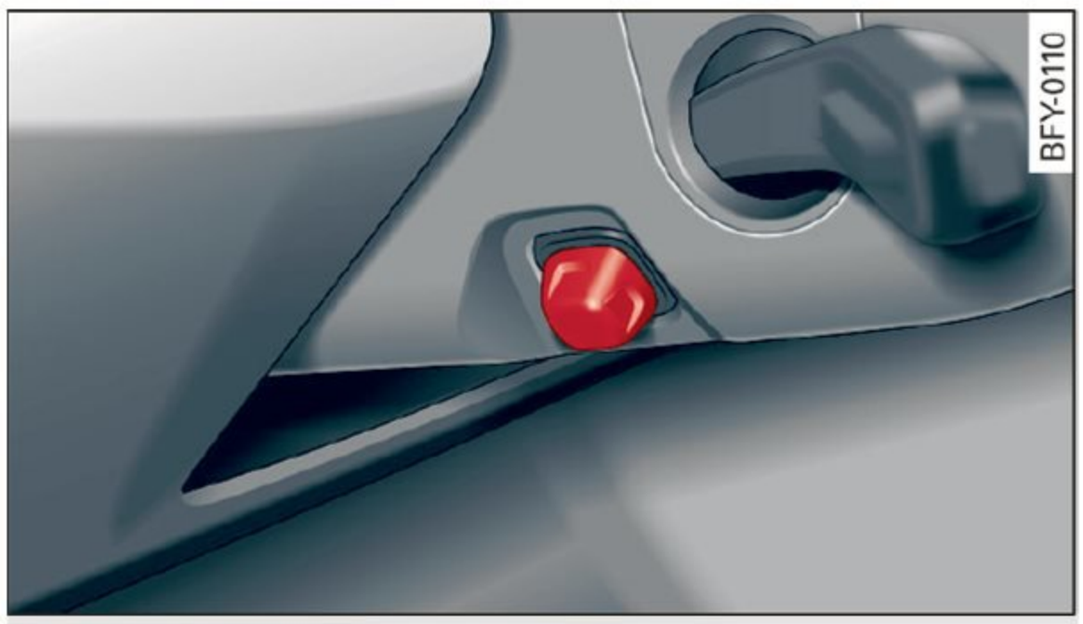


Fig. 55 Steering column: switch for adjusting the steering wheel position

- ▸ To move the steering wheel up or down, press the switch upward or downward.
- ▸ To move the steering wheel forward or back, press the switch forward or back.

The steering wheel can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off.

In vehicles with memory function*, the steering column settings are stored together with the seat position.

Tips

The entry assistance makes entering and exiting the vehicle easier, because the steering column moves upward into the park position when the ignition is switched off. After entering the vehicle, the steering column returns to the stored position once the ignition is switched on. To use entry assistance, select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Seats** > **Additional seat settings** > **Driver seat entry assistance**.

Head restraints

General information

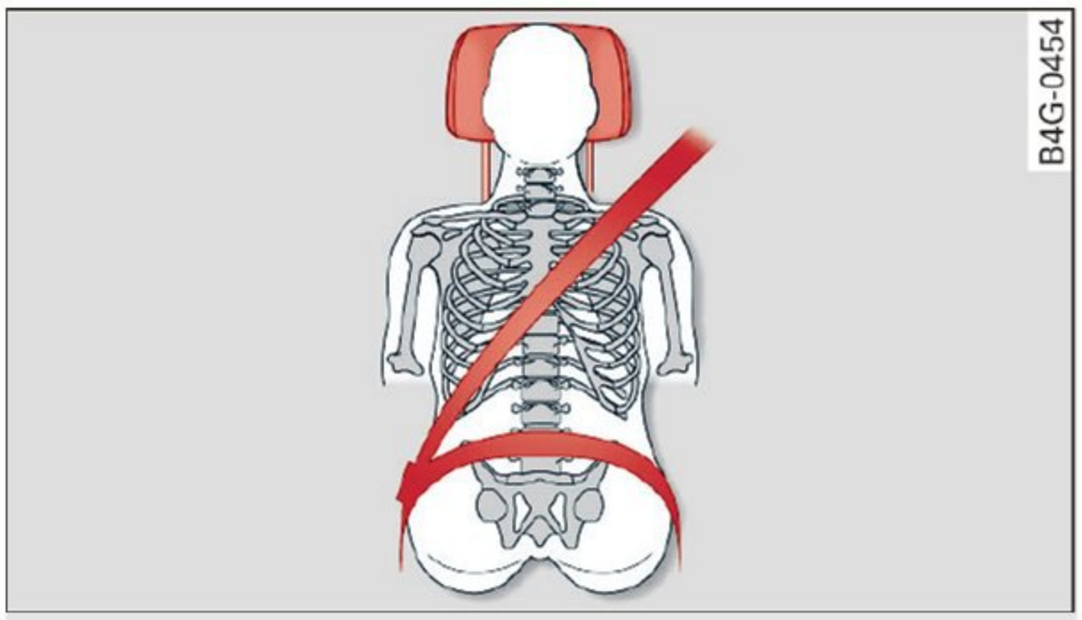


Fig. 56 Correctly adjusted head restraints

Make sure that:

– The upper edge of the head restraint is as even as possible with the top of your head
– The head restraint is as close as possible to the back of your head
– The head restraints on the occupied rear seats are positioned all the way up

WARNING

– There is one head restraint for each seat. All vehicle occupants must adjust the head restraint correctly before every trip. Having head restraints that are not adjusted correctly or not installed in the vehicle increases the risk of a neck injury during sudden or unexpected driving or braking maneuvers or in a collision.
– Only remove the rear seat head restraints if it is necessary to install a child safety seat ⇨ *page 72*. Stow the removed head restraints securely, for example in the luggage compartment. Reinstall the head restraints immediately once the child safety seat has been removed. Driving without head restraints increases the risk of serious neck injuries.

Front head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

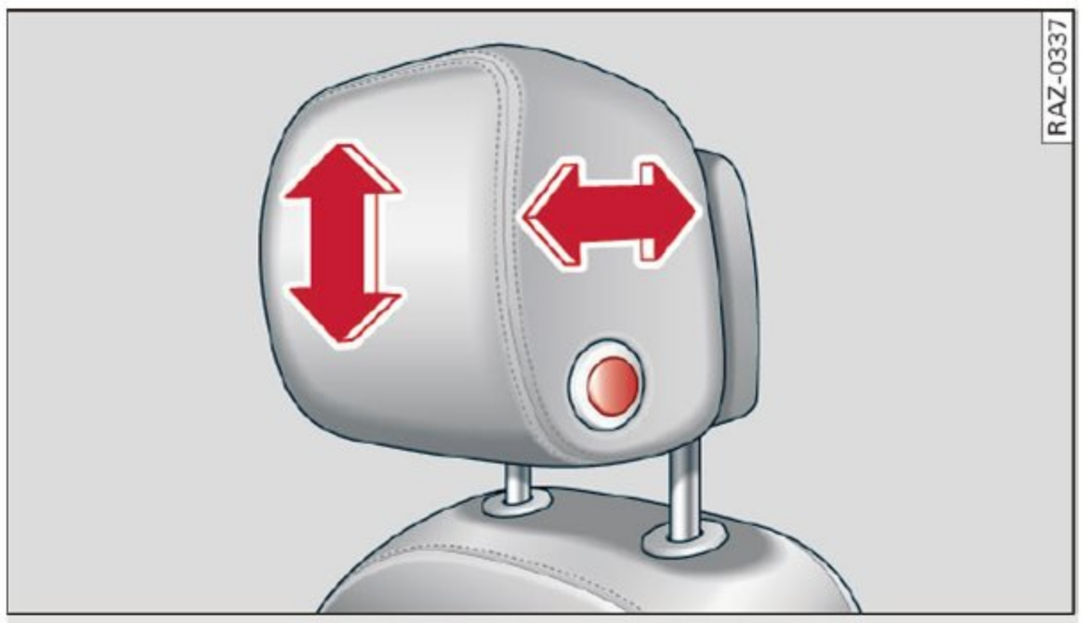


Fig. 57 Front seat: adjusting the head restraint (example)

Adjusting the head restraints

- ▸ To move the head restraint upward or forward*, slide it until it locks into place.
- ▸ To move the head restraint down or back*, press the side button and slide the head restraint in the desired direction until it locks into place.

Rear head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

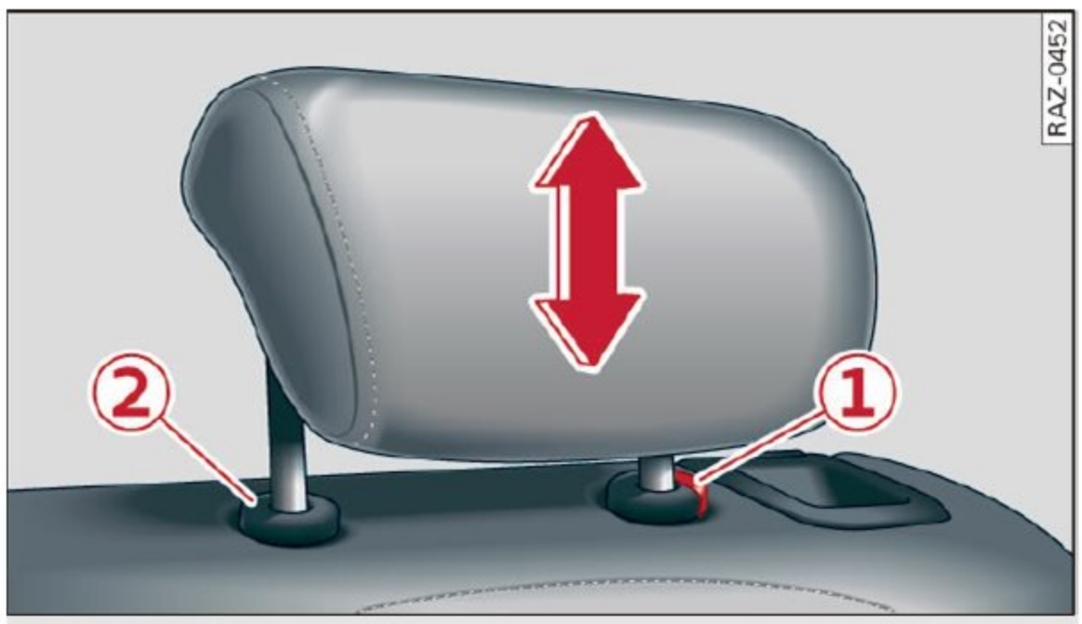


Fig. 58 Rear seat: adjusting or removing the head restraint (example)

Adjusting the head restraints

- ▸ Upward: slide the head restraint upward until it latches into place.
- ▸ Downward: press the button on the head restraint base (1) ⇨ *fig. 58* and slide the head restraint downward. Release the button and slide the head restraint farther until it locks into place.

Removing the head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

- ▸ Move the head restraint upward all the way. ▶

▸ Press the release point on the head restraint base ② ⇨ *fig. 58* using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 34, Key set* and press the button ①. Pull the head restraint out of the backrest at the same time ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 63*.

Installing the head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

▸ Slide the posts on the head restraint down into the guides until the posts click into place.

▸ Press the button ① and slide the head restraint all the way down. You should not be able to remove the head restraint from the backrest without pressing the button.

Safety belts

General information

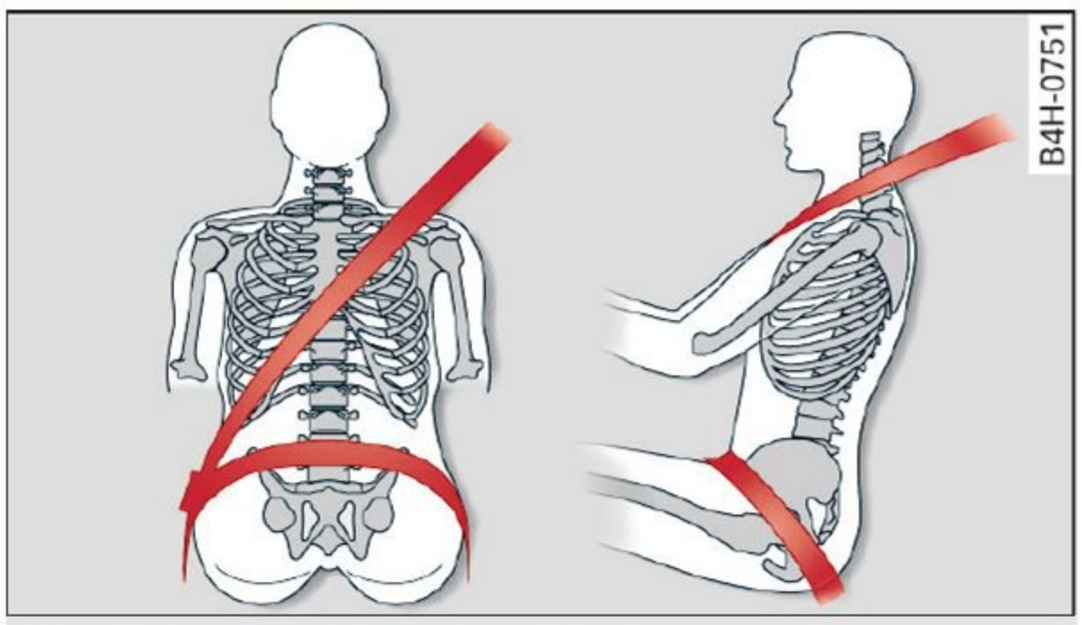


Fig. 59 Lap/shoulder belt positioning

Each seat is equipped with a three-point safety belt. Safety belts that are worn correctly are the most effective way to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries in a collision. Therefore, wear your safety belt correctly and make sure that all vehicle occupants also wear their safety belts correctly when the vehicle is moving.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, all vehicle occupants must still always wear their safety belts. In addition to their normal protective function, safety belts also hold vehicle occupants in the correct seating position in the event of a collision so that the airbags can deploy correctly and provide additional protection. Safety belts provide protection during collisions when the airbags do not deploy or if they have already deployed.

Make sure that:

– The lap belt runs over the hips
– The shoulder belt rests closely on the body and runs over the center of the shoulder

⚠ WARNING

The risk of serious or fatal injury increases if the safety belt is not fastened, if it is worn incorrectly, or if it is damaged.

– All vehicle occupants, including the driver, must fasten their safety belts correctly before every trip and must always keep their safety belts fastened during the trip, regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not. This also applies to to children that are seated in a child safety seat that is appropriate for their weight and age and that is secured with a safety belt.
– In the event a collision, vehicle occupants that are not wearing safety belts could be propelled through the vehicle interior and collide with vehicle components, such as the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or doors. In some situations, vehicle occupants could also be ejected from the vehicle. Vehicle occupants in the rear seats who do not wear safety belts not only endanger themselves, but also other people in the vehicle.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined extremely far. The more the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to the safety belt being routed incorrectly.
– The safety belt itself or a lose safety belt can cause serious injuries if it shifts onto soft areas of the body, such as the stomach.
– The shoulder portion of the safety belt must lie over the center of the shoulder, and never under the arm, behind the back, or across the neck.
– The lap portion of the safety belt must lie across the lap and never over the stomach.
– The safety belt must lie flat and securely on the upper part of the body and the lap.
– The belt webbing must not be pinched or twisted, or rub against sharp edges. ▶

– Pregnant women must wear the lap belt as low on the lap as possible and below the stomach during all stages of pregnancy. The safety belt must lie flat on the body so it does not create pressure on the abdomen.
– Only one person may be fastened with a safety belt at a time. Never secure more than one person, including children, with a single safety belt.
– Never allow children or infants to ride on another person's lap and be belted in with them.
– Insert the belt buckle only in the belt latch belonging to the corresponding seat, so that the protective function is not impaired.
– To ensure the maximum protective function of the safety belts, all vehicle passengers must sit in the correct seating position ⇨ *page 58*.
– If the safety belt height is set incorrectly and/or the safety belt is routed incorrectly, then the safety belt's protective function will be impaired in the event of an accident. Make sure the safety belt is at the right height and is routed correctly for the passenger using it.
– A safety belt that is too loose may lead to injuries during an accident, because your body will move farther forward due to kinetic energy and will be stopped abruptly by the belt.
– Heavily bulky, loose clothing (for example, a coat over a sports jacket) may prevent the seat and safety belts from functioning correctly.
– Do not position the safety belt over hard or breakable objects (such as glasses, pens, etc.).
– Check the condition of your vehicle's safety belts regularly. If you find damage to the belt webbing, the belt connections, the retractor, or the buckle, have the damaged safety belt replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– The safety belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair the safety belts yourself.
– Safety belts that are strained during an accident, and thus stretched, must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Fastening and unfastening safety belts

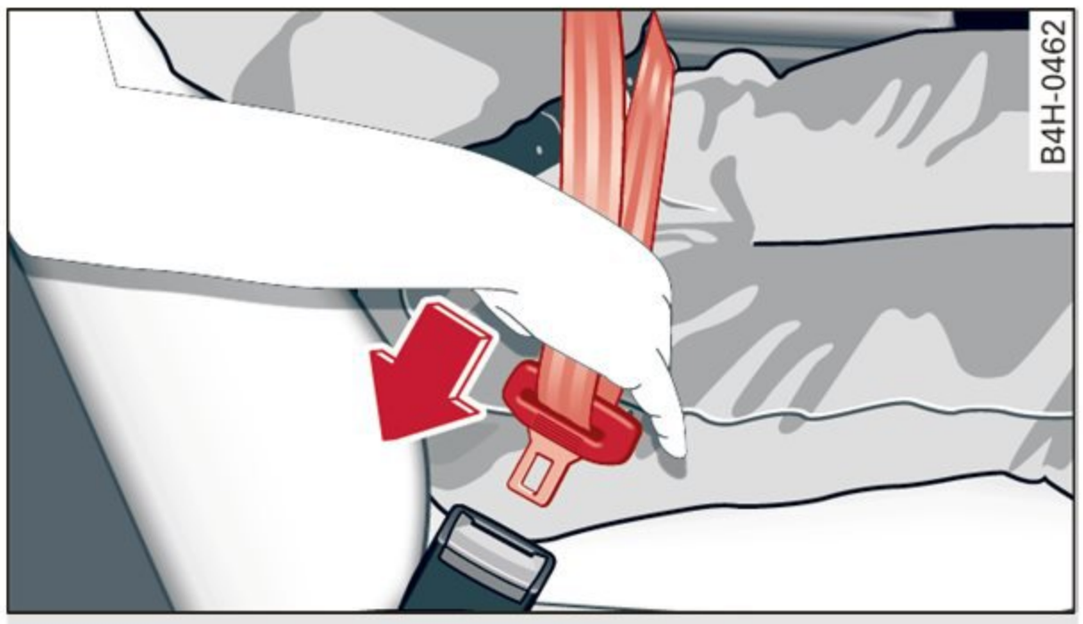


Fig. 60 Belt buckle and belt latch

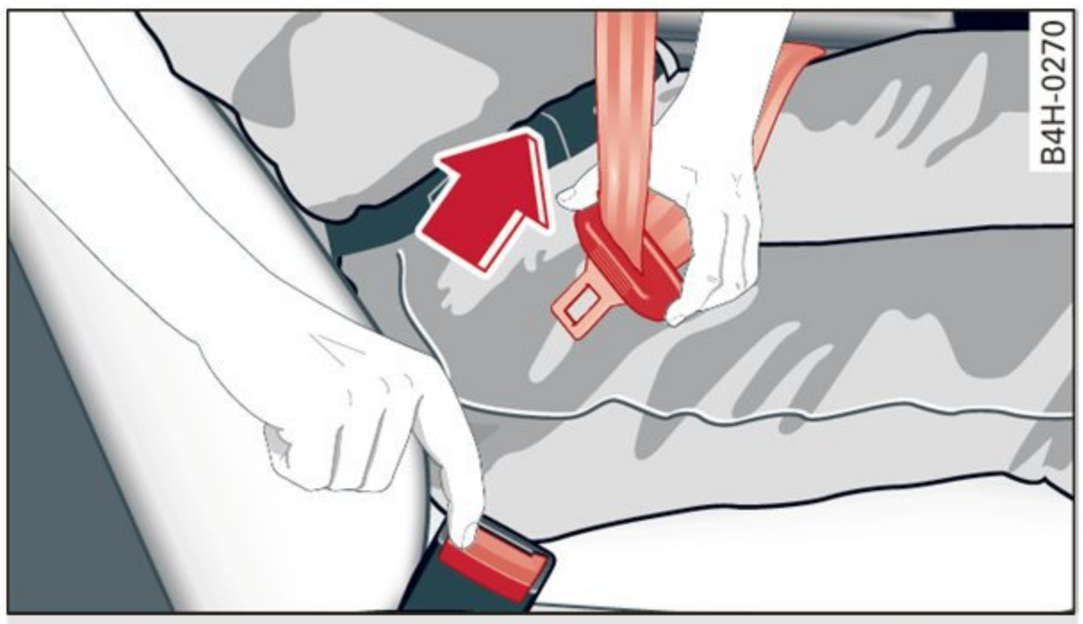


Fig. 61 Releasing the belt buckle from the belt latch

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 64*.

Fastening the safety belt

► Pull the safety belt by the belt buckle evenly across your chest and lap.
► Insert the belt buckle in the belt latch belonging to the seat until it audibly engages ⇨ *fig. 60*.
► Pull on the belt to make sure that the belt is securely locked in the latch.

Unfastening the safety belt

► Press the red button on the belt latch ⇨ *fig. 61*. The belt buckle will pop out.
► Guide the belt back by hand so that the safety belt can roll up more easily.

Safety belt monitoring system

– If the indicator light turns on or flashes, a safety belt is not fastened or it has been ▶

unfastened while the vehicle is in motion. Above certain speeds, additional warning tones will sound.

– If this indicator light turns on, the safety belt for the corresponding rear seat is not fastened.

– If this indicator light turns on, the safety belt for the rear seat has been fastened.

– If this indicator light turns on with a white light, the safety belt for the rear seat has been fastened. If the indicator light flashes or turns gray, a safety belt in the rear is not fastened or has been unfastened while the vehicle is in motion.

Belt retractor lock

All safety belts are equipped with a belt retractor lock, except for the safety belt on the driver's seat.

– If you secure a child safety seat with a safety belt, the belt retractor lock on the safety belt may need to be activated. Follow the instructions from the child safety seat manufacturer.
– When a vehicle passenger has fastened a safety belt, the belt retractor lock should not be activated. If the belt retractor lock has been activated unexpectedly, deactivate it.

Deactivating or activating the belt retractor lock ⇨ *page 75*.

Adjusting the height of the safety belt

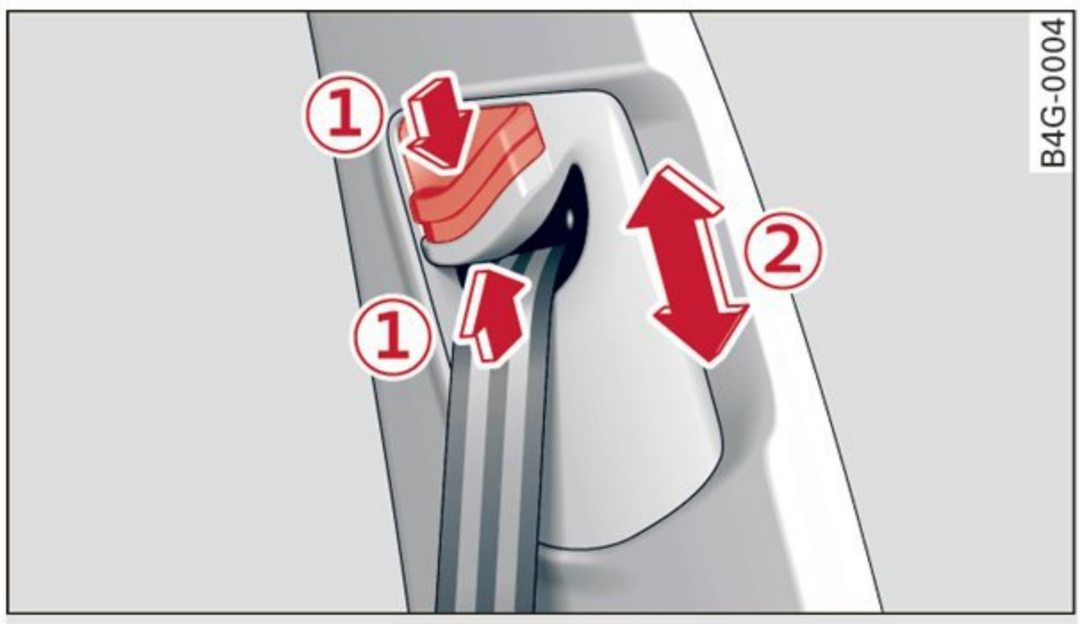


Fig. 62 Belt height adjustment for the front seats - safety belt relay

- To move the belt higher, slide the safety belt relay ② upward.
- To move the belt lower, press the release button ① and slide the safety belt relay ② downward.
- To check if the safety belt relay is securely locked in place, pull firmly on the belt.

Tips

You can also adjust the height of the front seats to change the position of the safety belts.

Additional safety belt functions

Safety belt retractor

The safety belts are equipped with an automatic belt retractor. This automatic retractor allows the safety belt to be pulled all the way out when the belt is pulled slowly. However, the automatic retractor locks during sudden braking maneuvers. It also locks the belts when accelerating, driving uphill, and driving around curves.

Belt force limiter

Safety belts with belt force limiters reduce the force placed on the body by the safety belts during a collision.

Safety belt pretensioners

Safety belts may be tightened with reversible belt tensioners when you start driving and in certain driving situations. If the safety belt is too loose, it will be tightened so that the belt will rest closer to the body.

In some collisions, pyrotechnic belt tensioners may secure the safety belts so that they cannot loosen. This reduces forward movement by the vehicle passengers.

WARNING

The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection during one collision. If the pyrotechnic belt tensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. ▶

Tips

Smoke may be released when pyrotechnic belt tensioners deploy. This is not a sign of a vehicle fire.

Memory function

General information

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

With the memory function, you can save and call up seat profiles using the memory buttons in the door trim panel.

Depending on the equipment, it may be possible to store the following settings:

- **Driver's seat:** seat, steering wheel*, exterior mirrors
- **Front passenger's seat:** seat

Storing and recalling a seat profile

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

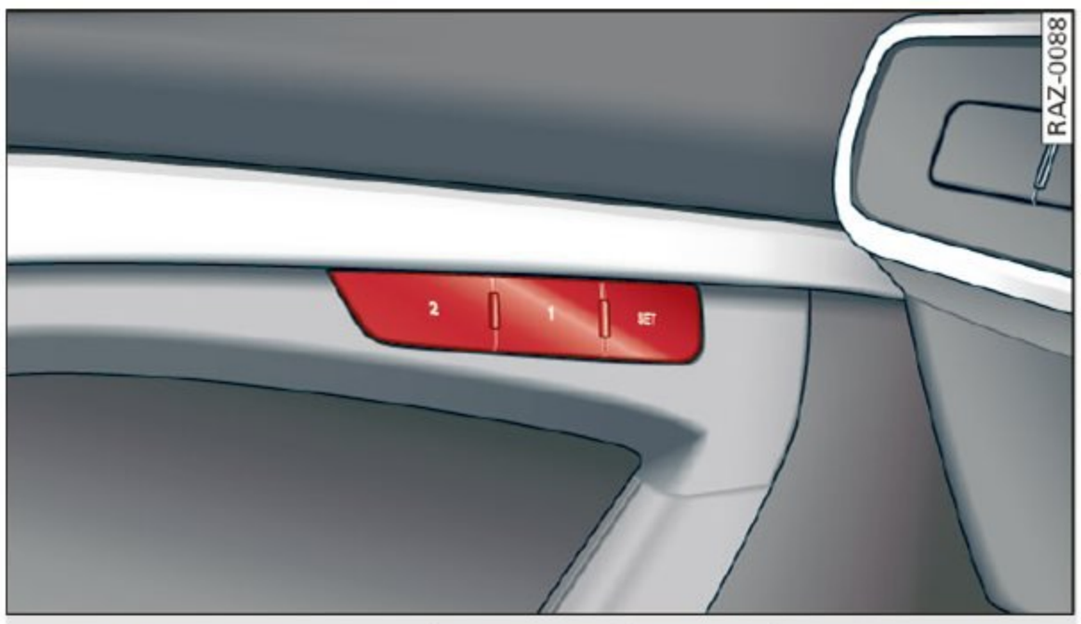


Fig. 63 Door trim panel: memory function buttons

Storing a seat profile

- ▸ Press the SET button. If the LED in the button turns on, a seat profile can be stored.
- ▸ Push one of the numbered memory buttons. A tone confirms that the settings were stored.

Recalling a seat profile

- ▸ While the driver's or front passenger's door is open and the ignition is switched off, press the memory button once briefly. The seat will be fully adjusted to the settings in the seat profile.
- ▸ If the driver's/front passenger's door is closed or the ignition is switched on, press and hold the memory button until the seat profile is completely set.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, the seat setting can only be recalled when the vehicle is stationary.
- In an emergency, the recall process can be canceled by pressing the seat adjustment button on that seat.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Airbag system

General information

WARNING

- If you have not fastened your safety belt, you are in an incorrect seating position, or you are too close to the airbag system, the airbag system will not be able to protect you. This increases the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Make sure that all passengers have their safety belts correctly fastened and are sitting in a correct position ⇨ *page 58*. This is necessary regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window, or on the seat surfaces. Never bend forward or lean on the door or the side window. Keep as far as possible from the airbags so that they will not be obstructed in the event that the airbags deploy. Otherwise, serious and possibly fatal injuries can occur if the airbags deploy.
- People, animals, or objects between the passengers and the airbag system can interfere with the correct deployment of the airbag or can be thrown through the vehicle interior, increasing the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Make sure that nothing is located between the vehicle occupants and the airbag system. Do not secure or transport any ▶

objects within the deployment zone of the airbag systems, especially on the steering wheel, on the instrument panel, on the doors, on the windows, or in the footwell.
– Never put stickers on the airbag system covers or cover them with any objects.
– Only lightweight clothing should be hung from the garment hooks in the vehicle. Do not use clothes hangers to hang clothing. The pockets of the clothing must not contain any heavy, breakable, or sharp-edged objects. This could impair the effectiveness of the side curtain airbags.
– You must not use seat or protective covers that are not specifically approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. Since the side airbags deploy from the seat backrest, such covers could impair the protective function of the side airbags.
– Damage to the original seat covers in the side airbag deployment area must always be repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Airbag system components are installed at various locations in your vehicle. Incorrect work or repairs on the vehicle could damage the airbag system components or impair their functionality. This may prevent the airbags from deploying or cause them to deploy incorrectly in the event of an accident, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility make repairs or modifications to a vehicle.
– The airbag system can only provide protection during one collision. If there is another collision, the airbag system will not deploy again. If the airbag system has deployed, have it replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Fine dust may appear if the airbags deploy. This is completely normal and does not indicate a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can irritate the skin and mucous membranes in the eyes and can cause difficulty breathing, particularly for individuals who have or have had asthma or other health issues that affect breathing. Exit the vehicle or open the windows or doors to get access to fresh air.

Tips

If you are transporting children in the vehicle, read the information and follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 72*.

Safety systems monitoring

The indicator light in the instrument cluster monitors the safety systems such as the airbags (including the control modules, sensors, and wiring) and the belt tensioners. It turns on when you switch the ignition on and turns off after several seconds.

If the indicator light does not turn on when the ignition is switched on, does not turn off after several seconds, or turns on or flashes while driving, there may be a malfunction in one of the safety systems. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Have the malfunction in the safety systems inspected immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk that the systems may not activate during an accident, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury.

Description

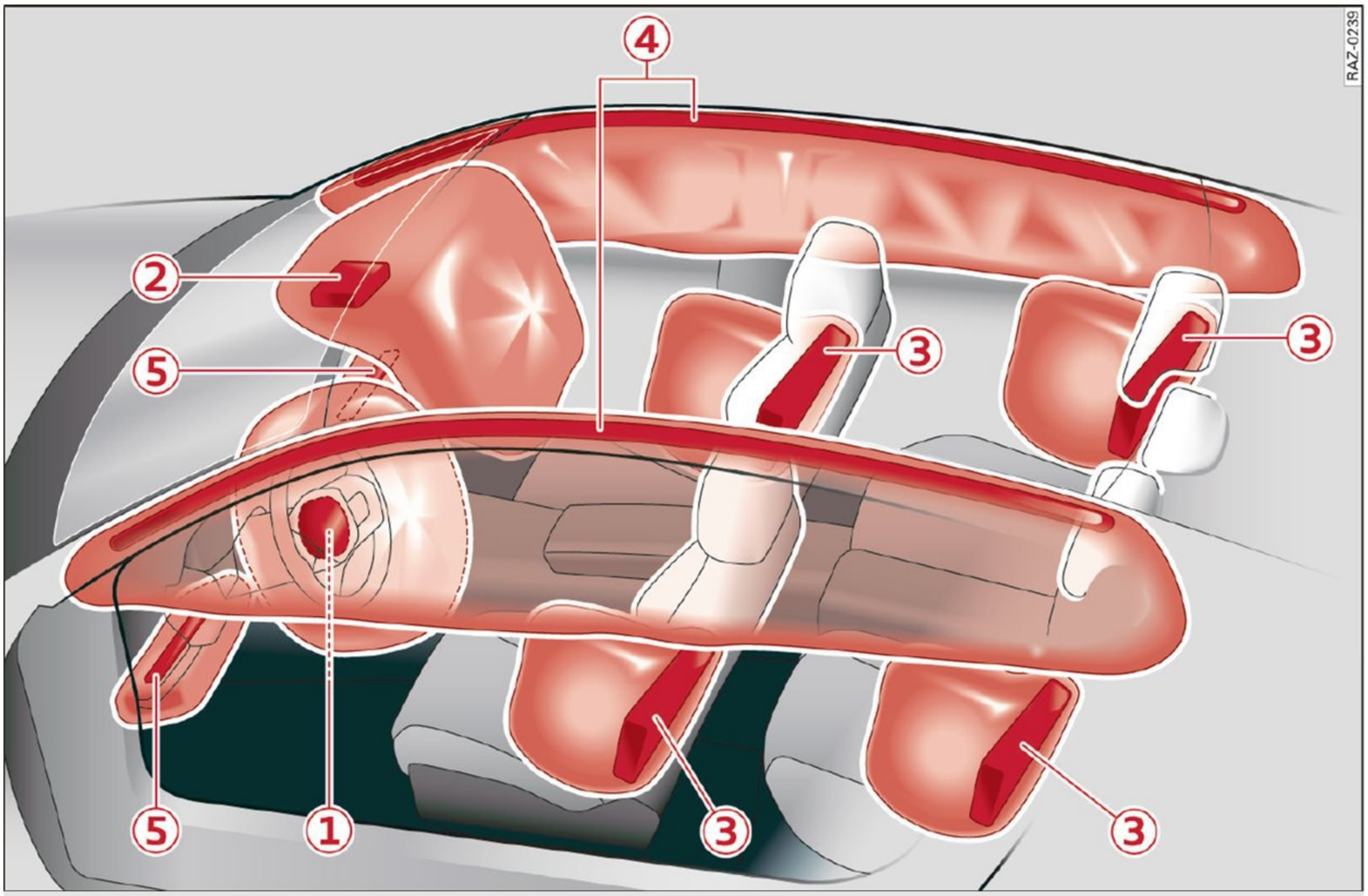


Fig. 64 Airbag overview image (enlarged section: deployed airbags) - diagram

Your vehicle is equipped with front airbags for both the driver and front passenger.

The locations of the airbags are labeled with “AIRBAG”. Depending on the equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with the following airbags:

① Driver's airbag
② Front passenger's airbag
③ Front and rear* side airbags
④ Side curtain airbags
⑤ Knee airbags

Airbags offer the best possible protection in your vehicle during an accident when they are used together with safety belts that are fastened correctly, and when passengers are sitting in the correct seating position. Airbags are a supplementary restraint system and do not replace safety belts.

Airbags may deploy during front-impact, side-impact, or rollover accidents.

Which airbags deploy depend on the angle and force of impact, among other things. There may be situations where the airbags do not deploy in an accident, even though the vehicle is heavily damaged. In these cases, the vehicle occupants will be protected by the safety belts if they are fastened and worn correctly.

The deployment of the front passenger's airbag will depend on the occupancy of the seat ⇨ *page 70*.

The airbag is filled by a gas generator when it deploys. When this occurs, the airbag covers open and the airbags unfold with great force into the deployment zone within milliseconds. When vehicle occupants who are wearing safety belts sink into the airbags, the gas contained in the airbags is released in order to cushion the individuals and slow their movement.

Airbags lessen the movement of passengers in the direction of the impact and thus help to reduce the risk of injury. They can help to protect the head, upper body, and lap, for example. ▶

However, there is the possibility that airbag deployment can cause injuries.

The airbag system only works when the ignition is turned on.

If you or other vehicle passengers have physical limitations that prevent sitting in a correct position, modifications to the vehicle may be necessary. For more information, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or call Audi customer support at 1-800-822-2834.

Tips

The side curtain airbags in your vehicle have ejection mitigation functions. This reduces the risk of being ejected from the vehicle interior during an accident, especially in the event of a vehicle rollover.

Advanced airbag system



Fig. 65 Headliner: indicator light to display the status of the front passenger's airbag

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of the United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to these requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger's side has been certified for "suppression" for infants approximately 12 months old and younger, and for "low risk deployment" for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).

The advanced airbag system will activate or deactivate the front passenger's airbag based on the occupancy of the seat. If a front airbag deploys during an accident, the deployment force will adapt to the passenger.

Components

The advanced airbag system consists of the following components:

- Front airbags in the steering wheel and in the instrument panel on the front passenger's side: these can protect the front passengers during an accident
- Passenger occupant detection sensor in the front passenger's seat: this detects if the front passenger's seat is occupied (for example, by a person or a small child in a child safety seat)
- Seat position sensors on the front seats: these determine the distance between the seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel
- Sensors in the front seat belt latch: these detect if the safety belts are fastened
- The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON indicator light in the headliner:this indicates if the front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated
- indicator light in the instrument cluster: this monitors the function of the Advanced Airbag System components to ensure they are functioning correctly

How the components function together

The passenger occupant detection sensor in the front passenger's seat detects if the front passenger's seat is occupied. The passenger occupant detection sensor measures the electrical capacity on the front passenger's seat. The passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated depending on the electrical capacity that is measured.

The passenger's airbag is activated if:

- The electrical capacity is higher than the threshold stored in the control module
- The electrical capacity is the same as or greater than the electrical capacity of a typical adult

The passenger's airbag is deactivated if:

- The electrical capacity is lower than the threshold stored in the control module ▶

– The electrical capacity is the same as or less than the electrical capacity of a typical one-year-old child in a child safety seat that has been used for certification in accordance with FMVSS 208

If the front passenger's airbag is activated, the PASSENGER AIR BAG ON indicator light will turn on. If the front passenger's airbag is deactivated, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator light will turn on.

The deployment force of the front airbags adapts based on whether or not the safety belt is used and the distance between the seat and the steering wheel/instrument panel. For example, if a person is too close to the front airbag, the front airbag will deploy with less force to help reduce the risk of injury.

Meaning of PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON indicator light

When the ignition is switched on, the system detects whether the front passenger's seat is occupied. PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON will turn on for several seconds during this process. Then it will indicate whether the front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated.

– PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF: the front passenger's airbag is deactivated and will not deploy in the event of an accident.
– PASSENGER AIR BAG ON: the front passenger's airbag is activated and could deploy in the event of an accident.

If a change to the occupancy status of the front passenger's seat is detected PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON will flash for several seconds and will then display the status of the front passenger's airbag.

Always make sure the indicator light corresponds to the occupancy of the front passenger's seat.

– **An adult or individual of similar size in the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be activated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG ON must remain on.
– **An individual of smaller size (for example, an adolescent or small adult) in the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be activated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG ON must remain on. Move the front passenger's seat as far back as possible.
– **Child in a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF must remain on.
– **Front passenger's seat not occupied:** the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF must remain on.

WARNING

– An adult or a person with a small stature (such as a young person or small adult) seated on the front passenger's seat will not be protected by the passenger's airbag in the event of a collision if the passenger's airbag is deactivated. This increases the risk of injury and death. Always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG ON remains on while driving. If PASSENGER AIR BAG ON does not turn on, make sure the front passenger is sitting correctly in the seat ⇨ *page 58* and that there is are no objects covering the front passenger's seat (such as blankets or pillows). If PASSENGER AIR BAG ON still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the airbag system inspected.
– A child in a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat - especially in a rear-facing child safety seat - can receive a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag deploys, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury. Always secure child safety seats on the rear seats. If special circumstances require the use of a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat, always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF remains on while driving. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF does not ▶

turn on, remove the child safety seat and install it again according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the airbag system inspected.

– Fluids, electronic devices, or mechanical damage on the front passenger's seat may cause the front passenger seat occupant detection to malfunction. The system may then incorrectly detect if the front passenger's seat is occupied. As a result, it could deploy the front passenger's airbag incorrectly or fail to deploy it, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury. Make sure that no wet objects (such as a wet hand towel) and no fluids come into contact with the front passenger's seat cushion. If the front passenger's seat becomes wet, dry it immediately. Make sure no electronic devices (such as a laptop or a retrofitted seat heater) are on the front passenger's seat. Do not transport any objects on or under the front passenger's seat.
– Seat covers or protective covers may prevent the advanced airbag system from correctly detecting child safety seats or passengers in the front passenger's seat. You must not use seat covers or protective covers on the front passenger's seat that are not specifically approved for use on Audi seats with an advanced airbag system.

Child safety seats

General information

When installing and using child safety seats, follow the information in this Owner's Manual, the applicable state and federal regulations, and the manufacturer instructions for the child safety seat.

You can also obtain useful and current information from the following sources:

U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
http://www.nhtsa.gov
http://www.safercar.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
http://www.safekids.org

SafetyBeltSafe U.S.A.
http://www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety

Audi Customer Experience Center
https://www.audiusa.com/help/contact-us
https://www.audi.ca/ca/web/en/models/layer/contact.html

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries, children must always be secured in the vehicle with a child safety seat that is appropriate for their body size, weight, and age.

– Children ages 12 and under must be transported using the appropriate child safety seat. Note differences in regulations between states and countries.
– Child safety seats secured incorrectly in the vehicle may cause serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Always secure the child safety seat according to the manufacturer instructions.
– Children or babies must not under any circumstances be held on the lap of the driver or other passengers while driving.
– Do not secure more than one child in a child safety seat.
– Never allow a child to sit in a child safety seat unsupervised.
– Never allow children to ride unsecured in the vehicle or to stand or kneel on the seats while driving. During a collision, the child could be thrown through the vehicle and be fatally injured or cause life-threatening injuries to others in the vehicle.
– If children use an incorrect seating position while driving, they have a higher risk of injury during a sudden braking maneuver or accident. This especially applies to children ▶

in the front passenger's seat or children who have their head near the side airbag deployment area, if the airbag system is deployed during an accident. This incorrect seating position can cause severe or even fatal injuries.

– Make sure there is enough space in front of the child in the child safety seat. If necessary, adjust the angle and position of the seat in front of the child safety seat.
– The rear side of a forward-facing child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat. If the head restraints make it difficult to install a child safety seat, adjust or remove them ⇨ *page 63*. Reinstall the head restraints immediately once the child safety seat has been removed.
– Always make sure that the backrest on the seat where the child safety seat is installed is securely locked in place and cannot move forward. Otherwise, the backrest where the child safety seat is secured could move forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
– NEVER use a rear-facing child safety seat on a seat with an ACTIVATED FRONT AIRBAG; this could cause DEATH or SERIOUS INJURIES to a CHILD.
  – Always secure child safety seats on the rear seats. If exceptional circumstances require the child safety seat to be placed on the front passenger's seat, then the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF remains on while driving. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF does not turn on, remove the child safety seat and install it again according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the airbag system inspected.
  – If you must use a forward-facing child safety seat on the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far back as possible so that it is as far as possible from the front passenger's airbag. A child in a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat can receive a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag deploys, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury.
  – Replace the child safety seat after an accident because there could be damage that is not visible.
  – Even if a child is not sitting in the child safety seat, the child safety seat must be secured. An unsecured child safety seat may be thrown through the vehicle interior during sudden braking maneuvers or an accident.

Correct positioning for children

Always secure children in a child safety seat designed for the body size, weight, and age of the child.

You can secure child safety seats in your vehicle using the lower LATCH anchors or the safety belts. You can also secure child safety seats to the top tether anchor. Depending on the child safety seat, it may also be necessary to secure it to the top tether anchor. In Canada, securing forward-facing child safety seats to the top tether anchors is required by law.

Always transport children in the rear seats

Accident statistics show that children that are secured correctly in the rear seats are safer than in front seats. Always transport children in suitable child safety seats secured on the rear seats.

In exceptional circumstances: transporting children in the front passenger's seat

If exceptional circumstances require the child safety seat to be placed on the front passenger's seat, then the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Please note the important information for this ⇨ *page 70, Advanced airbag system*. If you must secure a forward-facing child safety seat, move the front passenger's seat as far back ▶

as possible so that it is as far as possible from the passenger's airbag.

Only switch to a larger child safety seat when absolutely necessary

Switch to a larger child safety seat only when absolutely necessary. Secure your child using a safety belt without a child safety seat only if all of the following statements are true:

– The child is large enough to sit upright in the seat
– The child is able to sit with his or her back resting completely on the seat backrest
– The child is able to sit with his or her knees bent over the edge of the seat surface
– The child is able to sit with both of his or her feet completely touching the floor in the footwell
– The lap portion of the safety belt lies flat and securely over the hip area and never over the stomach
– The shoulder portion of the safety belt lies flat and securely over the center of the shoulder and the chest, and never under the arm, behind the back, or over the neck
– The child is able to maintain this seating position throughout the entire trip

Tips

– Child safety seats can also be secured to seats with side airbags. In the event of an accident, children can also be protected by the side airbags if the child is correctly secured in a suitable child safety seat that is attached correctly.
– All child safety seats are constructed so that they can be secured using the lap safety belt in the vehicle.
– Child safety seats with a support base can only be secured to the outer rear seats and to the front passenger's seat.

Securing child safety seats to the lower LATCH anchors

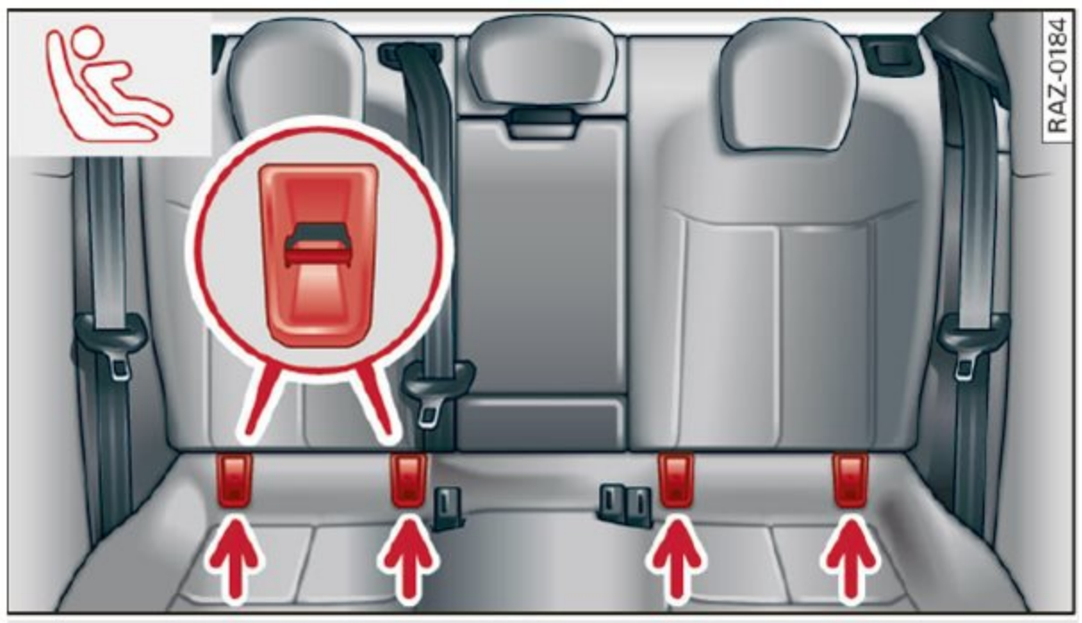


Fig. 66 Rear bench seat: lower ISOFIX anchorage points

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 72*.

In the United States and Canada, child safety seats can be secured without safety belts using the LATCH system. LATCH stands for Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children. In Canada, similar systems are called UCRA, LUAS, or UAS.

The lower LATCH anchors in your vehicle are located on the outer seats of the rear bench seat between the seat surface and the backrest. These seating locations each have two lower LATCH anchors that can be used to secure a LATCH child safety seat. Marking points with a ⇨ *fig. 66* symbol are located on the covers for the lower LATCH anchors. You can locate the LATCH anchors using the marking points.

► Activate the child safety lock ⇨ *page 41*.
► Remove the cover* from both lower LATCH anchors.
► If you secure a child safety seat to the rear seat, secure any unused safety belts that are within reach of the child ⇨ ⚠ *in Securing child safety seats with a safety belt on page 76*.
► Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.
► Pull on the child safety seat to check if both sides are engaged correctly in the LATCH anchors.
► If possible, also secure the child safety seat to the respective top tether anchor in the vehicle ⇨ *page 75*. ▶

WARNING

The LATCH anchors in the vehicle are only designed for child safety seats with the LATCH system. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injury, never secure other child restraint systems, belts, or objects to the anchors.

Tips

The LATCH anchors are designed for a total weight (child and child safety seat combined) up to 65 lbs (29 kg). If the total weight is greater than this, the child safety seat must be secured with the vehicle safety belt.

Additionally securing a child safety seat to the top tether anchor

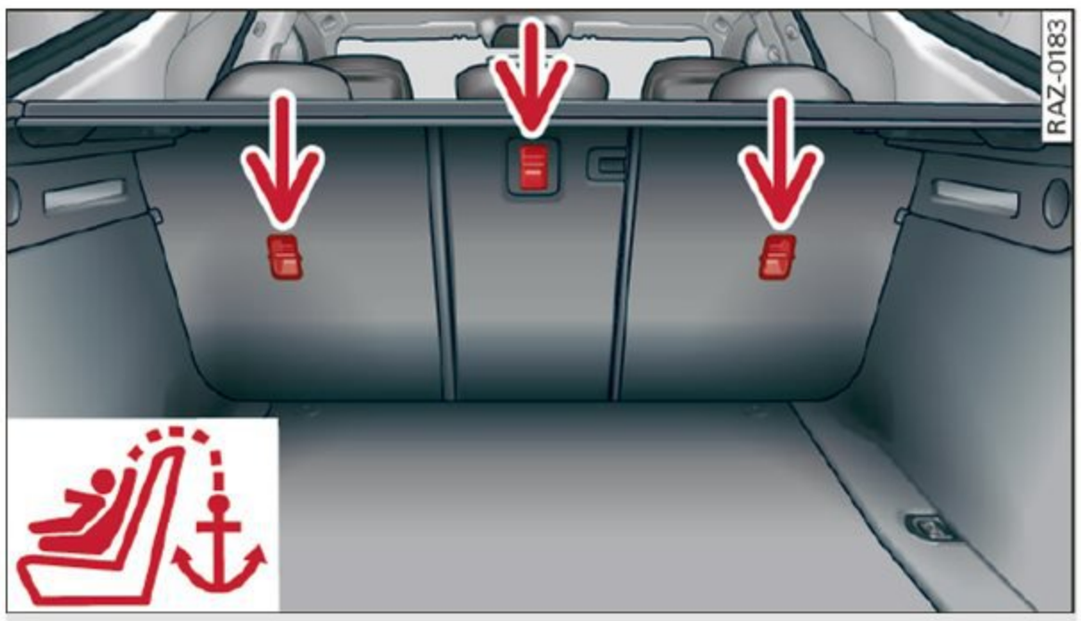


Fig. 67 Rear backrest: top tether anchors to secure a child safety seat with an upper belt

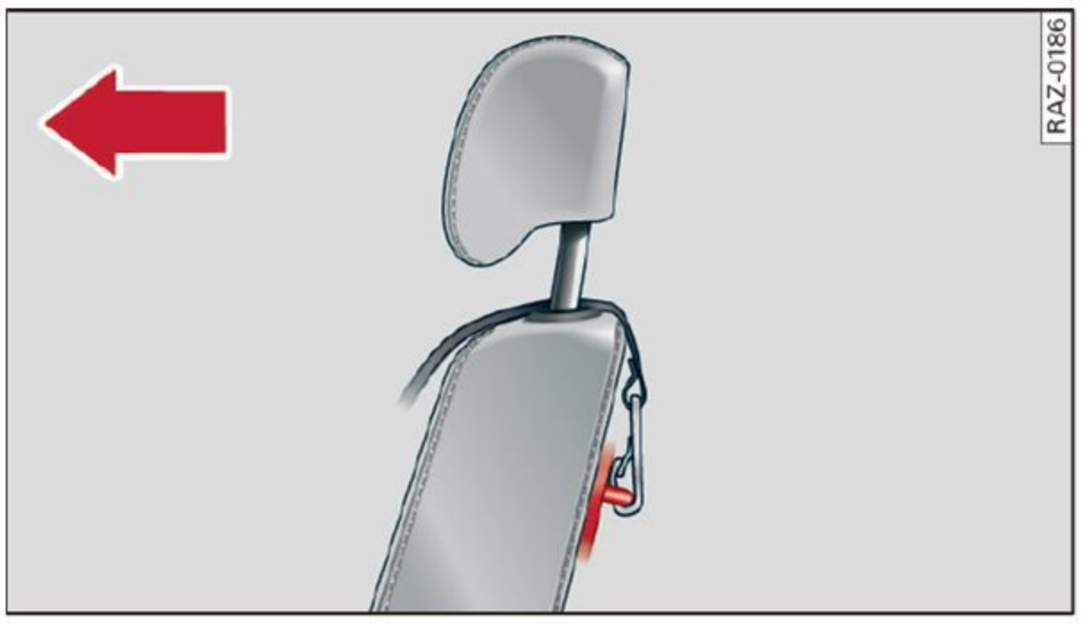


Fig. 68 Rear backrest: securing the upper belt to the top tether anchor - diagram

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 72*.

There is a top tether anchor behind every seat in the rear bench seat to additionally secure a child safety seat with an upper belt.

- ▸ Move the head restraint behind the child safety seat upward.
- ▸ Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.
- ▸ Guide the upper belt on the child safety seat under the head restraint or along both sides of it and toward the rear (depending on the child safety seat model).
- ▸ Fasten the belt to the top tether anchor ⇨ *fig. 68*. While doing this, make sure the belt is not twisted and is not running over any sharp edges.
- ▸ Pull the belt tightly so that the child safety seat rests at the top of the seat backrest.
- ▸ If necessary, move the head restraint behind the child safety seat downward.

WARNING

The top tether anchors in the vehicle are only designed for child safety seats equipped with an upper strap. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injury, never secure other child restraint systems, belts, or objects to the anchors.

Securing child safety seats with a safety belt

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 72*. The front passenger's seat is a dangerous location for a child, even with an advanced airbag system. If exceptional circumstances require the child safety seat to be placed on the front passenger's seat, then the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Please note the important information for this ⇨ *page 73, Correct positioning for children* and ⇨ *page 70, Advanced airbag system*.

Securing child safety seats

- ▸ Activate the child safety lock ⇨ *page 41*.
- ▸ If you secure a child safety seat to the rear seat, secure any unused safety belts that are within reach of the child ⇨ ⚠, ⇨ *page 76*.
- ▸ If you secure a child safety seat to the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat to the highest position.
- ▸ Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.
- ▸ If necessary, activate the belt retractor lock ⇨ *page 76, Activating the belt retractor lock*. ▶

- ▸ If the child safety seat is secured on the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat backrest until it rests flat against the child safety seat. Also make sure that the upper safety belt fixture is behind the child safety seat.
- ▸ If you secure a child safety seat on the rear seat, also secure it to the correct top tether anchor if possible ⇨ *page 75*.

Activating the belt retractor lock

If you secure a child safety seat using the vehicle safety belt, you must activate the belt retractor lock. Follow the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.

The belt retractor lock prevents the safety belt from becoming loose while driving, which could result in the child safety seat no longer being adequately secured.

- ▸ Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions. While doing so, pull out the safety belt. Insert the safety belt in the belt latch belonging to the seat until it audibly engages.
- ▸ Pull the upper belt out completely and then allow it to retract. You will hear a clicking sound while the belt is retracting. It will not be possible to pull the safety belt out any farther.
- ▸ Push the child safety seat into the seat and allow the belt to retract more.
- ▸ Make sure that the child safety seat cannot move more than 1 inch (2.5 cm).

Deactivating the belt retractor lock

- ▸ Unbuckle the safety belt from the belt latch.
- ▸ Remove the child safety seat according to the manufacturer instructions.
- ▸ Allow the safety belt to retract completely. The belt retractor lock is deactivated.

WARNING

– A safety belt that is not locked by the belt retractor lock or a locking device cannot secure a child safety seat while driving or in the event of an accident, which increases the risk of fatal injury. Always make sure the belt retractor lock on the safety belt is activated if the child safety seat manufacturer instructions require it.
– Due to the risk of fatal injury, never place a rear-facing child safety seat on the front passenger's seat when the front passenger's airbag is switched on.
– For the child safety seat to offer the maximum protection, it is especially important to route the vehicle safety belt correctly. Always follow the instructions from the child safety seat manufacturer for routing the safety belt correctly. Incorrectly fastened safety belts can cause injuries, even during minor accidents.

Securing unused safety belts on the rear bench seat



Fig. 69 Rear bench seat: securing unused safety belts

If a child safety seat is used on the rear bench seat, the child must not be able to reach any safety belts that are not being used. Secure safety belts that are within reach of the child.

- ▸ If you secure a child safety seat to the LATCH anchors, fasten the safety belt on the seat where the child safety seat is installed using the seat's safety belt latch.
- ▸ If you secure a child safety seat to one of the outer seats, fasten the safety belt for the center seat in its latch.
- ▸ Activate the belt retractor lock on the fastened safety belts. To do this, pull the upper belt out completely and then allow it to retract. You will hear a clicking sound while the belt is retracting. It will not be possible to pull the safety belt out any farther.
- ▸ Make sure the fastened safety belt does not block access to the LATCH anchors. Otherwise, ▶

it may not be possible to secure the child safety seat to the LATCH anchors correctly.

WARNING

A child in a child safety seat could play with the unused safety belts and then become entangled in them, which increases the risk of fatal injury. Always secure unused safety belts so that they are not within reach of children in child safety seats.

Stowing and using

Power sources

When the ignition is switched on, you may be able to use the electric power sources for external devices, depending on the vehicle equipment.

12 volt sockets

You can connect electrical accessories to the 12 volt sockets. The power usage must not exceed 120 watts.

The 12 volt sockets are labeled with the 12V symbol. They are located in the front center console*, in the rear* and on the side trim panel in the luggage compartment*.

USB ports

Applies to: vehicles with USB input

You can charge mobile devices using the USB ports. The USB ports are labeled with the ⇽ or ⇽ symbol or CHARGE ONLY.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of fatal injury, store all connected devices securely when driving so that they do not move around inside the vehicle when braking or in the event of an accident.
- Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the key.

Note

- Read the operating manuals for the connected devices.
- Disconnect the connectors from the power sources carefully to reduce the risk of damaging them.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle electrical system, never attempt to charge the vehicle battery by connecting accessories that provide power to the power sources.
- Do not connect any device whose network class (voltage) does not match the network class designed for the socket.

Cup holders

Applies to: vehicles with cup holders



Fig. 70 Front center console: cup holder (example)

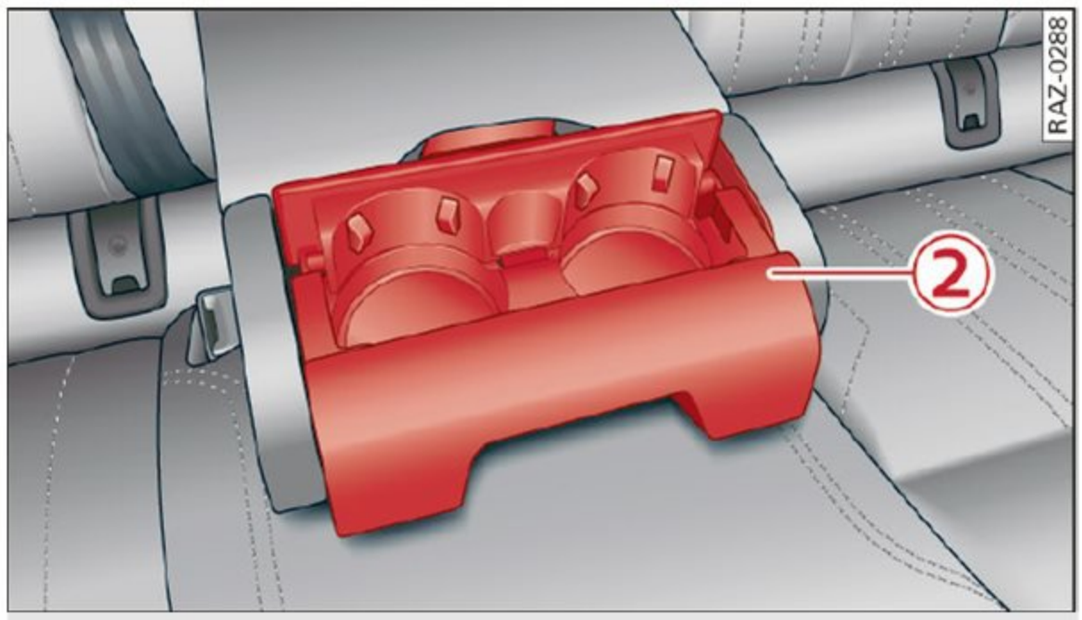


Fig. 71 Rear center armrest: cup holders

Front center console cup holders

- The cup holders may be under a cover. To use them, tap on the strip on the cover.
- Set your beverage in the holder (1).

Rear center armrest cup holders

- Fold the center armrest* downward.
- Open the cup holders (2) by tapping on the strip on the cover.
- Set your beverage in the holder.
- To close the cup holders, slide them back and push the cover down.

WARNING

- Do not put any hot beverages in the cup holder while the vehicle is moving. Hot beverages could spill, which increases the risk of injury.
- Do not use any breakable beverage containers (for example, made out of glass or porcelain). You could be injured by them in the event of an accident.

▶

Note

Beverage containers in the cup holders should always have a lid. Otherwise, the liquid inside could spill and cause damage to vehicle equipment.

Roof rack

Applies to: vehicles with roof rack

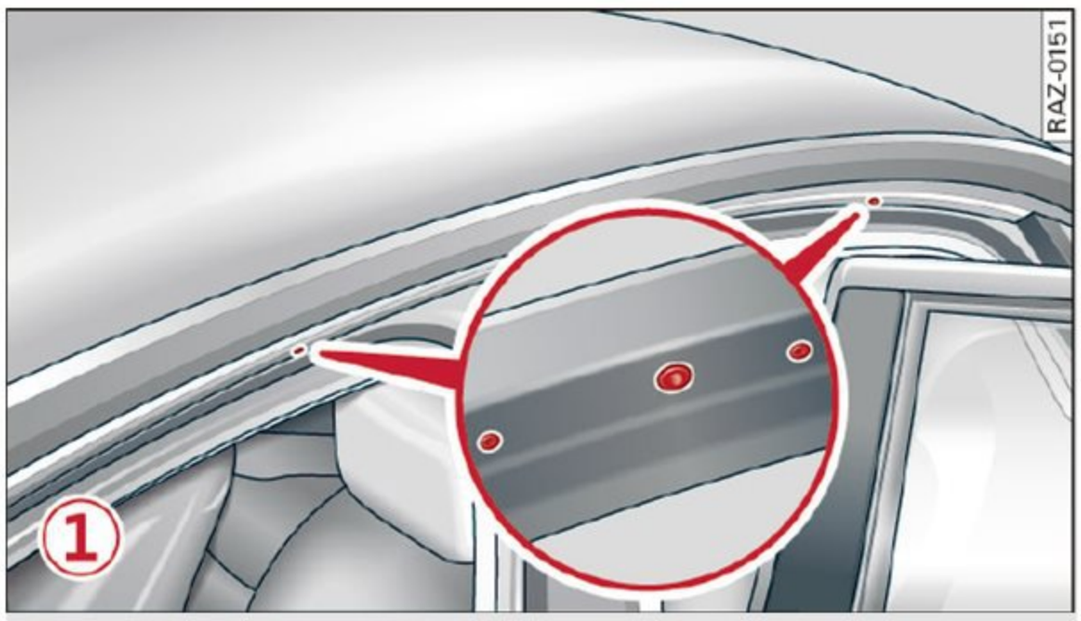


Fig. 72 Attachment points for the roof rack

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

– These roof racks are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Only roof racks that are suitable for your vehicle may be used. Roof racks and attachments from the Audi Genuine Accessories program are recommended.
– Make sure the roof rack is mounted on the vehicle only at the specified locations (1).
– Note the permitted axle load, permitted total weight, and permitted roof load of your vehicle ⇨ *page 292*. The roof load is the total of the weight of the roof rack, the attachments and the cargo you are carrying. However, you must also note the permitted load of the carrier system being used.

WARNING

– Follow the installation instructions provided with the roof rack system. If you do not secure the roof rack system and objects on the roof correctly, they could come loose from the vehicle and cause an accident.
– The risk of an accident increases when using a roof rack system, because it changes the driving characteristics by shifting the center of gravity and/or the increasing the surface area exposed to wind. You may need to adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.

Note

Make sure that the open luggage compartment lid and the tilting/sliding sunroof* or panoramic glass roof* do not come into contact with objects on the roof.

For the sake of the environment

Fuel consumption will increase because of the increased wind resistance. Remove the roof rack when you are no longer using it.

Storage and compartments

Cooled glove compartment

Applies to: vehicles with cooled glove compartment

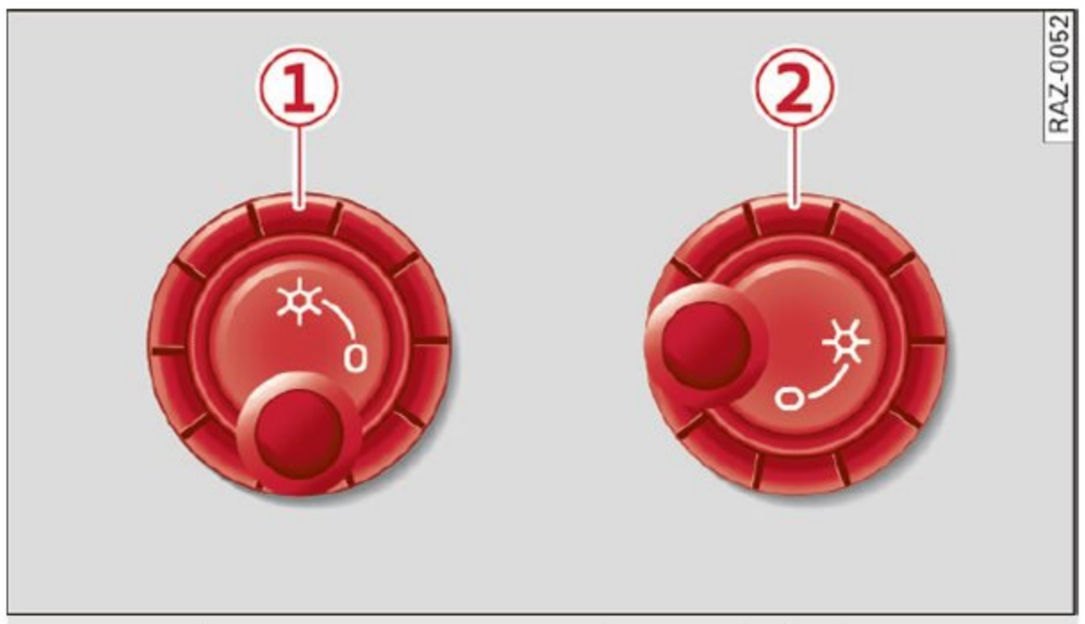


Fig. 73 Glove compartment: cooling mode knob

- To switch the refrigeration function on, turn the knob counterclockwise until the symbols indicate that refrigeration is switched on (1).
- To switch the refrigeration function off, turn the knob clockwise until the symbols indicate that refrigeration is switched off (2).

Tips

The glove compartment cooling mode only functions when the vehicle A/C system is switched on.

Additional storage

You will find a variety of storage compartments and holders at various locations in the vehicle. ▶

– Glove compartment: the glove compartment can be locked using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 34*.
– Holders for a notepad and a pen in the glove compartment
– Storage compartment in the cockpit on the driver's side
– Storage compartments in the door trim panel
– Net in the front passenger's footwell
– Key compartment in the center console
– Storage compartment under the front center armrest*
– Net behind the front seats
– Garment hooks in the rear
– Storage compartment in the rear center armrest*
– Bag hooks* in the luggage compartment
– Net* in luggage compartment

WARNING

– When driving, do not leave any hard objects on the rear window shelf or allow your pet to sit on the shelf. They could become a hazard for vehicle occupants in the event of sudden braking or a crash.
– Any articles of clothing that you have hung up must not interfere with the driver's view. The coat hooks are designed only for lightweight clothing. Never hang any clothing with hard, pointed or heavy objects in the pockets on the coat hooks. During sudden braking or in an accident - especially if the airbag is deployed - these objects could injure any passengers inside the vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove compartment closed while driving.
– Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 67*.
– Hang clothes in such a way that they do not impair the driver’s vision.
– The coat hooks must only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp edged objects in the pockets which may interfere with the side curtain airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a crash.
– Do not use coat hangers for hanging clothing on the coat hooks as this can interfere with proper deployment of the side curtain airbags in an accident.
– Do not hang heavy objects on the coat hooks, as they could cause personal injury in a sudden stop.

Tips

– A vent slot is located between the shelf and the rear window. Do not block the vent with any items you may place on the rear window shelf.
– Do not place bulky items on the rear window shelf as they could restrict or block the driver's vision in the rear view mirror.

Luggage compartment

General information

All pieces of luggage or objects must be securely fastened in the luggage compartment. Note the following to maintain good vehicle handling:

▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
▸ Stow heavy luggage as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
▸ Use non-elastic cords attached to the tie-downs to secure objects.

WARNING

– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Always stow objects securely in the luggage compartment and secure them at the tie-downs. Use straps suitable for heavy objects.
– If pieces of luggage or objects are secured to the tie-downs with unsuitable or damaged straps, this can increase the risk of injury during braking maneuvers or accidents.
– When transporting heavy objects, the vehicle characteristics will change due to the shift in the center of gravity, which increases the risk of an accident. You may need to ▶

adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.
– The cargo net is only strong enough to secure light objects. Heavy objects are not adequately secured. Attempting to secure heavy objects increases the risk of injury.
– Never exceed the permitted axle and load and vehicle weight ⇨ *page 292*.
– Never secure a child safety seat to the tie-downs.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially if the luggage compartment lid is open. Children could enter the luggage compartment and close the luggage compartment lid from the inside. This creates the risk of fatal injury, since the children would be locked in and may not be able to escape by themselves.
– Do not allow children to play in or on the vehicle. Close and lock the luggage compartment lid as well as all other doors when you leave the vehicle.
– Never transport passengers in the luggage compartment. Every passenger must be correctly secured with the safety belts in the vehicle ⇨ *page 64*.
– The luggage compartment cover is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the cover could endanger all vehicle occupants during sudden braking maneuvers or in a crash.
– To reduce the risk of accidents, the luggage compartment cover should never be unsecured under any circumstances.
– Be careful when releasing the backrest and folding it forward. To reduce the risk of being pinched, pay attention and check when folding backrests forward.
– The backrest must be securely latched so objects cannot slide forward out of the luggage compartment during sudden braking.
– The backrest must be latched securely to ensure that the safety belt is protecting the center seating position.
– Always pull forward on the backrest to make sure it is check if it is correctly locked in place.

Note

– To reduce the risk of damage, move the rear head restraints down ⇨ *page 63* before folding the rear backrests forward.
– When folding the backrest forward, make sure the outer safety belts are in the belt guide recess so that they do not get pinched in the backrest lock and damaged. Other objects should be removed from the rear bench seat to protect the backrest from damage.
– If you move the front seat back when the rear seat backrest is folded forward, you could damage the head restraints on the rear seat.
– Make sure that the heating grid strips for the rear window defogger are not damaged by abrasive objects.

Tips

– The tire pressure must be adapted to the load ⇨ *page 250*.
– You can purchase straps at specialty stores.

4K8012721BA

Luggage compartment cover

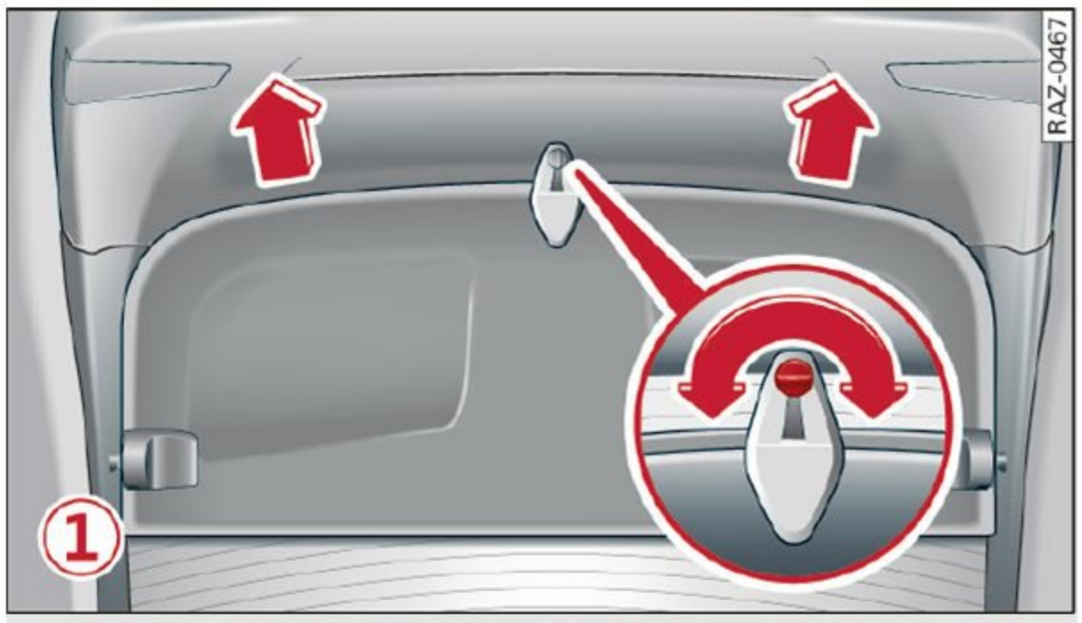


Fig. 74 Luggage compartment: cover when the luggage compartment lid is open

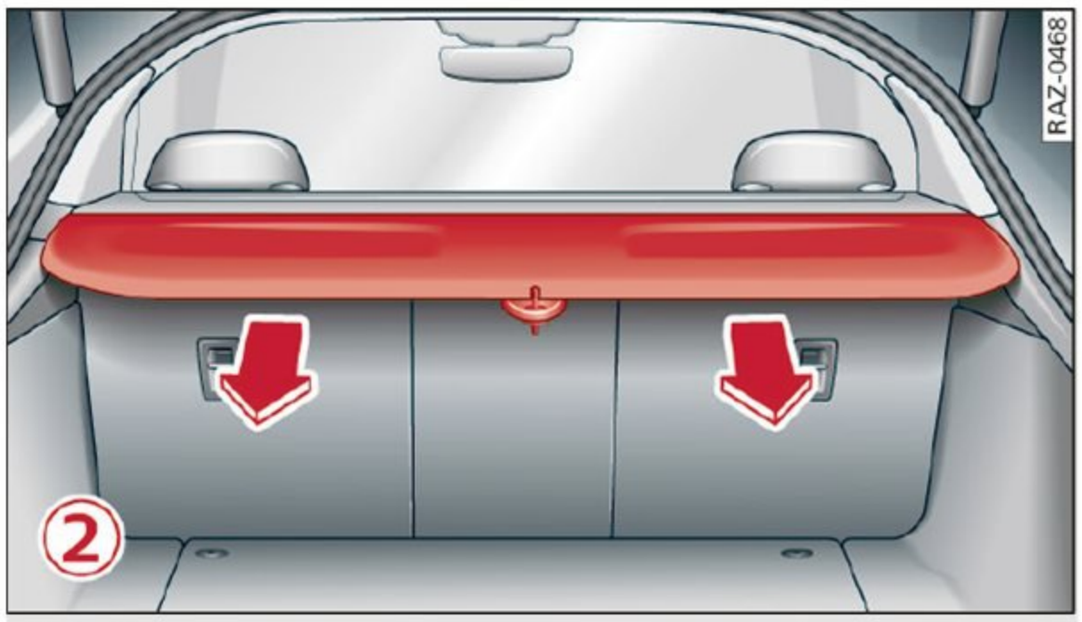


Fig. 75 Luggage compartment: cover behind the rear bench seat

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 80*.

- ▸ To remove the luggage compartment lid cover ①, turn the knob to a horizontal position.
- ▸ Pull the cover out of the retainers in the direction of the arrow.
- ▸ To install the cover, slide it upward on the retainers until they engage.
- ▸ Turn the knob to a vertical position.
- ▸ To remove the cover behind the rear bench seat ②, pull it in the direction of the arrow.
- ▸ Pull the cover upward to release.
- ▸ To install the cover, insert the left and right sides of the cover into the mount on the side trim panel.
- ▸ Slide the cover forward until it locks into place.

Increasing the size of the luggage compartment

Applies to: vehicles with folding backrests

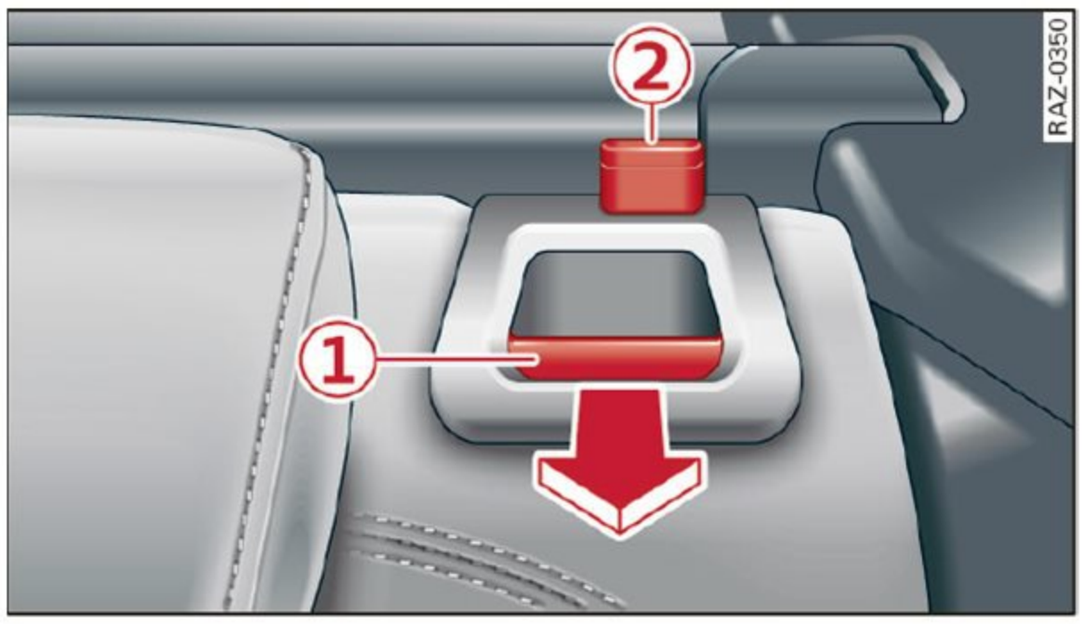


Fig. 76 Backrest: release lever and and latching indicator with red marking

The rear seat backrests can be folded forward either separately or together.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 80*.

- ▸ Pull the release lever ① in the direction of the arrow to fold the backrest forward.
- ▸ After the transport, fold the backrest up again until it latches and the red marking ② is no longer visible.

Pass-through

Applies to: vehicles with pass-through

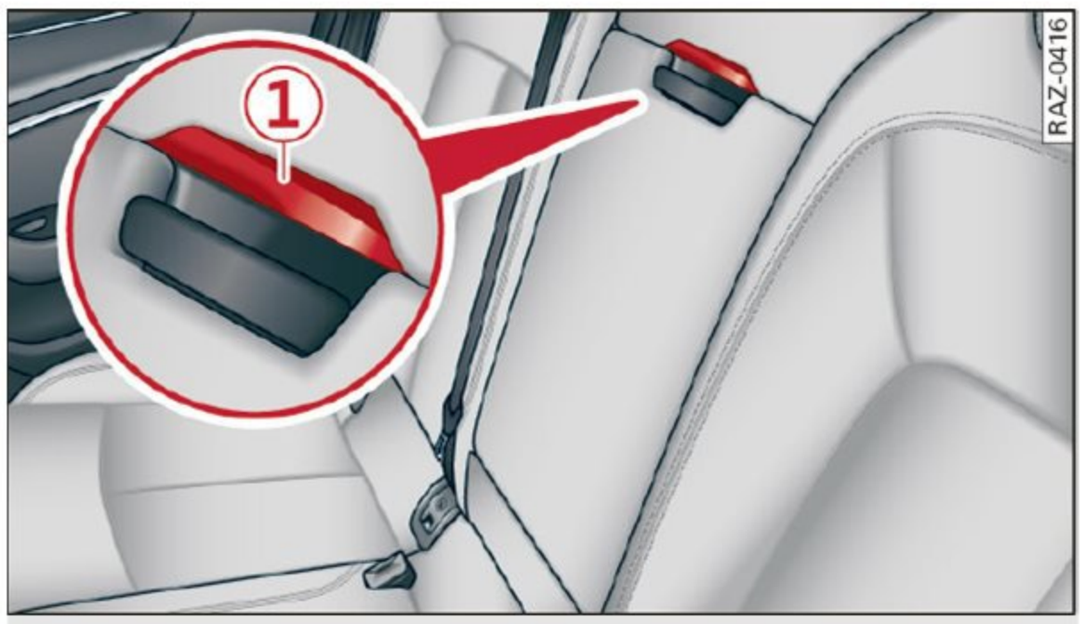


Fig. 77 Center backrest: release lever

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 80*.

- ▸ To fold the center backrest forward, pull the lever behind the trim panel ①.
- ▸ After the transport, fold the center backrest up until it locks into place.

To lock the pass-through, turn the lock behind the center backrest. This prevents access to luggage compartment.

Tie-downs and cargo net

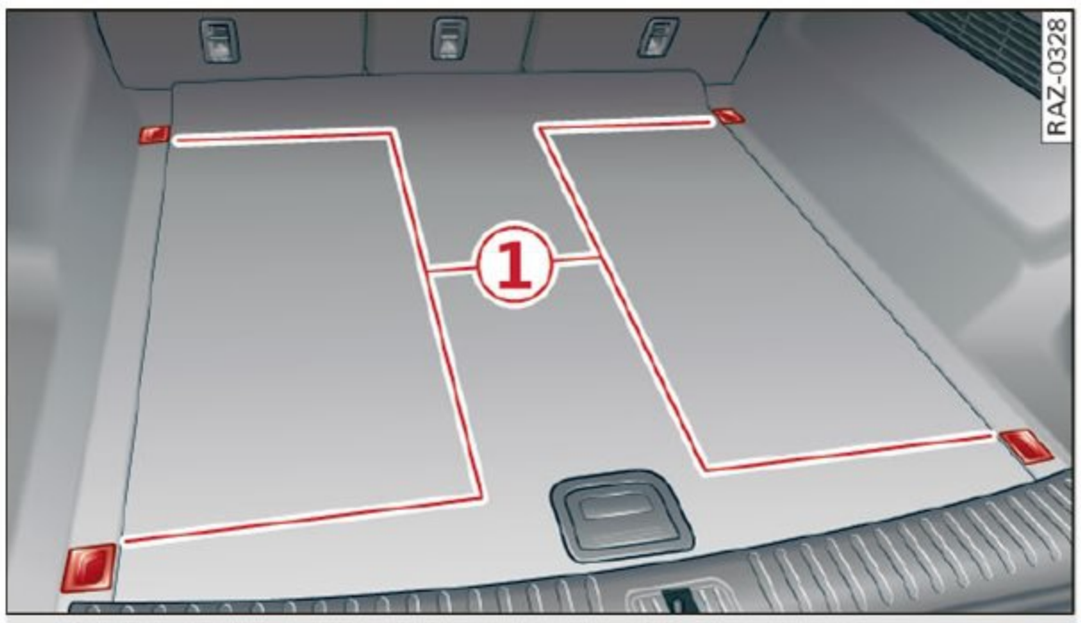


Fig. 78 Luggage compartment: location of the tie-downs

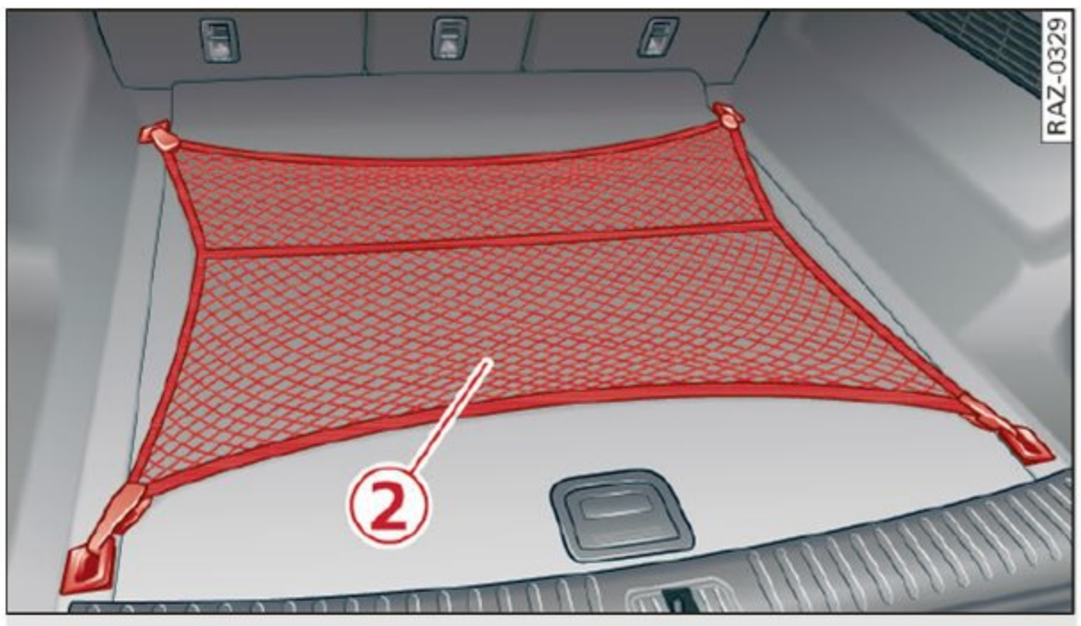


Fig. 79 Luggage compartment: cargo net stretched out

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 80*.

Tie-downs

There are tie-downs ① in the luggage compartment to secure pieces of luggage and objects.

- ▸ Use the tie-downs to secure the cargo.

Cargo net

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment net

Use the cargo net ② to secure lighter objects in the luggage compartment

- ▸ Fold the clip for the tie-downs upward.
- ▸ Attach the hooks for the cargo net to the tie-downs.

Warm and cold

Climate control system

Description

Your vehicle has an automatic climate control system with:

– 3-zone: you can customize the settings for the left front seat, the right front seat, and the rear, or:
– 4-zone: you can customize the settings for every seat.

The climate control system warms, cools, dehumidifies, and filters the air in the vehicle interior. It is most effective when the windows and sunroof* are closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

The climate control system automatically maintains a temperature once it has been set. In all heating mode functions except defrost, the blower only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has reached a certain temperature.

For a comfortable setting at all times of the year, you can press AUTO and set the temperature to 72 °F (22 °C).

For the sake of the environment

If you would like to reduce fuel consumption, switch the air conditioning off. This will also reduce emissions.

Tips

– To prevent interference with the heating and cooling output and to prevent the windows from fogging over, the air intake in front of the windshield must be free of ice, snow, and leaves.
– Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.
– The energy management system may temporarily switch off certain functions, such as the seat heating* or rear window defogger. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.
– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Operating



Fig. 80 Lower display and switch panel (example)

Settings are adjusted using both displays and the switch panel in the center console, and using the control panel in the rear. For operation in the front, see ⇨ *page 16, Touch displays*.

You can adjust all climate control system settings in the front; only certain functions are available in the rear.

Lower display

The lower display has two sections with controls ⇨ *fig. 80*.

You can regulate the blower and the air distribution automatically using AUTO in area ①. You can also apply individual settings here.

In section ②, you can switch individual climate control system functions on and off.

Switch panel

Both MAX and REAR buttons to defog windows as quickly as possible are located in section ③.

Upper display

In the upper display, you can switch additional functions on and off, display them, and adjust settings.

▸ Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Air conditioning**, or
▸ Select ••• on the lower display. ▶

Control panel in rear

You can operate certain climate control functions in the rear using the control panel.

Customizing

A climate control function from the upper display can be assigned to each button on the left and right of ••• in section ②.

► Press and hold the symbol for the desired function on the upper display for at least three seconds. One menu appears. The menu consists of two sections.
► If you pull the symbol toward the left section, the button to the left of ••• will be assigned.
► If you pull the symbol toward the right section, the button to the right of ••• will be assigned.

Settings

Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. One bar in the button lights up when the function is switched on. Some buttons can have several functions assigned to them. The various functions can be activated by pressing the button multiple times.

AUTO **Automatic mode**

The automatic mode regulates the amount of air and air distribution automatically, so that the set temperature is reached is quickly as possible.

REAR **Rear climate control system**

Applies to: vehicles with rear climate control system

If you want to control the climate control in the rear, press REAR.

To exit this mode again, press REAR or REAR MODE EXIT.

SYNC **Synchronization**

When synchronization is switched on, the temperature, air distribution, and blower strength on the driver's side is applied to all seat positions. You can also control the synchronization directly using a gesture. Pull two fingers together on the lower display ⇨ *page 16*.

OFF **Switching off**

The climate control system is switched off. Air supply from the outside is blocked. To switch the climate control system back on, press on any button in the respective display. If you press OFF in the front, the front and rear climate control system will switch off. If you press OFF in the rear, the rear climate control system will switch off.

A/C / A/C MAX **Cooling mode**

The cooling mode only functions with the blower turned on. The air is cooled and dehumidified in cooling mode. Otherwise the windows can fog up. Cooling mode switches off automatically when the outside temperatures are below zero.

If you activate the A/C, the cooling mode will be automatically regulated.

If you activate A/C MAX, the cooling mode will run with maximum cooling output and maximum blower speed. To reduce unnecessary fuel consumption, only use this function briefly.

+ / – **Temperature**

Temperatures between 60 °F (+16 °C) and 84 °F (+28 °C) can be set. If outside of this range, LOW / LO or HIGH / HI will appear in the display. In both settings, the climate control runs constantly at the maximum cooling or heating level. The temperature is not regulated.

Blower

With ﹀ / ﹀, you can manually adjust the volume of air generated by the blower to your preferences. The blower should always run to prevent the windows from fogging and to ensure a continuous exchange of air inside the vehicle. To have the blower regulated automatically, press AUTO.

Air distribution

With ↗ / ⇨ / ↘, you can select the vents where the air will flow from. To have the vents automatically controlled, deactivate all three arrows or press AUTO. With ↗, the air will be directed toward the windshield.

Using the control panel* in the rear, you can adjust the air distribution based on the direction of ▶

the arrow by pressing the button multiple times.

Defrosting

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. The windshield defogger* is also switched on at low outside temperatures. The button will flash. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature should be set at +72°F (22°C) or higher. Depending on the outside temperature, the A/C cooling mode may automatically switch on.

Rear window defogger

The rear window defogger only operates when the engine is running. It switches off automatically after 10 to 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window defogger from switching off automatically, press and hold for more than three seconds. This is stored until the ignition is switched off.

/ Recirculation mode

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior.

If you activate *, the air quality sensor will automatically switch recirculation mode on or off depending on the outside temperature.

If you activate , recirculation mode will switch on manually ⇨ .

Seat heating

Applies to: vehicles with heated seats

The seat heating temperature can be set at multiple levels. Press once to switch on the highest level. Press again to decrease the temperature one level at a time. The seat heating is switched off if the button is not illuminated.

Seat ventilation

Applies to: vehicles with seat ventilation

The seat ventilation intensity can be set to multiple levels. Press once to switch on the highest level. Press again to decrease the intensity one level at a time. The seat ventilation is switched off if the button is not illuminated.

Steering wheel heating

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

The steering wheel rim is heated electrically. You can also operate the steering wheel heating using the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 27*.

Child safety lock*

If turns on in the control panel* in the rear, the child safety lock is active and operation is blocked ⇨ *page 41*.

Ionizer

Applies to: vehicles with ionizer

Hazardous particles and germs in the air are reduced through ionization. This will produce better air quality inside the vehicle.

Residual heat

The residual heat from the coolant is used to heat the vehicle interior. To use this function, press when the ignition is switched off. The function switches off automatically after about 15 minutes.

WARNING

- You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period of time, because no fresh air is drawn in and the windows can fog when cooling mode is switched off. This increases the risk of an accident.
- Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating* function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating*.

Note

To avoid damaging the seat heating* elements, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy pressure on one area of the seat.

Additional settings

You can adjust additional settings.

- Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Air conditioning** > ⚙.

Footwell temperature*

You can adjust the footwell temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Auto supplementary heater

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engines

You can warm up the interior faster using the auxiliary heating.

For the sake of the environment

If you would like to save fuel, switch the auto supplementary heater off.

Tips

When the auxiliary heater is operating, water vapor may build up near the engine compartment when outside temperatures are low. This does not indicate a problem.

Air quality display

Applies to: vehicles with air quality display

You can display information about the air quality.

- Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Air conditioning**.
- You may need to scroll down to the **Air quality** display.

Pollutant filter

A pollutant filter cleans the air in the vehicle interior when the blower is switched on.

A schematic display represents the effectiveness of the filter. The display visualizes the amount of pollutant particles in the vehicle interior in comparison to the surroundings.

4K8012721BA

Driving

Engine start

Ready mode

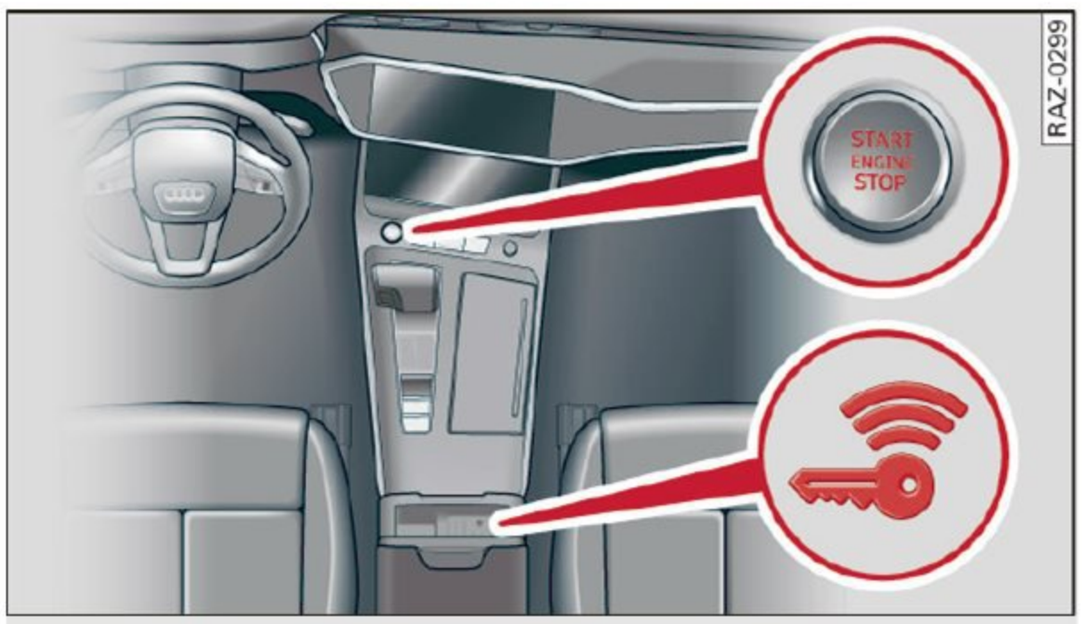


Fig. 81 Center console: starting the engine

Requirement: the key must be in the vehicle. When using an Audi connect key*, the mobile device or the activated Audi connect key card must be in the Audi phone box ⇨ *page 161*.

Starting the engine

- ▸ Press the brake pedal.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button.
- ▸ The engine will start and the vehicle will then be ready to drive.

Equipment that uses a lot of electricity is switched off temporarily when you start the engine. If the engine does not start immediately, the starting procedure stops automatically after a short time. If this is the case, repeat the starting process.

Starting the engine when there is a malfunction

It may not be possible to start the engine under certain circumstances, for example, if the battery in the vehicle key is drained, if interference is affecting the key, or if there is a system malfunction.

- ▸ Hold the vehicle key vertically in the location indicated ⇨ *fig. 81*.
- ▸ Press the brake pedal.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start.
- ▸ Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Stopping the engine

- ▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will switch off.

Applies to: vehicles with steering lock: Steering is locked when you turn off the engine and open the driver's door. The steering lock helps prevent vehicle theft.

Stopping the engine in an emergency

If it is absolutely necessary, the engine can also be turned off using the emergency stop function* while driving at speeds above 4 mph (7 km/h).

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in a row or press and hold it one time.

Switching on and off

If you would like to switch the ignition on or off without starting the engine, follow these steps:

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button without pressing the brake pedal.

Switching the ignition off automatically

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

To prevent the vehicle battery from draining, the ignition and possibly the exterior lighting may switch off automatically.

Requirements:

– The Start/Stop system* must have stopped the engine.
– You must have left the vehicle for longer than 30 seconds.
– The ignition must be switched on.

Among other indicators, the system detects that you have left the vehicle based on the following factors:

– The driver's door has been opened.
– The driver's safety belt has been unbuckled.
– The brake pedal is not being pressed.

The ignition will also be switched off after 30 minutes or if you lock the vehicle from the outside. ▶

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of asphyxiation, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.
- Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Switching it off before the vehicle has stopped may impair the function of the brake booster and power steering. You would then need to use more force to steer and brake the vehicle. The fact that you cannot steer and brake as usual may increase the risk of accidents and serious injuries.
- If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. If you do not do this, the engine could be started and electrical equipment such as the power windows could be activated. This can lead to serious injuries.
- Always select the “P” selector lever position when parking the vehicle; otherwise, the vehicle could roll away.

Note

- Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load if the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.
- If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off and there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

Tips

- Brief noises are normal when starting the vehicle and are no cause for concern.
- For up to 10 minutes after stopping the engine, the radiator fan may turn on again automatically or it may continue to run, even if the ignition is switched off.

Messages

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

Do **not** switch the ignition off because you may not be able to switch it on again. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Drive system: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the drive system. The brake booster and the power steering may stop working. Stop the vehicle immediately or as soon as possible and do not continue driving. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the engine starting system. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Drive system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the drive system. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Remote control key: key not detected. Is the key still in the vehicle?

This indicator light turns on and this message appears if the vehicle key is removed from the vehicle when the engine is running. If the vehicle key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch the ignition on or start the engine once you stop it. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Remote control key and smartphone not detected. Are your key and smartphone still in the vehicle?

This indicator light turns on and this message appears if the vehicle key and smartphone are removed from the vehicle while the engine is running. If the vehicle key and smartphone are no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch the ignition on or restart the engine once you stop the engine. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside. ▶

Remote control key: hold back of key against the designated area. See owner's manual

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction ⇨ *page 88*.

Hold back of key on the designated area, or place your smartphone in the charging cradle

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction ⇨ *page 88*.

Shift to P, vehicle can roll away. Doors can only be locked in P

Select “P”, otherwise the vehicle may roll and it cannot be locked.

WARNING

If the engine stops while driving, you will need to use more force to brake the vehicle. This increases the risk of an accident. There will still be power steering if the ignition is switched on while the vehicle is rolling and there is sufficient battery charge. Otherwise, you must use greater force when steering.

When driving

Starting to drive, stopping, and parking

Starting from a stop

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Start the engine.
- ▸ Select a gear.
- ▸ Release the parking brake.
- ▸ Release the brake pedal. The vehicle may roll.
- ▸ Press the accelerator pedal to accelerate.

Stopping and parking

- ▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop and press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select the “P” selector lever position to secure the vehicle from rolling away.

On hills, activate the parking brake first and then shift into the "P" selector lever position. This prevents too much stress from being placed on the locking mechanism.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, always secure your vehicle from rolling.
- The vehicle can roll even when the engine is switched off.
- Unintended vehicle movement can lead to serious injuries.
- Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stationary. Pressing the pedal increases risk of accident because the vehicle will move, even if parking brake is set.

Gears and driving program

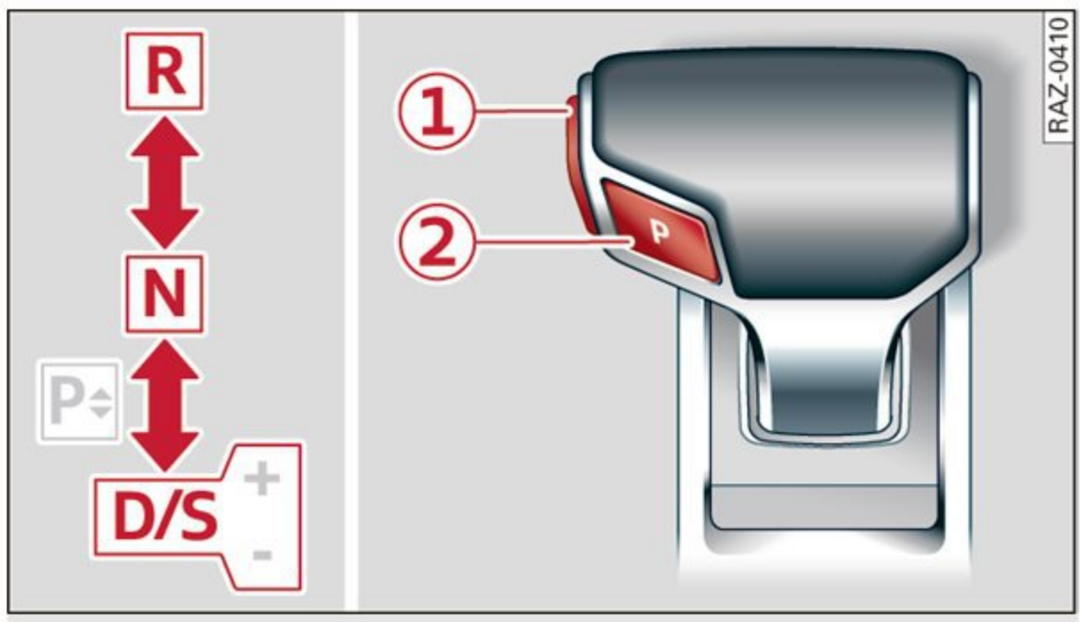


Fig. 82 Center console: selector lever

The automatic transmission shifts automatically depending on the selected gear and the current driving style. When driving with a moderate driving style, upshifting early and downshifting late will help to improve fuel economy. When driving with a sporty driving style, the transmission permits higher RPMs.

The gears are displayed next to the selector lever.

- **P** (Park)
- **R** (Reverse)
- **N** (Neutral)
- **D** (Drive)

Selecting a gear

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- Bring the vehicle to a full stop and press the brake pedal.
- Press the release button (1) on the selector lever. ▸

– To select the nearest gear, move the selector lever forward or back until you feel the first pressure point.
– To skip a gear (for example, move from “D” to “R”), move the selector lever past the pressure point in the desired direction.
– The label next to the selector lever for the selected gear will light up.

“N” (Neutral) gear

The transmission is idling when in the “N” gear. No power is being transferred to the drive wheels. Use the neutral gear, for example, in a car wash (with conveyor belts).

If you unintentionally select “N” while driving (faster than 1 mph (2 km/h)), you can also shift back to “D” without pressing the brake pedal.

For safety reasons, the vehicle cannot be locked when the transmission is in the "N” gear.

“P” (Park) gear

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

The vehicle is secured from rolling away by the parking lock when in the “P” gear.

– Bring the vehicle to a full stop and press the brake pedal.
– Press the “P” button ② on the selector lever.
– The “P” next to the selector lever will light up.

“P” engages automatically if you switch the engine off while the “D” or “R” gear is selected. If you switch the engine off in “N”, “P” will engage automatically after approximately 30 minutes.

Applies to: vehicles with S tronic transmission: If you want to shift from “P” to “D” or “R”, the engine must be running.

Applies to: vehicles with tiptronic transmission: If you want to switch to another gear from “P”, the engine must be running.

If you cannot shift out of “P”, for example because the vehicle has no power, you may need to use the emergency release for the parking lock ⇨ *page 93*.

Selecting the driving program

Various driving programs can be selected when in the “D” gear. The programs influence when the transmission shifts and how the accelerator pedal responds.

The selected driving program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

– **D** (Drive): normal driving mode
– **S** (Sport): sporty driving mode

If you select the **Dynamic** mode in Audi drive select*, the “S” driving program will be activated. When the ignition is switched off, the driving program may be reset to “D”.

To switch between the current driving program and “S”, push the selector lever toward the rear.

WARNING

– Before starting to drive, check if the desired gear is displayed next to the selector lever.
– Always secure your vehicle from rolling away. Press the brake pedal or shift to “P”. When leaving the vehicle, also set the parking brake.
– Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from “creeping”, you must keep your foot on the brake in all selector lever positions (except "P" and "N") when the engine is running.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, select the "P" gear and set the parking brake before opening the hood. Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ *page 227, Working in the engine compartment*.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, do not press the accelerator pedal when changing gears if the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
– Never select the “R" or "P” gears while driving. Doing so could cause an accident.
– The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off.

Tips

If you shift between “D” and “R” within one second, you do not need to press the brake pedal. This makes it possible to “rock” if it is stuck, for example.

Manual shifting



Fig. 83 Center console: shifting manually with the selector lever



Fig. 84 Steering wheel: shift paddles*

You can shift the gears manually when in “D” mode. The transmission must be in tiptronic mode.

Shifting with the selector lever

You can shift into manual shifting mode while the vehicle is stationary or while driving.

- To switch to manual shifting mode, tilt the selector lever toward the front passenger's side ⇨ *fig. 83*. “M” will be displayed in the instrument cluster.
- Upshifting: push the selector lever forward ⊕.
- Downshifting: push the selector lever toward the rear ⊖.
- To switch back to automatic mode, tilt the selector lever toward the driver's side.

Shifting with the shift paddles

Applies to: vehicles with shift paddles

- Upshifting: press the ⊕ shift paddle ⇨ *fig. 84*.
- Downshifting: press the ⊖ shift paddle.
- Applies to: vehicles with tiptronic transmission: To engage the lowest possible gear for maximum acceleration, press and hold the ⊖ shift paddle.
- To switch back to automatic mode, press and hold the ⊕ shift paddle or push the selector lever toward the rear.

If you stop using the shift paddles temporarily, the transmission will switch back to automatic mode. To keep shifting manually, tilt the selector lever toward the front passenger's side.

Tips

– The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.
– The transmission automatically shifts up or down before critical engine speed is reached.

Accelerator pedal

Kick-down

If you press the accelerator pedal all the way down, you will reach maximum acceleration.

If necessary, the transmission may shift to a lower gear to utilize the engine's full power. Right before a critical engine RPM is reached, it will upshift automatically.

WARNING

Please note that the wheels could spin on slick or slippery roads when kick-down is active.

Launch Control

Applies to: vehicles with S tronic transmission

Launch Control provides the best possible acceleration when starting from a stop.

Requirements

– The engine must be at operating temperature. ▶

– The steering wheel must not be turned.
– Start/Stop system* must be deactivated ⇨ *page 97*.
– ESC must be limited ⇨ *page 107*.
– Driving program S ⇨ *page 91* or the Audi drive select* **Dynamic** mode must be selected ⇨ *page 103*.

Using Launch Control

– Press the brake pedal firmly with your left foot and hold it all the way down for at least one second.
– At the same time, press the accelerator pedal all the way down with your right foot. Once the engine reaches a constant speed, remove your left foot from the brake pedal.

Once the vehicle has started moving, reactivate the ESC so that it is fully functional.

WARNING

Only use Launch Control when road and traffic conditions allow it and other road users will not be endangered or impacted by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces, which increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

– After accelerating using the Launch Control, the temperature of some vehicle components may increase greatly. If that happens, the function will not be available for a few minutes to reduce the risk of damage. After a cool-down period, Launch Control will be available again.
– When accelerating using Launch Control, all vehicle components are subject to heavy loads. This can result in increased wear.

Parking lock emergency release

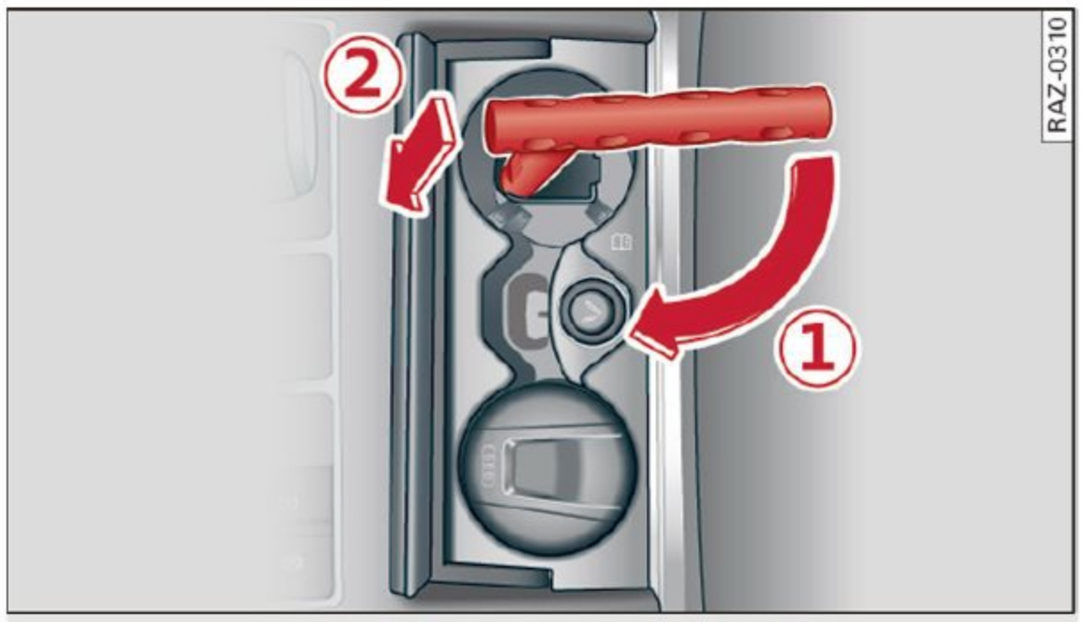


Fig. 85 -Applies to: left-hand drive vehicles-: Diagram: releasing the parking lock using the emergency release

The emergency release is located in the front cup holder under a cover. Read and follow the important instructions about towing ⇨ *page 274*.

Releasing the parking lock using the emergency release

► To prevent your vehicle from rolling away, set the parking brake Ⓟ ⇨ *page 99*.
► Remove the rubber mat.
► Pry the cover off the opening using the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit.
► Insert the socket wrench from the vehicle tool kit in the opening so that the handle points toward the front passenger's side.
► Applies to left-hand drive vehicles: Turn the socket wrench clockwise until it stops ① and then press it downward ② until it locks into place.
► Applies to right-hand drive vehicles: Turn the socket wrench counterclockwise until it stops and then press it downward until it locks into place.
► Leave the socket wrench inserted.

Resetting the parking lock

► Grasp the socket wrench with both hands, carefully pull it all the way up, and then turn it back.
► Now remove the socket wrench.
► Reinsert the cover and rubber mat. ▶

WARNING

- The parking lock must be released using the emergency release before towing the vehicle.
- The parking lock may only be released using the emergency release if the parking brake is set. If it is not working, secure the vehicle from rolling using the brake pedal or other suitable means, such as blocking a front and a rear wheel. An unsecured vehicle may roll away, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Only activate the emergency release while on a level surface or a slight slope.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, you must not drive when the emergency release is activated.

Messages

Transmission: too hot. Please stop vehicle

Do not continue driving. Select "P" and contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Transmission: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

Do not continue driving. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe location and secure it so it does not roll. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Selector lever: malfunction! You can continue driving. Please contact Service

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

P button: malfunction! Auto P when engine off. Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the "P" button on the selector lever. “P” engages automatically if you switch the engine off while the “D” or “R” gear is selected. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Selector lever: malfunction! Gear change only possible if using both shift paddles

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. You can continue driving with restricted function. The selector lever is not working. Gears can only be selected by tapping both shift paddles at the same time when the vehicle is stationary. The parking lock engages automatically when you turn off the engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: please press brake pedal and select gear again

Press the brake pedal and select the desired selector lever position again. You can then continue driving.

Transmission: too hot. Please adapt driving style

The transmission temperature has increased significantly. Drive very cautiously or take a break from driving until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light turns off.

Danger of rolling away! P not possible. Please apply parking brake

- The parking lock was released using the emergency release ⇨ *page 93*. Or
- The parking lock can no longer be engaged. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving. See owner's manual

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. You may continue driving. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving in D until engine is off

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. If you turn the engine off, you will not be able to select any other gears after restarting the ▶

engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving with limited function. Please contact Service

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or may no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving with limited function. No reverse gear

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or may no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. You cannot engage the reverse gear. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Danger of rolling away! P not possible. Please apply parking brake

- The parking lock was released using the emergency release ⇨ *page 93*. Or
- The parking lock can no longer be engaged. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Move selector lever to automatic position

The transmission has switched out of tiptronic mode. Switch back to automatic mode with the selector lever ⇨ *page 92*.

Drive system

Combustion engine

Breaking in

A new vehicle must be broken in within the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) so that all moving parts work smoothly together, which helps to increase the service life of the engine.

Do not drive higher than two-thirds of the maximum permitted engine RPM during the first 600 miles (1,000 km) and do not use full acceleration. The engine can be increased RPM gradually during the next 300 miles (500 km).

Efficient and environmentally-conscious driving

The amount of fuel consumption, the environmental impact, and the wear to the engine, brakes, and tires depends mostly on your driving style. Note the following information for efficient and environmentally-conscious driving:

- Do not let the engine run while the vehicle parked.
- Use the Start/Stop system ⇨ *page 96*.
- Turn off electrical equipment that is not needed, for example seat heating*.
- Anticipate upcoming traffic situations while driving to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Utilize the engine braking effect.
- Avoid driving short distances or at high speeds when possible.
- Avoid adding extra weight to the vehicle if possible, for example by not leaving roof racks or bike racks installed when they are not needed.
- Have maintenance performed regularly on the vehicle.
- Do not drive with winter tires during the summer.
- Make sure the tire pressure is correct ⇨ *page 250*.

Tips

The amount of noise produced by the vehicle can increase significantly when driving with a sporty style. Show respect to others around you and the environment with the way you operate your vehicle, especially at night.

4K8012721BA

Energy management

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the vehicle battery life.

Tips

– If you drive short distances frequently, the vehicle battery may not charge enough while driving. As a result, convenience functions for electrical equipment may be temporarily unavailable.
– The vehicle battery will gradually drain if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if electrical equipment is used when the engine is not running. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be limited or switched off.

Start/Stop system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The Start/Stop system can help increase fuel economy and reduce CO_2 emissions.

In Start/Stop mode, the engine shuts off automatically when stopped, for example at a traffic light. The ignition and important assist systems such as power steering and the brake booster will remain available during the "stop" phase. The engine will restart automatically when needed.

The Start/Stop system is automatically activated once the ignition is switched on.

Basic requirements

– The driver's door and hood must be closed.
– "P", "N", or "D" must be engaged.
– The steering wheel must not be turned far in either direction.
– The vehicle must have driven faster than 2 mph (3 km/h) since the last time it stopped.
– A trailer must not be hitched to the vehicle.

Note

Always switch the Start/Stop system off when driving through water ⇨ *page 97*.

Tips

– Depending on the driving situation, the engine may already stop when **coasting** before the vehicle has come to a complete stop [1)].
– If you select the "D" position after shifting into reverse, the vehicle must be driven faster than 6 mph (10 km/h) in order for the Start/Stop system to become active again. This makes it possible to maneuver without stopping the engine.

Stopping and starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

▸ Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has stopped. The Ⓐ indicator light appears in the instrument cluster once the engine stops automatically.
▸ The engine starts again when you remove your foot from the brake pedal. The indicator light turns off.

Tips

– Press the brake pedal during a Stop phase to keep the vehicle from rolling.
– The ignition will turn off if you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a stop phase.
– If you leave the vehicle briefly during a stop phase, the driver's door must be closed and the safety belt buckled for the engine to be able to start automatically.
– You can control if the engine will stop or not by reducing or increasing the amount of force you use to press the brake pedal. For example, if you only lightly press on the brake pedal in stop-and-go traffic or when turning, the engine will not switch off when the vehicle is stationary. If you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will switch off.

1) In certain countries.

Starting and stopping the engine automatically

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The system checks if certain conditions are met before and during the "stop" phase, and determines if the engine stops and how long it remains stopped. For example, if power usage is high, the engine will not be stopped. Along with other conditions, the following factors influence the automatic engine start or stop:

– Environmental conditions (slopes, inclines, elevation, temperature)
– Battery (charge status, temperature, power usage)
– Engine temperature
– Assist systems
– Driving behavior

Manually switching the Start/Stop system off and on

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The Ⓐ OFF button is located in the function bar on the lower display.

► Press Ⓐ OFF to switch on or off. One bar in the button lights up when the function is switched off.

Tips

If you switch the system off during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

Drive system: please start the vehicle manually

This message appears when specific conditions are not met during a stop phase. The Start/Stop system will not be able to restart the engine. The engine must be started with the START ENGINE STOP button.

Vehicle start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the Start/Stop system. Drive the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

Brakes

General information

Brake pads

New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 mi (400 km). They must be “broken in” first. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.

Brake pad wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. Brake pad wear increases when driving frequently in the city or short distances or when using a very sporty driving style.

Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force, and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Wet conditions or road salt

In certain situations, for example after driving through water, in heavy rain, or after washing your car, the braking effect may be reduced due to moisture or ice on the brake rotors and brake pads. The brakes must be “dried” first with a few careful brake applications.

When driving at higher speeds while the windshield wipers are switched on, the brake pads are briefly pressed against the brake rotors. This action, which is not felt by the driver, happens at regular intervals and ensures a better reaction time for the brakes in wet weather.

The braking effect can also be reduced if you are driving on salted roads and you do not apply the brakes for long periods of time. The layer of salt on the brake rotors and pads must be worn off first when the brakes are applied.

Corrosion

Leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, low mileage on the vehicle, and avoiding ▶

heavy braking can contribute to corrosion on the brake rotors and to dirty brake pads.

If you usually avoid heavy braking or if there is corrosion present, occasional heavy braking at high speeds is recommended to clean the brake rotors and pads ⇨ ⚠.

Brake system malfunction

If you notice that the brake pedal *suddenly* goes down farther toward the floor when you press it, then a brake circuit in the dual-circuit brake system may have malfunctioned. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the problem corrected. On the way there, drive with reduced speed and keep in mind that you will need a longer distance to stop and you will need to press the brake pedal harder.

Low brake fluid level

When the brake fluid level is low, malfunctions in the brake system may occur. The brake fluid level is electronically monitored ⇨ *page 235*.

Brake booster

The brake booster amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal.

Ceramic brakes

Applies to: vehicles with ceramic brakes

Ceramic brakes provide excellent deceleration rates.

The break-in period for new ceramic brakes may be significantly longer than for standard brake rotors. Due to the properties of the material, they may cause noises at lower speeds. Ceramic brakes also absorb more moisture in wet conditions. Therefore, there will temporarily be less braking force than when the brakes are dry. You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal harder.

⚠ WARNING

- Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when road and traffic conditions permit. You must not endanger other road users and increase the risk of an accident.
- Due to the risk of injury, only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility work on the brake system. Incorrect repairs could impair the function.
- Never let the vehicle roll while the engine is stopped because this increases the risk of an accident.
- During automatic braking maneuvers, the brake pedal may move downward automatically. To reduce the risk of injury, do not place your foot under the brake pedal.

! Note

- Never let the brakes “rub” by pressing the pedal lightly when braking is not actually necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and increases braking distance and causes wear.
- Before driving downhill a long distance on a steep hill, decrease your speed and select a lower gear. This makes use of the engine braking effect and reduces the load placed on the brakes. If you need to brake additionally, brake in intervals and not continuously.

i Tips

If you retrofit your vehicle with a front spoiler, wheel covers or similar items, make sure that the air flow to the front wheels is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system can overheat.

Messages

BRAKE / (!) Brakes: malfunction! Stop vehicle safely

There is a malfunction in the brake system. If ABS / (ABS) and also turn on, there is a malfunction in the ABS, ESC, and braking distribution.

Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance. Read and follow the other safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

BRAKE / Brake pads! ▶

The brake pads are worn. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

BRAKE / Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact Service

The brake pads are worn. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

Brakes overheating. Please shift to D

There was a heavy load on the brakes. Place the lever in the "D" position in order to use the engine braking effect and reduce the load on the brakes.

Brake booster: limited functionality. You can continue driving. Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the brake booster. The brake booster is available, but its effectiveness is reduced. Braking behavior may be different from how it normally functions and the brake pedal may vibrate. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Brake booster: deactivated. See owner's manual

The brake booster remains active for a brief period of time after switching off the ignition. Secure the vehicle from rolling by selecting “P” and setting the parking brake.

WARNING

If a malfunction occurs in the ABS, ESC, and braking distribution, interventions that stabilize the vehicle will no longer be available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Electromechanical parking brake

Description

The Ⓟ switch is located under the selector lever in the center console.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake. The parking brake is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally and replaces the hand brake.

Setting/manually releasing the parking brake

- Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake. The LED in the switch turns on. The PARK / Ⓟ indicator light also turns on.
- To release the parking brake manually, press the brake or accelerator pedal while the ignition is switched on, and press the Ⓟ switch at the same time. The LED in the button and the indicator light will turn off.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

Requirement: the doors must be closed and the driver's safety belt must be fastened.

- To start driving and release the parking brake automatically, press the accelerator pedal as usual.

In addition to releasing the parking brake automatically, other convenience and safety functions are available when you start driving ⇨ *page 101*.

Preventing the automatic parking brake release

The vehicle could begin rolling unintentionally when the parking brake is released if the vehicle is on a hill or towing a trailer.

- To prevent the parking brake from releasing automatically, pull and hold the Ⓟ switch and press the accelerator pedal. The parking brake remains set and prevents the vehicle from rolling backward.
- You can release the Ⓟ switch again once you are sure that you are giving enough driving force to the wheels by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Emergency braking function

You can use the emergency braking function in an emergency situation, or if the standard brakes are malfunctioning or the pedal is obstructed.

- ▸ Pull and hold the Ⓟ switch.
- ▸ As soon as you release the Ⓟ switch or accelerate, the braking will stop.

Pulling and holding the Ⓟ switch while driving the vehicle activates the emergency braking function. The hydraulic brake system will brake all four wheels. The braking effect is similar to heavy braking ⇨ ⚠.

To reduce the risk of activating the emergency braking by mistake, a warning tone (buzzer) sounds when the Ⓟ switch is pulled. Emergency braking stops as soon as the Ⓟ switch is released or the accelerator pedal is pressed.

Parking

- ▸ Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select “P”.
- ▸ Turn the engine off ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Turn the steering wheel when parking on inclines so that the wheels will roll into the curb if the vehicle starts moving.

⚠ WARNING

– If a gear is engaged while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently. Pressing the accelerator pedal will cause the vehicle to move, and this could result in an accident.
– Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, when the when the standard brake pedal is malfunctioning or obstructed. During emergency braking, your vehicle will brake similar to heavy braking. ESC and the associated components (ABS, ASR, EDL) cannot overcome the laws of physics. A full brake application while driving through curves or in poor road or weather conditions can cause the vehicle to slide or the rear of the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Always set the parking brake when leaving your vehicle, even if for a short period of time. If the parking brake is not set, the vehicle could roll away, increasing the risk of an accident.
– If the power supply fails, you cannot set the parking brake once it is released. In this case, park the vehicle on level ground and secure it by engaging the "P” gear. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise, children could start the engine, release the parking brake, or operate electrical equipment such as power windows, which increases the risk of an accident.
– No one, especially children, should remain in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Note

Do not leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

When stopping at a traffic signal or stopping in city traffic, you can set the parking brake manually. The vehicle does not have to be held with the brake pedal. The parking brake eliminates the tendency to creep when a selector lever position is engaged. As soon as you press the accelerator pedal, the parking brake releases automatically and the vehicle starts to move ⇨ *page 101, Hold assist*.

Tips

If you leave the vehicle when “D” or “R” are engaged, the parking brake will be set automatically. ▸

Tips

– Occasional noises when the parking brake is set and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
– The parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is stopped. Any noises associated with this are normal.

Hold assist

Various convenience and safety functions may be available when the vehicle begins driving, depending on vehicle equipment.

Starting on hills with the parking brake set

Requirement: the doors must be closed and the driver's safety belt must be fastened.

▸ To start driving comfortably when on a hill, set the parking brake and begin driving as usual. The braking force of the parking brake does not release automatically until the wheels build up enough driving force.

Starting on hills with hill hold assist

Hill hold assist makes it easier to start on hills.

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the engine must be running.

▸ To activate hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds. The vehicle must be facing uphill.

After releasing the brake pedal, the braking power is maintained briefly ⇨ ⚠ to prevent the vehicle from rolling back when starting. This allows you to begin driving more easily.

WARNING

– If you do not begin driving immediately or the engine stalls after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.
– The intelligent technology of hill hold assist cannot overcome the limitations imposed by natural physical laws. The increased comfort offered by hill hold assist should not cause you to take safety risks.
– Hill hold assist cannot hold the vehicle in place on all hills (for example, if the ground is slippery or icy).
– To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure the vehicle is situated safely while stationary.

Messages

If the PARK / Ⓟ indicator light flashes, the braking force has not built up enough or it has decreased. Select the "P" gear to help secure the vehicle. Make sure the indicator light is off before you start driving.

BRAKE / Ⓘ Parking brake: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual

If the indicator light and the message appear **when the vehicle is stationary or after switching the ignition on**, check if you can release the parking brake. If you cannot release the parking brake, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If you can release the parking brake and the message still appears, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

If the indicator light and message appear **while driving**, the hill start assist or emergency braking function may be malfunctioning. It may not be possible to set the parking brake or release it once it has been set. Do not park your vehicle on hills. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

BRAKE / Ⓘ Parking brake: malfunction! Please release parking brake

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Release the parking brake and set it again.

Ⓟ Parking brake: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi ▸

Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. Do not park the vehicle on hills, because it could roll.

PARK BRAKE / (P) Parking brake: warning! Vehicle parked too steep

There is not enough braking force to hold the vehicle in place. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away, even on a small incline.

PARK BRAKE / (P) Parking brake: applied

If this message appears, press the brake pedal first and then release the parking brake if necessary.

Take over!

If this message appears, press the brake pedal.

Special driving situations

Driving on inclines and hills

Please note the following when driving on inclines and hills:

– Drive slowly and carefully.
– Do not try to turn around if you cannot safely drive on an incline or hill. Instead, drive in reverse.
– When driving down hills, you can activate the hill descent control if you press the brake pedal while driving in “D” gear. The automatic transmission will select a gear suitable for driving down the hill and will attempt to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was traveling at the time the brake pedal was pressed. Press the brake pedal if necessary. The hill descent control will switch off once the hill levels out or you press the accelerator pedal.
– Utilize the engine braking effect when driving downhill by selecting a lower gear ⇨ *page 92*. This removes some of the load from the brakes.
– Brake in intervals and do not press the brake pedal continuously.

WARNING

– Only drive on inclines that your vehicle is designed to handle. Do not exceed the hill climbing ability of your vehicle. Your vehicle could tip or slide.
– Do not drive at an angle on steep inclines and hills. If your vehicle is about to tip, you must immediately start steering in the direction of the downward slope to reduce the risk of an accident.
– Always be ready to brake when using the hill descent control function.

Driving through water

If you must drive through water, follow these instructions:

– Check the stability of the ground, the current, and the water depth. If the ground is unstable, there is a strong current, or there are waves, the water must only reach **up to the lower edge of the body at the most**.
– Deactivate the Start/Stop system.
– Drive carefully and no faster than at walking speeds to prevent the front of the vehicle from creating waves, because they could splash above the lower edge of the body. Oncoming vehicles could also create waves.
– Do not stop the vehicle while in the water.
– Do not turn the engine off.

WARNING

After driving through water, press the brake pedal carefully to dry the brakes so that the full braking effect will be available again.

Note

Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension, or electrical system, can be severely damaged by driving through water.

Tips

If possible, avoid driving through salt water because it increases the risk of corrosion. Use fresh water to clean any vehicle components that come into contact with salt water.

Driving dynamic

Audi drive select

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle characteristics in one vehicle. With different driving modes, the driver can switch the setting in the MMI, for example from sporty to comfortable. In the **Individual** mode, the settings can be adjusted to your personal preferences. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty engine setting with light steering.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select



Fig. 86 Center console: Audi drive select button

- ▸ Press the left or right arrow key ⇨ *fig. 86* until the desired mode appears in the MMI. Or:
- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Audi drive select**.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, briefly remove your foot from the accelerator pedal after changing modes so that the mode you have selected will be activated for the engine.

Comfort - provides a comfort-oriented vehicle setup and is suited for long drives on highways.

Auto - provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for everyday use.

Dynamic - gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style. The “S” driving program is selected.

Individual ⇨ *page 103*.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Adjusting the “Individual” mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

You can adjust details about the vehicle settings. The settings are stored based on the user and will be available again the next time the vehicle is driven.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Audi drive select**.
- ▸ Press **Individual**.

The equipment in your vehicle will determine which settings you can adjust.

Drive

The engine and automatic transmission will respond to accelerator pedal movements more quickly or in a more balanced manner. The shift points are placed in higher or lower speed ranges.

Depending on the setting, the drive power at the rear axle will be distributed with the sport differential* to be more sporty or moderate ⇨ *page 106*.

Steering

The power steering ⇨ *page 105* adapts. Indirect steering that moves easily is especially suited to long drives on highways.

Suspension*

The suspension ⇨ *page 104* adjusts to be tighter or more comfort-oriented when it comes to damping of uneven spots on the road.

The vehicle ground clearance is adjusted by the air suspension* based on the setting.

Engine sound*

The engine sound adapts and can be subtle to sporty.

4K8012721BA

Suspension

Adaptive dampers

Applies to: vehicles with suspension control

The adaptive dampers are an electronically-controlled damping system. The firmness of the suspension will adapt to the driving conditions and the driving situation. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Air suspension

Applies to: vehicles with air suspension

The air suspension is an electronically-controlled suspension and leveling system. The firmness of the suspension will adapt to the driving conditions and the driving situation. The system balances out changes in load. The vehicle level will also adapt gradually to the vehicle speed in order to reduce the wind resistance at high speeds and increase the ground clearance at low speeds. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Displaying the vehicle level

- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Audi drive select**.

The filled-in boxes represent the current vehicle level. The more boxes that are filled in, the higher the ground clearance. The box that corresponds with the current vehicle level will flash while the vehicle is lifting or lowering. The target level is indicated by a red outline.

Raising the vehicle

- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Audi drive select**.
- ▸ Press **Raise** to reach the highest vehicle level and thus the maximum ground clearance.
- ▸ Press **Lower** to lower the vehicle down again.

The vehicle will lower when at speeds of approximately 22 mph (35 km/h) and lower. This function may only be used temporarily when increased ground clearance is necessary. It is not intended for long drives.

Ground clearance

The vehicle height and clearance can be influenced by the following factors:

– Change in temperature
– Change in load
– Change to the Audi drive select* mode

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury, make sure no one gets pinched when the vehicle level is changing, for example when cleaning the underbody or the wheel housings.

Note

Always make sure there is enough clearance above and below the vehicle. This is especially important for entrances with height restrictions, for example, before driving into underground garages. You could also scrape the ground when driving over the edges of curbs or on steep ramps, which could damage your vehicle.

Messages

Air suspension: service mode. Vehicle can be moved but handling may be impaired

Service mode is activated. Carefully drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the service mode deactivated.

Air suspension: malfunction! You may continue driving slowly at max. XX mph (km/h)

There is a malfunction. Driving stability may be limited. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately. Do not drive faster than the speed given in the message.

Air suspension: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. Steering and ground clearance limited

There is a malfunction. Do **not** continue driving. Stop the vehicle safely. Avoid turning the steering wheel, because the vehicle ground clearance may be so low that turning the steering wheel could result in damage to the wheels and wheel housings. ▶

Suspension: malfunction! You may continue driving

There is a malfunction. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Air suspension: vehicle too low. Limited ground clearance

The vehicle ground clearance is very low. Wait until the air suspension system has restored normal ground clearance. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility repair the malfunction immediately if the indicator light does not turn off after a significant period of time.

Air suspension: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction. The driving stability may be limited and the ground clearance may be low. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Audi drive select: automatic suspension lowering. See owner's manual

The vehicle level is adjusted to the setting stored for the active personal profile ⇨ *page 28*.

Audi drive select: automatic suspension lift. See owner's manual

The vehicle level is adjusted to the setting stored for the active personal profile ⇨ *page 28*.

Steering

Description

Electromechanical steering supports the driver's steering movements by electronically adapting the power steering depending on the vehicle speed. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Progressive steering

Applies to: vehicles with progressive steering

The driving dynamic and driving stability are increased by the steering ratio based on the steering wheel angle. The steering is very direct when the steering wheel angle is sharp, and indirect when the angle is low. This enables comfortable maneuvering and a precise steering response at higher driving speeds.

Dynamic all-wheel steering

Applies to: vehicles with dynamic all-wheel steering

Active corrective steering at the front and rear axles increases the driving dynamic and driving stability. At low speeds, the rear wheels are steered in the opposite direction from the front wheels to reduce the steering effort needed by the driver and to reduce the turning radius. Vehicle handling improves. At high speeds, steering the rear wheels in the same direction as the front wheels improves the vehicle response and driving stability. The vehicle reacts quickly and precisely to the driver's steering movements.

Messages

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

The power steering may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to compensate for the fact that it may be more difficult to turn the steering wheel, and stop your vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle. Pay attention to distance at side

The rear axle steering may have failed. More space on the road may be needed at the side of the vehicle. Slow down immediately, and stop your vehicle as soon as possible in a safe location with enough space at the sides of the vehicle. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. You cannot turn the ignition on. Do not tow your vehicle because it cannot be steered. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: malfunction! You can continue driving

There is a malfunction. Steering may be more difficult or more sensitive. Adapt your driving style. Have the steering system checked immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Please note that the red indicator light may turn on after restarting the engine. Do not continue driving if it does.

Steering: malfunction! Adapt driving style. Larger turning radius

The rear axle steering may have failed. The vehicle will have a larger turning radius, and the stability when driving around curves will be comparable to a vehicle without rear axle steering. Drive carefully to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Steering lock: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Dynamic steering: correcting steering wheel position

The steering is reinitializing. The steering wheel will move easily after starting the vehicle. Reinitialization might be necessary if the steering wheel was moved while the engine was switched off. The display turns off if the initialization was successful.

WARNING

Do not tow your vehicle if there is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock because this increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

- If there is a malfunction, the steering wheel may be crooked when driving straight.
- If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.

All wheel drive (quattro)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive

The all-wheel drive system distributes the driving power variably to the front and rear axle to improve the driving characteristics. It works together with selective wheel torque control, which can activate when driving through curves ⇨ *page 108*.

Applies to: vehicles with quattro ultra: If the driving situation does not require all wheel drive, then the rear section of the drivetrain will decouple to save fuel. The system constantly determines and anticipates if all wheel drive is needed. This allows the rear drivetrain to recouple shortly before it is needed.

The all-wheel drive system is designed for high engine power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Even in vehicles with all wheel drive, you should adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.
- The braking ability of your vehicle is limited to the traction of the wheels. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not drive too fast because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Note that on wet streets, the front wheels can “hydroplane” if driving at speeds that are too high. Unlike front wheel drive vehicles, the engine RPM does not increase suddenly when the vehicle begins hydroplaning. Adapt your speed to the road conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.

Sport differential

Applies to: vehicles with sport differential

The sport differential distributes the drive power to the rear axle based on the situation. The goal ▶

is a high level of agility and ability to accelerate on curves. The vehicle is very responsive to steering. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Torque distribution display[1)]

You can display the drive torque distribution.

- Applies to MMI: select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Vehicle information**.
- You may need to scroll down to the **quattro** display.

The torque being currently applied at each wheel is displayed with an arrow. The more the arrow is filled in, the more torque there is. Please note that this display is not a true-to-scale measurement and it depends on the highest level of torque that is currently being applied.

Messages

All-wheel drive: malfunction! You may continue driving. Please contact Service

Sport differential: malfunction! Please contact Service

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

All-wheel drive overheating. Please adapt driving style. See owner's manual

Sport differential: temperature too high. Please adapt driving style

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

WARNING

Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if the sport differential is faulty or malfunctioning. The repair must be performed by trained personnel using the correct oil in order to ensure safety.

1) In certain countries.

Electronic Stabilization Control

Description

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) supports driver safety. It reduces the risk of slipping and improves driving stability. ESC detects critical situations, such as if the vehicle is oversteering or understeering, or if the wheels are spinning. The brakes are applied or the engine torque is reduced in order to stabilize the vehicle.

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESC is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is fully functional.

If the indicator light turns on, ESC was limited or switched off manually ⇨ *page 108*.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal. A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is acting to stabilize the vehicle.

Brake assist

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the dangerous situation is over. Depending on the activated driver assistance systems, the brake assist system may react with increased sensitivity.

Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces engine power when the drive wheels begin spinning and adapts the force to the road ▶

conditions. This makes it easier to start, accelerate and drive up hills.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

The EDL applies the brakes to wheels that are slipping and transfers the drive power to the other wheels. This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still functioning correctly. EDL will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

Power steering

The ESC can also support vehicle stability through steering.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves. Braking is targeted toward the wheels on the inside of the curve as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves.

Automatic post-collision braking system

The “automatic post-collision braking system” can help to reduce the risk of sliding and of additional collisions after an accident. If the airbag control module detects a collision, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle does not brake automatically if one of the following occurs:

– The driver presses the accelerator pedal, or
– The braking force generated by the pressed brake pedal is greater than the braking force that would be initiated by the system
– The ESC, the brake system, or the vehicle electrical system is not functioning

WARNING

– The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limits imposed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. The ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions - there is still a risk of accidents!
– Press the accelerator pedal carefully when accelerating on smooth, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.

Tips

– The ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels have a similar wear condition. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in engine power.
– You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

Operating

The OFF button is located above the selector lever in the center console.

The ESC is switched on automatically when starting the engine. It may make sense in some situations to limit the ESC so that the wheels can spin:

– Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
– Driving in deep snow, on unpaved ground, or with snow chains

Limiting ESC (sport mode)

– To limit the ESD, press the OFF button briefly. The OFF indicator light turns on.
– To completely reactivate the ESC stabilization function, press the button again. The indicator light turns off.

Switching off ESC

– To switch off the ESC, press and hold the OFF button for more than three seconds. The OFF and ESC OFF indicator lights turn on. ▶

– To completely reactivate the ESC stabilization function, press the button again. The indicator lights turn off.

WARNING

– When the ESC is switched off or limited, there will be no vehicle stabilization or it will be limited. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Because of the increased risk of an accident, only drive with the ESC switched off or limited when it is necessary. Reactivate the ESC as soon as possible.

Tips

If malfunctions occur in other systems or certain driver assist systems are active, the ESC must be switched on by the system. In these cases, the ESC is automatically switched on and cannot be limited or switched off with the button.

Messages

ABS / Stabilization control (ESC/ ABS): malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the ABS or EDL. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Rear spoiler

Description

The button is located in the function bar on the lower display.

The rear spoiler increases driving stability. The rear spoiler extends automatically at speeds above approximately 75 mph (120 km/h). It will retract automatically when the speed drops below approximately 50 mph (80 km/h).

You can also extend and retract the rear spoiler manually.

- Extending: press briefly.
- Retracting: press and hold when driving at speeds up to approximately 10 mph (20 km/h). At speeds from approximately 10 mph (20 km/h) to 75 mph (120 km/h), press briefly.

WARNING

– Make sure that the rear spoiler is extended at speeds above 85 mph (140 km/h). Otherwise, the reduced driving stability will increase the risk of an accident.
– To reduce the risk of injury, make sure there are no people or objects within range of the rear spoiler when extending and retracting it.

Note

– To reduce the risk of damage, do not press on the rear spoiler if pushing the vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of damage, never lean against the rear spoiler or place heavy pressure on it.
– To reduce the risk of damage when extending or retracting the rear spoiler, make sure the luggage compartment lid is closed and there is nothing in the way of the rear spoiler.

Messages

If the or turns on and a corresponding message appears, the rear spoiler may not be able to extend due to a malfunction. This could change the vehicle's driving characteristics at high speeds. Do not drive faster than 85 mph (140 km/h).

The rear spoiler may be blocked. Clean the rear spoiler compartment ⇨ *page 261*, close all vehicle doors and lids, and wait several minutes until the vehicle has completely turned off. If the indicator light turns on again the next time the engine starts, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired. The color of the indicator light depends on the vehicle speed.

4K8012721BA

Trailer towing

Driving with a trailer

General information

Your vehicle is primarily intended for transporting people and luggage. However, if you drive with a trailer, follow the technical requirements, the operation and driving tips, and the legal regulations.

Driving with a trailer affects the vehicle's fuel consumption, performance and wear. It also requires higher concentration from the driver.

WARNING

Do not transport any people in a trailer due to the risk of fatal injury.

Technical requirements

Certain requirements must be met when towing a trailer.

Trailer hitch

Only use a trailer hitch with a removable ball hitch mount and ball hitch. The trailer hitch must be permitted for the vehicle, the trailer and the permitted total weight of the trailer being pulled. Above all, it must be securely and safely attached to the vehicle trailer.

Never mount a trailer hitch on the bumper. The trailer hitch must be mounted in a way that does not impair the function of the bumper. Do not make any changes to the exhaust system and the brake system.

Check regularly if the trailer hitch is securely mounted. Always follow the instructions given by the trailer hitch manufacturer.

Trailer brakes

If the trailer has its own brake system, then follow the manufacturer specifications. However, the brake system on the trailer must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

Engine cooling system

Driving with a trailer means a higher load on the engine and the cooling system. The cooling system must be designed for additional load and contain enough coolant ⇨ (!).

Note

Longer inclines cannot be driven without a suitable cooling system, especially if the outside temperatures are high. Otherwise, this increases the risk of engine damage.

Operating instructions

Towing capacity

Your vehicle can only be operated with class 1 or class 2 trailers.

Load distribution

Poor cargo load and distribution can negatively impact vehicle handling. Load the trailer based on the following criteria as much as possible:

– Store objects in the vehicle luggage compartment, if possible. The vehicle should always carry the heaviest possible load and the trailer should have the lightest possible load.
– Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heavy objects are as close to the axle as possible.
– Secure objects so that they do not slide.
– Utilize the maximum permitted tongue weight if possible.

Tires

Set the tire pressure on your vehicle for a “full load”; see the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 250*. If necessary, also adjust the tire pressure on the trailer according to the manufacturer's specifications.

The trailer and the vehicle should be equipped with winter tires when driving in winter temperatures.

Outside mirrors

If you cannot see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard exterior mirrors, then you must attach additional exterior mirrors. Adjust ▶

them so you have a sufficient visibility behind you.

Exterior lighting

Follow the legal regulations for lighting on your trailer that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Before you start driving, check all lighting equipment on the trailer while it is hitched to the vehicle.

The headlight range control automatically adjusts the light range of the headlights.

Safety chains

Make sure the safety chains are correctly applied when pulling a trailer. The chains should hang enough so that the trailer can drive around curves. However, they must not touch the ground.

Air suspension

The Audi drive select* **comfort** mode ⇨ *page 103* must be selected before you adjust the tongue weight on the trailer and hitch the trailer ⇨ (!), ⇨ *page 104*.

Likewise, the vehicle cannot be raised manually using the **Raise** function ⇨ *page 104*.

For vehicles with a retrofitted trailer hitch, you must switch on the air suspension trailer mode manually.

Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Air suspension: trailer**.

Switch it off again when you are no longer towing a trailer.

When using carrier systems that are mounted directly on the trailer hitch ball head, you can also switch trailer mode off manually.

If you must drive on roads that are in poor condition, you can raise the vehicle again after hitching the trailer or after adjusting the tongue weight ⇨ *page 104*.

Vehicle levels below the values set in the **Comfort** level will no longer be available, even if you are lowering the vehicle manually.

WARNING

- Never turn off trailer mode while driving when a trailer is hitched, because then the restrictions for controlling the vehicle level will be turned off.
- Driving with a trailer on unpaved roads when the vehicle is raised may change the vehicle handling. Adapt your speed.
- Note that the vehicle will lower automatically at certain speeds if you have lifted the vehicle manually.

Note

- Select the Audi drive select* **Comfort** mode. Otherwise, the tongue load specified for your vehicle will no longer be applicable.
- Attachments retrofitted on the vehicle may cause damage, especially on the trailer hitch ball head. In cases of damage, have the function checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

- Block the wheels with chocks when parking on inclines if the trailer is loaded.
- Having the vehicle inspected between the inspection intervals is recommended if you tow a trailer frequently.
- Avoid driving with a trailer during the vehicle break-in period.

Driving with a trailer

Driving with a trailer requires extra caution.

Speed

Adhere to the legal speed limits. Follow the legal regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle.

As the speed increases, the driving stability of the trailer decreases. Therefore you should not exceed the maximum legal speed limit when there are unfavorable road, weather, and/or wind ▶

conditions. This especially applies when driving downhill.

Hill

When you start driving uphill or downhill, trailers may tilt or sway sooner than when driving on a level surface. If small swaying movements have already occurred, you can stabilize the trailer by firmly braking immediately. Never try to "straighten out" the trailer by accelerating.

Downshift before driving on hills to utilize the engine braking effect ⇨ ⚠.

Brakes

When using a trailer with overrun brakes, first brake gently then quickly. This reduces the risk of jerking while braking if the trailer wheels lock up.

Engine coolant temperature

Pay attention specifically to the coolant temperature display when there are high outside temperatures, and when driving on long inclines ⇨ *page 13*. Shift to a higher gear in a timely manner.

WARNING

Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and can substantially reduce braking performance, increase braking distance, or cause complete failure of the brake system.

Assist systems

General information

Safety precautions

WARNING

– As the driver, you are always completely responsible for all driving tasks. The assist systems cannot replace the driver's attention. Give your full attention to driving the vehicle, and be ready to intervene in the traffic situation at all times.
– Activate the assist systems only if the surrounding conditions permit it. Always adapt your driving style to the current visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
– Unexpected steering or braking interventions may be initiated by the assist systems. Also read the information found in ⇨ *page 80*.
– For the assist systems to be able to react correctly, the function of the sensors and cameras must not be restricted. Note the information on sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 114* or ⇨ *page 115*.

Tips

– Pay attention to applicable local regulations relating to driving tasks, vehicle distance, speed, parking location, wheel placement, etc. The driver is always responsible for following the respective laws specific to the location where the vehicle is being operated.
– You can cancel a steering or braking intervention by the system, by braking or accelerating noticeably, steering, or deactivating the respective assist system.
– Always check the assist systems settings before driving. The settings could have been changed, for example, by other drivers or if another personal profile was used.

System limitations

WARNING

– The use of an assist system cannot overcome the natural laws of physics. A collision cannot be prevented in certain circumstances.
– Warnings, messages, or indicator lights may not be displayed or initiated on time or correctly, for example, if vehicles are approaching very fast.
– Corrective interventions by the assist systems, such as steering or braking interventions, may not be sufficient or they may not occur. Always be ready to intervene.

Tips

– Due to the system limitations when detecting the surrounding area, the systems may warn or intervene unexpectedly or too late in certain situations. The assist systems may also interpret a driving maneuver incorrectly and then warn the driver unexpectedly.
– The systems may not function as expected in unusual driving situations, such as driving offroad, on unpaved roads, on loose ground, on inclines, or on grooves in the road.
– The systems may not function correctly in unclear traffic situations, such as turning lanes, exit ramps, construction zones, intersections, toll stations, or city traffic.
– If accessories have been mounted on the steering wheel, the ability for the steering systems to react may be limited.

4K8012721BA

Surrounding area detection

Sensor overview

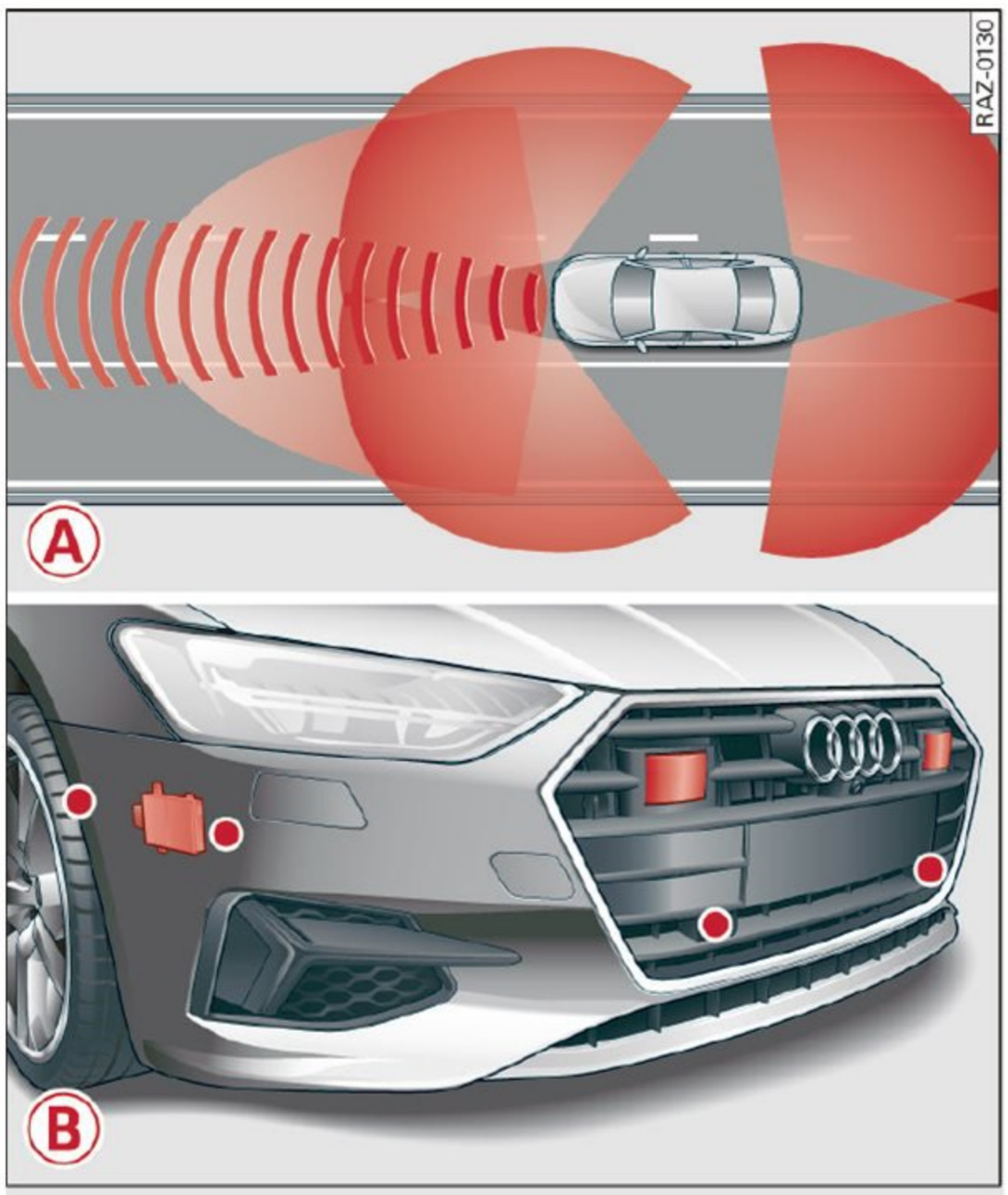


Fig. 87 Diagram: coverage area Ⓐ and positions of the front sensors on the side Ⓑ

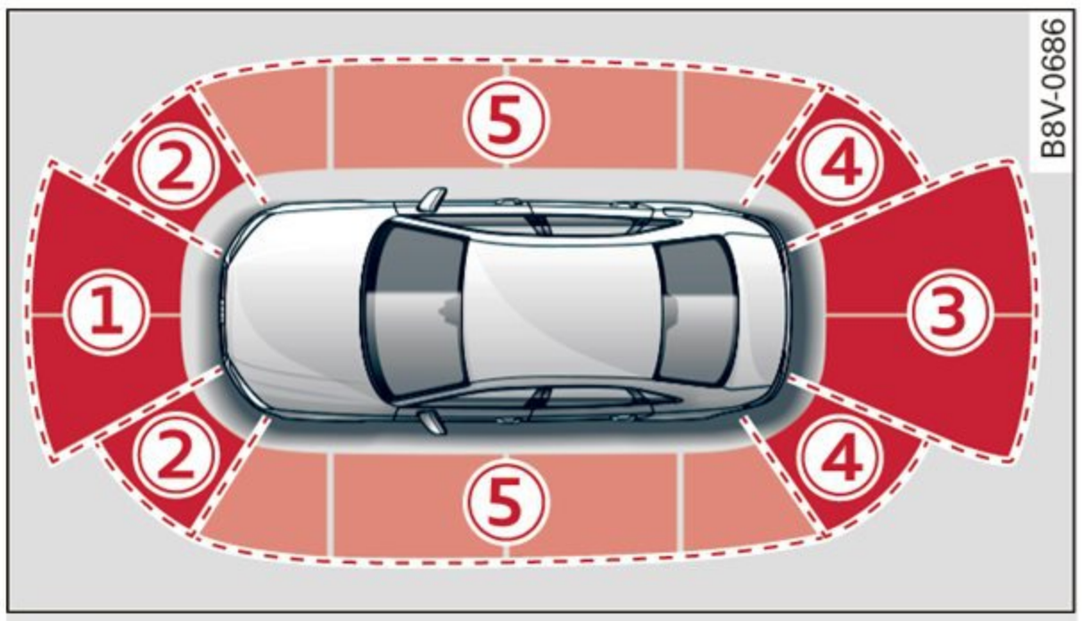


Fig. 88 Diagram: coverage area of the ultrasonic sensors

The assist systems analyze the data from various sensors installed in the vehicle. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area surrounding the entire vehicle may be detected Ⓐ.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sensors to detect the surrounding area may be installed Ⓑ:

– Laser scanner in the front in the radiator grille ⇨ ⚠
– Radar sensor in the front in the radiator grille
– Up to four radar sensors at the corners of the vehicle
– Ultrasonic sensors at the front, rear, and sides of the vehicle

Display field for the ultrasonic sensors

Depending on the equipment, the display field for the installed ultrasonic sensors ⇨ *fig. 88* may begin at approximately:

①	4 ft (1.20 m)
②	3 ft (0.90 m)
③	5.2 ft (1.60 m)
④	3 ft (0.90 m)
⑤	3 ft (0.90 m)

⚠ WARNING

– There are areas around the vehicle that the sensors cannot detect. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.
– The surface of the laser scanner can become hot during operation, which increases the risk of burns.
– The laser scanner contains a class 1 laser in accordance with IEC 60825-1:2014. When used according to regulations, the laser is not dangerous. Opening the laser module and removing covers is not permitted. Doing so could cause permanent injuries to the eyes.
– Any repair work on the laser module must be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility; otherwise the vehicle's operating license may be voided. Incorrect repairs may cause limited functionality and eye damage.

Note

– Obstacles may disappear from the detection area when approaching them, even if they were already detected. Under certain circumstances, the detection and display of certain surfaces and objects may be limited: ▶

– Items and objects above the coverage area, for example cars parked bumper-to-bumper, half-open garage doors, or hanging objects that do not touch the ground
– Low obstacles
– Thin or narrow objects, such as barrier chains, foliage, poles or fences
– Projecting objects, such as trailer draw bars
– Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabric

Tips

– The coverage areas of the sensors ⇨ *fig. 87* and ⇨ *fig. 88* are diagrams and do not represent a true-to-scale image of the sensor ranges. The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width.
– Make sure all the sensors are clean, free of snow and ice, and are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions, because this may impair the function of the systems. Follow the information about cleaning ⇨ *page 260*.
– The sensors can shift from an accident, manual force, impacts, or from damage to the radiator grill, bumper, wheel housing, or underbody. Do not continue using the assistance systems if the sensors have shifted, because this is unsafe. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.
– The function of the sensors may be limited when light and visibility conditions are poor, for example when driving into a tunnel, when there is glare, or when there are reflective objects.
– External ultrasonic sensors, such as those in other vehicles, can interfere with the sensors.
– The side area (5)* is detected and evaluated when passing. There may have been changes to the surrounding area after switching the ignition off and on again, after opening the doors, or if the vehicle is left stationary for a period of time. In this case, the area will appear black until the area has been detected and evaluated.
– The possible emissions are below the threshold for class 1 lasers.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 289*.

Camera overview

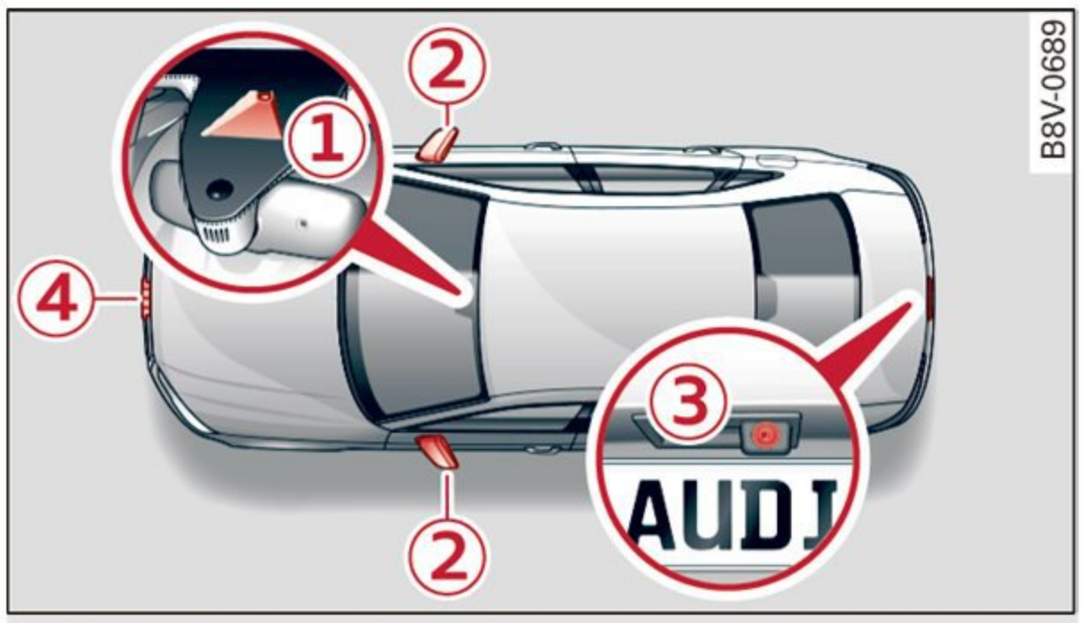


Fig. 89 Camera installation location

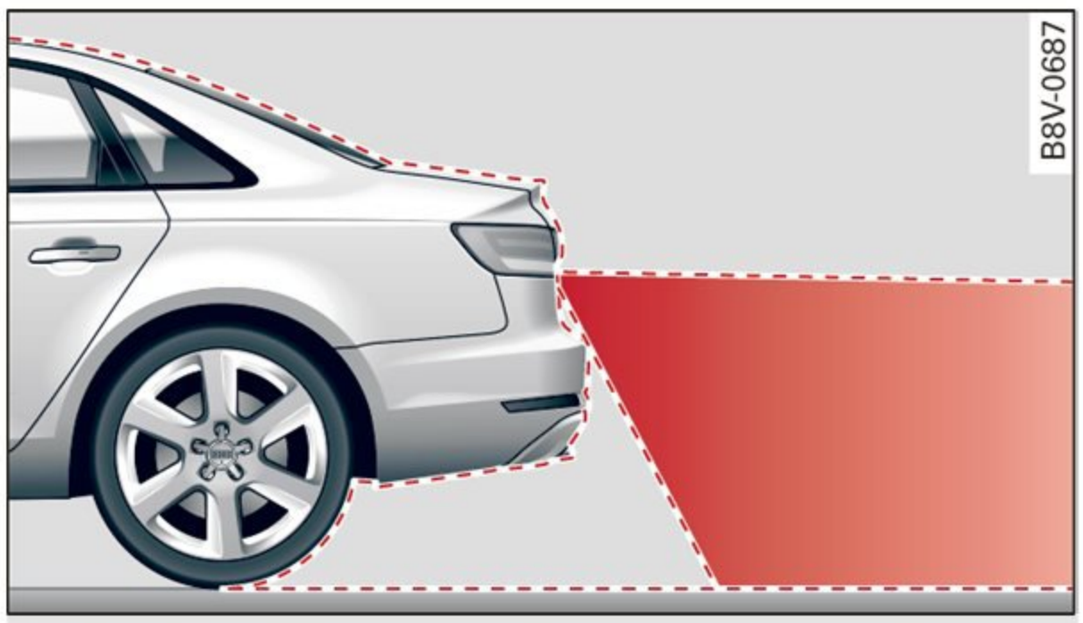


Fig. 90 Diagram: coverage area of the rearview camera

The assist systems analyze the data from various cameras installed in the vehicle. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following cameras to detect the surrounding area may be installed:

(1) Camera behind the windshield
(2) Peripheral cameras on both exterior mirrors
(3) Rearview camera in the luggage compartment lid
(4) Peripheral camera and night vision camera in the radiator grille

The rearview camera can only detect the area marked in red ⇨ *fig. 90*. Only this area is displayed on the upper display. ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

There are areas that the cameras cannot detect. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

Note

– Obstacles may disappear from the detection area when approaching them, even if they were already detected. Under certain circumstances, the detection and display of certain surfaces and objects may be limited:
  – Items and objects above the coverage area, for example cars parked bumper-to-bumper, half-open garage doors, or hanging objects that do not touch the ground
  – Low obstacles
  – Thin or narrow objects, such as barrier chains, foliage, poles or fences
  – Projecting objects, such as trailer draw bars
  – Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabric

Tips

– The coverage areas of the cameras ⇨ *fig. 89* and ⇨ *fig. 90* are diagrams and do not represent a true-to-scale image of the camera coverage areas.
– Make sure all the cameras are clean, free of snow and ice, and are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions, because this may impair the function of the systems. Follow the information about cleaning ⇨ *page 260*.
– The camera can shift from an accident, manual force, impacts, or from damage to the radiator grill, bumper, wheel housing or underbody. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.
– The function of the cameras may be limited when light and visibility conditions are poor, for example when driving into a tunnel, when there is glare, or when there are reflective objects.
– Use the image on the display to assist you only if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, by dirt on the lens, or if there is a malfunction.
– The camera view on the display portrays an enlarged and distorted image. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different and unclear on the display.

Switching the systems on and off

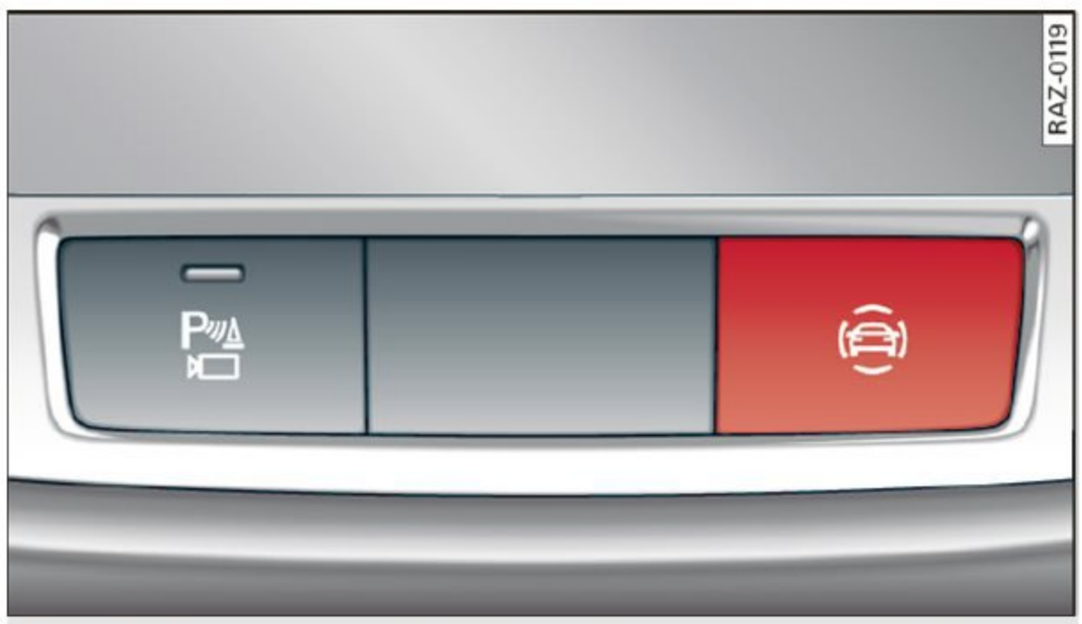


Fig. 91 Center console: driver assistance systems button

Description

You can switch some assist systems on and off in the MMI. Depending on the equipment, it may be in the **standard display** or the **profile selection**.

▸ Press the button, or
▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance**.

Standard display

Applies to: vehicles with standard display

▸ To switch a system on or off, press for the desired system.
▸ To show the brief description of a system, press ⓘ for the desired system.

Profile selection

Applies to: vehicles with profile selection

▸ To select a profile, press the profile name on the upper display or press the button repeatedly until the profile is active.
▸ To list systems included in a profile, select on the upper display. ▶

- ▸ To show the brief description of a system, select ⓘ for the desired system.
- ▸ To switch individual systems on and off in the **Individual** profile, select and for the desired systems.

The following profiles can be selected:

– **Maximum** – all available systems are switched on in this profile.
– **Individual** – you can switch the systems on and off individually in this profile.
– **Basic** or **All off** – only the basic systems are switched on in this profile. If no basic system is available, the profile is **All off**.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Driving information

Speed warning system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

The speed warning system helps the driver to stay below a specified maximum speed. A warning threshold can be set in the MMI for this purpose.

Once the speed slightly exceeds the stored threshold, the speed warning system will alert the driver with an indicator in the instrument cluster and a warning tone. Once the speed drops below the stored maximum speed, the indicator will turn off.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

Tips

Regardless of the speed warning system, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are following the legal speed limit.

Setting the warning threshold

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Speed warning**.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Display

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

A display appears in the instrument cluster if the stored speed is exceeded

(MPH) (USA models)/ (Km/h) (Canada models) Manually set xx mph speed limit warning threshold exceeded

Camera-based traffic sign recognition

Description

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

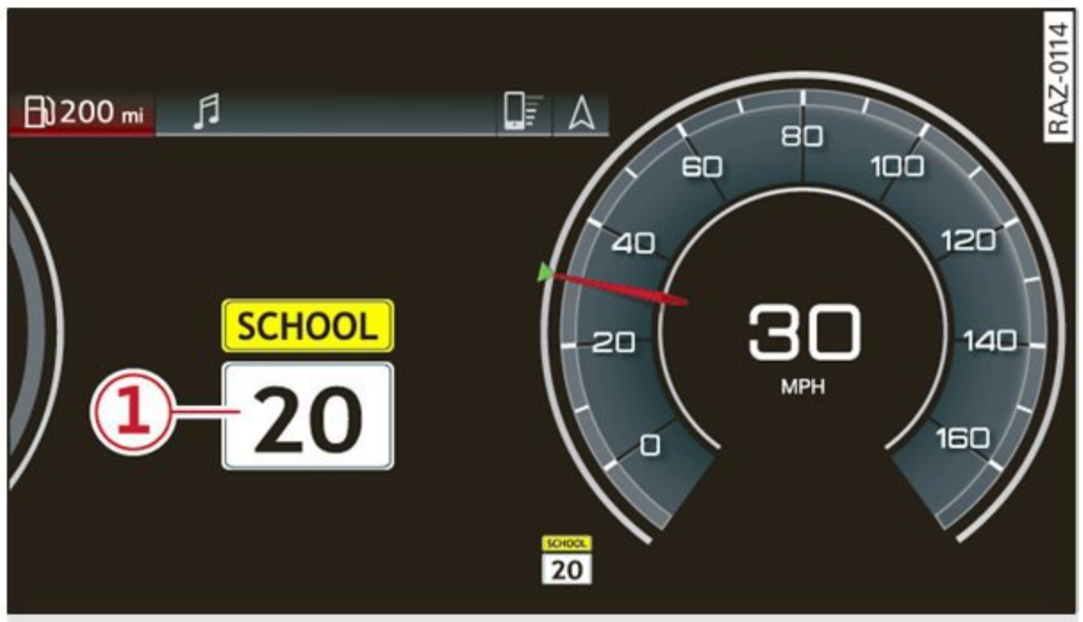


Fig. 92 Instrument cluster: traffic sign recognition (diagram)

The traffic sign recognition shows the traffic signs detected by the front camera in the instrument cluster display and in the head-up display*. Data from the navigation system is also included in the display. Up to three traffic signs can be displayed in the instrument cluster at once. The speed limit that is currently applicable is displayed in the status line. If necessary, it will be hidden if the system detects at a red light that driving on the right side of the road is forbidden. The display in the head-up display* can be switched off ⇨ *page 24*.

Within the limits of the system and depending on the market, additional symbols (1) that indicate speed limits in school zones, highways, construction zones, or at night may be displayed.

If the warning threshold ⇨ *page 119* set in the MMI is exceeded when the speed warning is activated, a visual warning will appear in the display until the speed drops below the threshold.

Limitations

The traffic sign recognition is subject to certain system limitations and may be unavailable or only partially available in the following situations: ▶

– When visibility is poor, such as in snow, rain, fog, or heavy spray
– When there is glare, for example from oncoming traffic or the sun
– At high speeds
– If the camera's visual field ⇨ *page 114* is covered, for example by dirt or stickers. Cleaning information ⇨ *page 260*
– If the traffic signs are completely or partially covered, for example by trees, snow, dirt, or other vehicles
– If traffic signs do not conform to the standard format
– If traffic signs are damaged or bent
– If traffic signs are displayed on sign holders with electronic signs
– If the traffic signs or the roadways have changed, and the navigation data is no longer up-to-date

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and respect the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
– Under some circumstances, traffic sign recognition may not detect traffic signs correctly or detect them at all. As a result, the system may not display the correct speed limit or any speed limit.

Tips

– Traffic sign recognition does not adapt your vehicle's speed to match the speed limit.
– The display in the instrument cluster is based on the units of measurement used for speed in the country where the vehicle is being operated. As a result, the display **50** in the instrument cluster can mean either km/h or mph, depending on the country.
– If traffic sign recognition is not available, the efficiency assist functions will also be unavailable ⇨ *page 125*.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

Accessing traffic sign recognition

▸ Open the vehicle functions tab with the ◁ ▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
▸ Select the **Traffic signs** display.

Setting a traffic sign based speed warning

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Speed warning**.

You can select a warning threshold. If exceeded, the currently detected speed limit will be displayed with an exclamation point and it will flash briefly.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

Traffic sign recognition: currently unavailable. Camera view limited due to surroundings

The camera’s visual field is covered. Clean the windshield.

Traffic sign recognition: currently limited. See owner's manual

This message appears if navigation system data is not available, for example on newly-constructed roads. The speed limit display will be temporarily limited, which increases the risk of an incorrect display. If this message continues to appear, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Traffic sign-based speed warning: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

There will be no warning when the set threshold is exceeded. If this malfunction persists, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired. ▶

No traffic sign information available

Depending on the area, there is no valid navigation data and no speed limits were detected. This may also appear if there is a recommended speed, but no speed limit (for example when driving on and off the expressway).

Malfunction! See owner's manual

The system may not function correctly so it has been switched off. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Traffic light information

Description

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

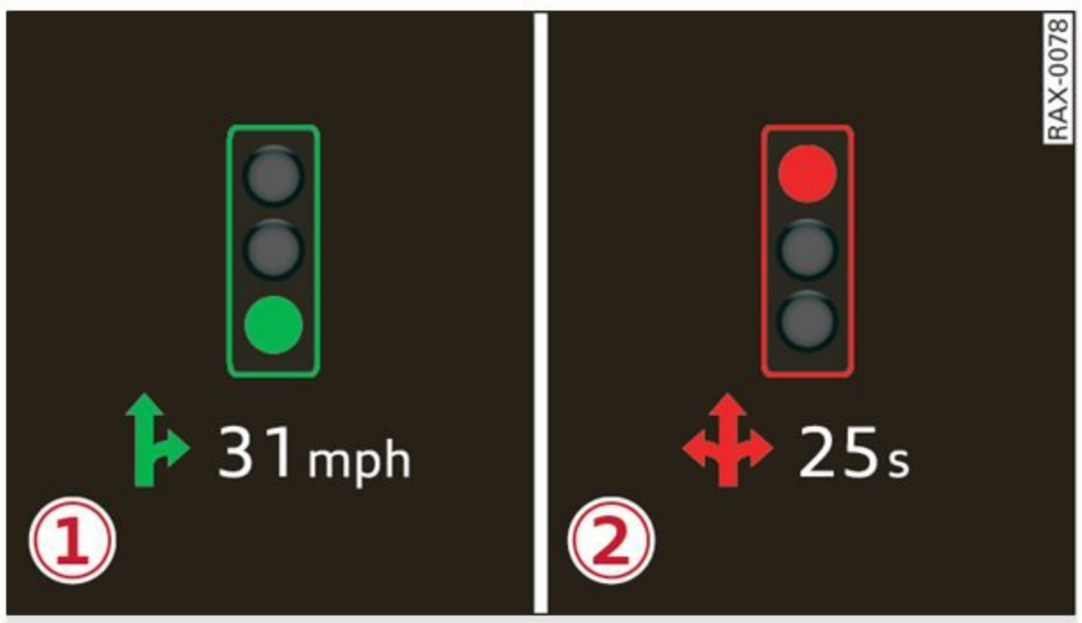


Fig. 93 Instrument cluster: traffic light information display (diagram)

The traffic light information gives you a speed recommendation in order to reach the next traffic light when it is green ①, or it informs you of the wait time at the next red light ②. Once traffic light data is received, the traffic light information will be displayed in the instrument cluster and in the head-up display*.

General information

The traffic light information is subject to certain system limitations and may be unavailable or only partially available in the following situations. The menu item may appear gray or it may not be possible to select it:

- When the permitted speed limit is exceeded
- If the next traffic light is less than 100 ft (30 m) away
- If the estimated wait time at a red light is less than four seconds
- If there is no traffic light data available
- If there are warnings from the camera-based traffic sign recognition*
- If the camera-based traffic sign recognition* is malfunctioning or not available
- If the data connection was interrupted
- If data transmission is deactivated in the privacy settings
- If the subscription has expired

WARNING

- When traffic light information is shown, also always pay attention to the traffic situation, the distance to other vehicles and the area around the vehicle. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.
- Always adapt your speed to the current weather, road and traffic conditions. The displayed information must never cause you to ignore legal traffic regulations and pose a safety risk.
- Regardless of the traffic light information, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are adhering to the legal speed limit.
- The traffic light information does not adjust your vehicle's speed to the speed recommendation shown in the display.

Tips

- Traffic light information is not yet available in all cities and is not nationwide.
- Units of measurement and language settings are displayed based on how they were set in the MMI system settings ⇨ *page 218*.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

Switching traffic light information on and off

Requirement: data transmission must be enabled in the privacy settings ⇨ *page 284*.

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 116*. ▶

Accessing traffic light information

► Select in the instrument cluster: vehicle functions tab > **Traffic signs**.

Tips

If another tab or another function is selected in the instrument cluster, the traffic light information will appear in the Audi virtual cockpit* status bar or in the analog instrument cluster.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information without camera-based traffic sign recognition

Malfunction! See owner's manual

The system could not be configured, for example due to a network malfunction. Restart the system.

Function currently unavailable. See owner's manual

There is a temporary system malfunction. Check if one or more of the following situations applies and correct the issue if necessary:

– Traffic light information is switched off
– Data transmission is deactivated
– The subscription has expired
– Traffic light information is not available in that area

Night vision assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Night vision assist helps you when it is dark by using an infrared camera to monitor the area in front of your vehicle, within the limits of the system. It can display objects up to a distance of approximately 1000 feet (300 m).

Pedestrian and wild animals are detected by measuring the temperature difference between the object and the background. Pedestrians and wild animals will not be detected if the temperature difference is too small. The pedestrian and wild animal marking feature is deactivated at temperatures above approximately 77 °F (25 °C) and when it is light outside.

The thermal image detected by the camera is displayed in the instrument cluster. Warm areas generally appear lighter and cold areas appear darker.

The camera for the night vision assist ④ ⇨ *page 115, fig. 89* is located in the vehicle's radiator grille. Make sure the night vision camera is not covered by stickers, deposits, or any other obstructions because this can impair the night vision assist function. Follow the information about cleaning ⇨ *page 260*.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
– Night vision assist can only detect pedestrians and wild animals located within the range of the infrared camera.
– Night vision assist cannot detect pedestrians or wild animals and mark them if:
  – They are not in an upright position, for example if they are sitting or lying down and/or
  – The silhouette in the display appears incomplete or interrupted, for example because the pedestrian is partially behind a vehicle or an animal is partially covered by tall grass.
– Never attempt to swerve around animals if doing so would endanger you or other road users.

Tips

– Even though the system evaluates the shape and heat given off by all detected objects, there are limits to the system. There may be false warnings.
– For technical reasons, the image pauses in split second intervals.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 116*.

- ▸ The AUTO light function must be selected for the night vision assist to automatically activate when it is dark.
- ▸ Switch on the low beams manually to activate night vision assist immediately. To do so, press (1) on the light switch module ⇨ *page 47, fig. 38* and select ≡D.

When activated, the tab appears in the instrument cluster.

▸ Select in the instrument cluster: tab

Tips

When the night vision assist tab is selected in the instrument cluster and the low beams are switched off, the thermal image display disappears only after you have exited the tab.

Marking and warning

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist



Fig. 94 Instrument cluster: pedestrian marking and warning (diagram)

Highlighting detected pedestrians and wild animals

Within the limits of the system, the night vision assist can detect pedestrians and wild animals that are between approximately 32 ft (10 m) and 295 ft (90 m) in front of the vehicle and within the detection zone. Animal recognition is not active within highly developed areas. The system only detects large wild animals such as deer. When it is dark outside and the low beams are switched on, detected objects are marked in yellow (1), within the limits of the system.

Pedestrian and wild animal warning

This system limits are based on the vehicle speed and steering angle. Pedestrian and wild animal warning encourages you to pay more attention.

If there are pedestrians or wild animals in front of your vehicle that could pose a danger, the system will direct your attention to this.

- – Pedestrians or wild animals are highlighted in red in the instrument cluster (2) and the or symbol turns on (2).
- – When the head-up display* is switched on, the additional indicator or appears.
- – A chime will sound if something is detected.
- – If the night vision assist thermal image is replaced by another display (such as the on-board computer), the red or indicator light will appear if there is a pedestrian or wild animal warning.

The symbol will appear when pedestrian and wild animal detection is not available.

Marking light*

To direct the driver's attention to a pedestrian, the headlights can flash on the pedestrian when there is a pedestrian warning.

This occurs at speeds above approximately 35 mph (60 km/h) if you are outside of illuminated areas and no detected vehicles are shown. The marking light is not used for wild animals. The high beam assistant* controls the marking light* ⇨ *page 48*.

Adjusting the contrast

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Requirement: the night vision assist must be switched on and the tab must be displayed.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Night vision assist**.
- ▸ To set the desired contrast, move the slider. ▶

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Night vision assist: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

The system is not functioning correctly so it has been switched off. If this malfunction persists, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Driver assistance

Cruise control system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

The cruise control system assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed above approximately 15 mph (20 km/h). The system maintains the desired speed by braking and accelerating.

WARNING

- Always pay attention to the traffic around your vehicle when the cruise control system is in operation. As the driver, you are always responsible for controlling your vehicle speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.
- For safety reasons, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on winding roads and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning), because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits, or in construction zones.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, you should only resume the stored speed if it is suitable for the current traffic conditions.

Note

Before driving downhill a long distance on a steep hill, decrease your speed and select a lower gear. This makes use of the engine braking effect and reduces the load placed on the brakes.

Tips

The brake lights turn on when the brakes are applied automatically.

Switching the system on

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system



Fig. 95 Lever: switching on the cruise control system

Requirement: the ignition must be switched the ignition on.

- ▸ To switch the system on, pull the lever toward you to position (1).

The indicator light and the corresponding message will appear in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

If a brake system malfunction such as overheating occurs when the cruise control system is switched on, the system may be switched off automatically.

Preselecting or activating a cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

When the vehicle is stationary, you can preselect the cruise control speed or activate the speed while driving.

Requirement: the system must be switched on.

- ▸ To preselect a cruise control speed when the vehicle is stationary, tap the lever toward (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 124, fig. 95*.
- ▸ To activate the cruise control speed, pull the lever toward position (1) while driving, or
- ▸ To set the current driving speed as the cruise control speed, press the button (A) on the lever.

The activated cruise control speed will appear in the instrument cluster with the CRUISE (USA models) or (Canada models) indicator light. ▶

An additional indicator appears in the head-up display*.

Changing the cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- ▸ To increase or decrease the cruise control speed in small increments, tap the lever up to the first level toward ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 124, fig. 95*.
- ▸ To increase or decrease the cruise control speed in larger increments, tap the lever up to the second level toward ⊕/⊖.
- ▸ To increase or decrease the cruise control speed continuously, tap and hold the lever at the first or second level toward ⊕/⊖.

Overriding or deactivating the cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can override or deactivate the cruise control system. When you deactivate the system, your cruise control speed will be stored and you can resume that speed.

Requirement: the system must be switched on and activated.

Overriding

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- ▸ To temporarily override the cruise control speed, press the accelerator pedal.
- ▸ Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system will adjust back to the stored cruise control speed.

If you override the cruise control system for a long period of time, the cruise control system will be deactivated. The system indicator light will turn off and the cruise control speed will be stored.

Deactivating

- ▸ To deactivate the cruise control speed, press the lever toward ② (not locked into place) ⇨ *page 124, fig. 95*.
- ▸ Applies to cruise control system: Press the brake pedal.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

Resting your foot on the accelerator pedal could override the cruise control. This will prevent braking interventions by the system.

Switching the system off

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

When you switch the system off completely, the cruise control speed will be deleted.

Requirement: the system must be switched on.

- ▸ To switch the system off, press the lever toward ② (locked into place) ⇨ *page 124, fig. 95*, or
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.

Message

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

CRUISE / Speed control system: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, the cruise control system has been deactivated. There is a temporary malfunction, for example the brakes are overheating. Switch the cruise control system on again later.

Efficiency assist

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

Efficiency assist [1)] assists the driver with predictive information in order to reduce fuel consumption. The system accesses predictive trip data (including speed limits, hills, and the angle of curves) from the navigation system. Information from the camera-based traffic sign recognition* is applied to recognize traffic signs ⇨ *page 118*.

The functions depend on the navigation data* being up-to-date and correct identification by the traffic sign recognition*.

When adaptive cruise assist* is not switched on, the efficiency assist simply **provides information**. ▶

1) This is not available in some countries.

See ⇨ *page 126, Predictive messages (efficiency assist)*.

When adaptive cruise assist* is switched on, the system reacts automatically to situations. See ⇨ *page 127, Predictive control (efficiency assist)*.

Predictive messages (efficiency assist)

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

Predictive messages appear in the instrument cluster display to show the driver the appropriate time to coast when a situation ahead requires you to drive at a lower speed.

Requirements for the display of predictive messages:

– Predictive messages must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 128*.
– The cruise control system* or the adaptive cruise assist* controls must not be active.

Indicator lights

 - if the indicator light turns on, the efficiency assist recommends not pressing the accelerator pedal. There is a situation ahead that requires reduced speed.

Image in the Driver assistance display

The display only appears when the **Driver assistance** display is open in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15*.

The following symbols and messages indicate the situation that is causing the system to react:

Symbol	Meaning
	**Speed limit** (example)
	**Exit**
	**Intersection**
	**Traffic circle**

If there are multiple situations, then a sequence of these situations will appear in the display.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
– Pay attention to traffic and the area around your vehicle when efficiency assist is switched on. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.

Tips

– The traffic signs on the road always take priority over the display. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– The wording of the message may vary depending on the selected Audi drive select* mode ⇨ *page 103* and the selected gear. No messages are displayed when in the "S" gear.
– When a route is planned using the navigation system*, then system displays messages based on an assumed route. Without route guidance, the system displays messages based on an assumed route.
– There will not be a message for every situation ahead, for example if there is not enough distance remaining to react to the situation.
– No messages are displayed when at speeds under 20 mph (30 km/h).
– The display in the instrument cluster is based on the units of measurement used for speed in the country where the vehicle is being operated. As a result, a display of 50 in the instrument cluster can mean either km/h or mph, depending on the country.

Predictive control (efficiency assist)

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and efficiency assist

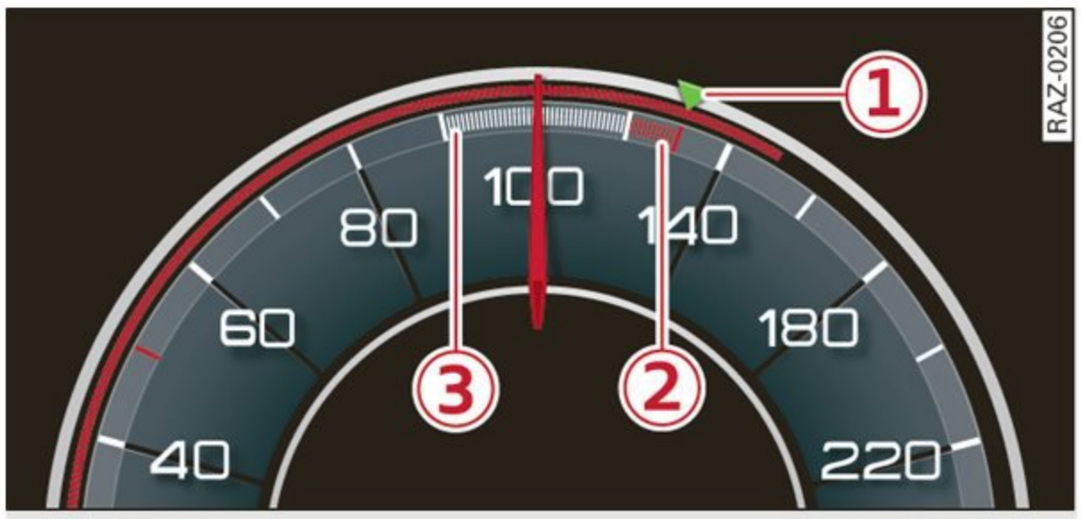


Fig. 96 -Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit-Instrument cluster: predictive control display in the speedometer

General information

The predictive control[1)] is a combination of the efficiency assist and the adaptive cruise assist. When coming up to areas with speed limits or changes in the course of the road (such as curves, intersections, or traffic circles), the system brakes automatically and then accelerates back up to the set speed.

After switching on the ignition, the availability of predictive control is indicated by a message in the status line when the adaptive cruise assist is first activated.

The displays depend on the vehicle equipment.

Requirements for predictive control usage:

– **Set speed limit** or **Adjustment to curves along route** or both must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 129*.
– The adaptive cruise assist must be actively regulating ⇨ *page 131*.
– The speed limit must not be below 20 mph (30 km/h).

Indicator lights

Indicator lights will indicate to which events the predictive control is responding:

50 / 50 mph – Predictive control is responding to a speed limit (for example 50 mph (80 km/h)).

- Predictive control is reacting to an upcoming situation on the road.

Display in the speedometer

① Marking of the speed set by the traffic sign recognition or navigation data.
② Audi virtual cockpit: The red band shows the difference between the speed limit and the set speed.
③ Audi virtual cockpit: The gray band shows difference between the vehicle speed and set speed if driving below the set speed due to the road layout.

Image in the Driver assistance display

The display only appears when the **Driver assistance** display is open in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15*.

The following symbols and messages indicate the situation that is causing the system to react:

Symbol	Meaning
50	**Speed limit** (example)
MPH	**Speed limit**
km/h	**Speed limit**
	**Curve** or **Exit**
	**Intersection**
	**Traffic circle**

Overriding control

The driver can override the predictive control at any time by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal. If the system changes the vehicle speed to adapt to speed limits, you can change the speed using the lever ⇨ *page 133, fig. 103*.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

1) This is not available in some countries.

– Pay attention to traffic and the area around your vehicle when predictive control is switched on. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.
– The system does not consider "right of way" rules and does not respond to traffic lights, so lack of driver attention in these situations can increase the risk of an accident.
– The speed when driving through curves may be different from what you as a driver would do or may not be suitable for the weather and road conditions. If necessary, apply the brakes and reduce the selected speed to be maintained in the **Adjustment to curves along route** setting to reduce the risk of an accident.

Tips

– Predictive control can exceed the maximum permitted speed. The driver is responsible for adhering to the permitted speed limit.
– The system only detects traffic signs that specify a speed limit.
– The traffic signs on the road always take priority over the display. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– If a speed limit is detected, the marking ① of the set speed limit will be adjusted even if the adaptive cruise assist is not actively regulating.
– Due to predictive control based on the road layout, the vehicle speed may drop below the speed limit.
– Control by the system depends on which adaptive cruise assist driving program is set or on the selected Audi drive select* mode.
– After switching on the ignition, the system initially adjusts to a speed of 80 mph (130 km/h) when driving onto highways without a speed limit. Then the system adjusts to the last speed stored by the driver.
– There is no adaptation to speed limits when driving through highway interchanges and when driving on or off the expressway.
– The system switches off when outside of a road system that is recorded in the navigation system map data.
– Incorrect values from the camera-based traffic sign recognition* or outdated navigation system map data can lead to incorrect or implausible control.
– When route guidance is switched on, the system adapts to the route provided by the navigation system. Driving without route guidance or leaving a route can result in implausible control.
– The display in the instrument cluster is based on the units of measurement used for speed in the country where the vehicle is being operated. As a result, a display of 50 in the instrument cluster can mean either km/h or mph, depending on the country.

Settings

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

You can switch efficiency assist functions off or adjust them individually. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

Adjusting the efficiency assist

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Efficiency assist**.

Possible settings:

Predictive messages - when this function is switched on, predictive messages are shown.

Accelerator pedal feedback[1)] - when this function is switched on, the accelerator pedal gives feedback when the driver should remove their foot from the accelerator pedal in order to drive more efficiently based on the predictive notes from the efficiency assist. ▶

1) This is not available in some countries.

Setting the predictive control (efficiency assist)

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Adaptive cruise assist** > **Predictive control**.

Possible settings:

Set speed limit - when this function is switched on, the system adjusts to the speed limits. You can also set **With tolerance** if desired. In this scenario, you may fall below or exceed the set speed in favor of increased efficiency.

Adjustment to curves along route - the adjustment to the route can be switched **Off** or set individually from **Slow** to **Fast**. The setting influences vehicle handling with predictive control, for example the speed for driving through curves.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

If the indicator light turns on and a message with **Adaptive cruise assist**: **predictive control** is displayed, the efficiency assist functions are not available. The displayed message indicates the cause and possible solutions. If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Adaptive cruise assist

General information

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the adaptive cruise assist may consist of the following functions:

Within the limits of the system, the **adaptive speed and distance control** assists the driver in controlling the speed and the set distance to the vehicle driving ahead. If the system detects a vehicle driving ahead, the adaptive cruise assist can brake and accelerate your vehicle within the limits of the system. On open roads with no traffic, it functions like a cruise control system. The stored speed is maintained. When approaching a vehicle driving ahead, the adaptive cruise assist automatically brakes to match that vehicle's speed and then maintains the set distance as much as possible. As soon as the system does not detect a vehicle driving ahead, adaptive cruise assist accelerates up to the set speed.

The additional **lane guidance** assists the driver with corrective steering in order to stay in the lane. You can adjust if the adaptive cruise assist will provide support with lane guidance ⇨ *page 132, Switching lane guidance on and off*.

In **stop-and-go traffic and in traffic jams**, the vehicle may brake to a full stop and then may also start driving again automatically under certain conditions.

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist: **Predictive control** can adjust the speed based on traffic and road conditions ⇨ *page 127, Predictive control (efficiency assist)*.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Tips

For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 289*.

Limitations

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

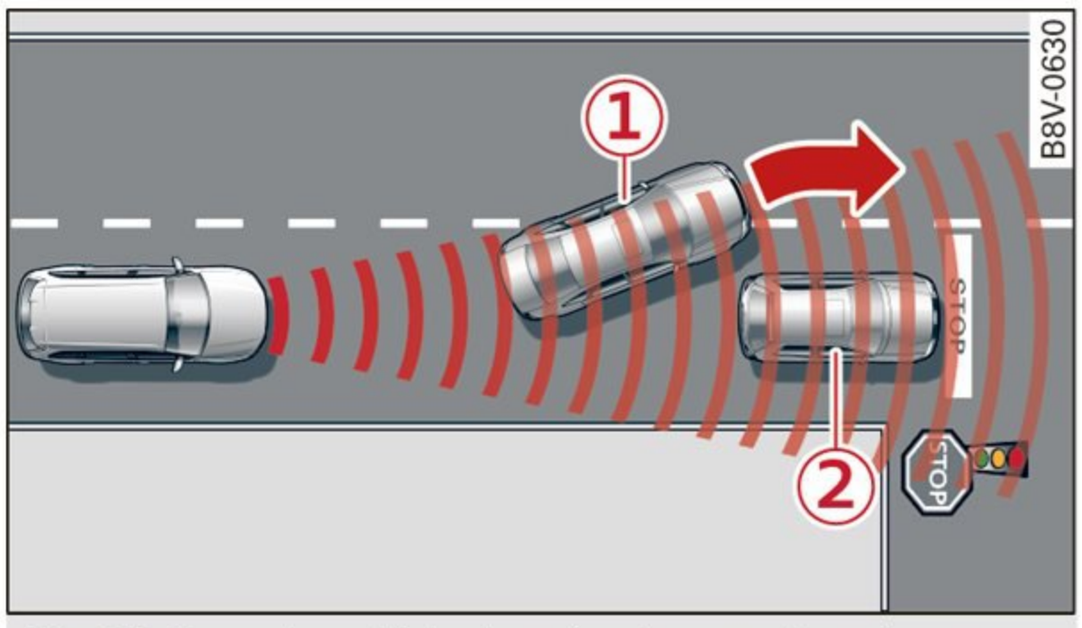


Fig. 97 Example: vehicle changing lanes and stationary vehicle

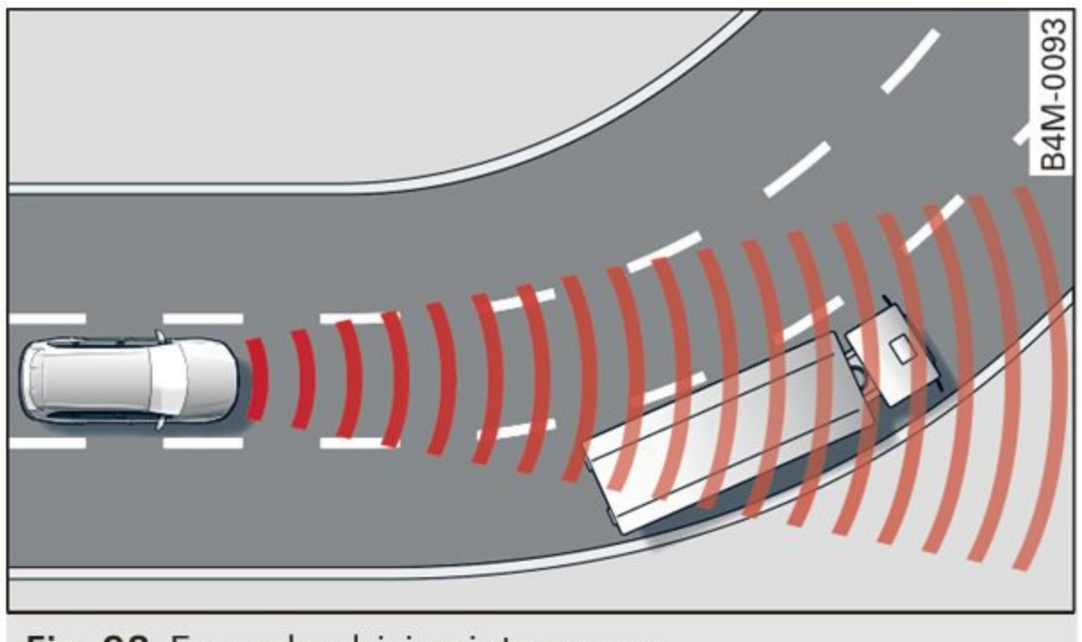


Fig. 98 Example: driving into a curve

In some situations, the adaptive cruise assist function is limited and you must assume control of the vehicle when necessary, for example by applying the brakes.

– If a vehicle that was already detected ① ⇨ *fig. 97* turns or changes lanes, the adaptive cruise assist reacts to the vehicle ahead of it ②.
– When driving into a curve ⇨ *fig. 98* and out of a curve, the adaptive cruise assist may react to a vehicle in the adjacent lane and apply the brakes. You can override this by pressing the accelerator pedal briefly.
– The adaptive cruise assist works with the various sensors and cameras in the vehicle. Vehicles can only be detected when they are within the area and range covered by the sensors ⇨ *page 114, fig. 87*.
– When driving around tight curves, a vehicle driving ahead that was previously detected may no longer be detected, and the adaptive cruise assist may accelerate unexpectedly.
– The adaptive cruise assist does not react to a stationary vehicle in the same lane if the system expects that you can easily drive around the stationary vehicle by turning the steering wheel.
– The adaptive cruise assist may not react to stationary obstacles, such as the end of a traffic jam, especially at high speeds.
–
– The adaptive cruise assist has a limited ability to detect vehicles that are a short distance ahead, off to the side of your vehicle, or moving into your lane.
– Objects that are difficult to detect, such as motorcycles, vehicles with high ground clearance, or vehicles with an overhanging load, may be detected late or not detected at all.
– The adaptive cruise assist does not respond to people, animals, or objects that are crossing or approaching from the opposite direction.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Display overview

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

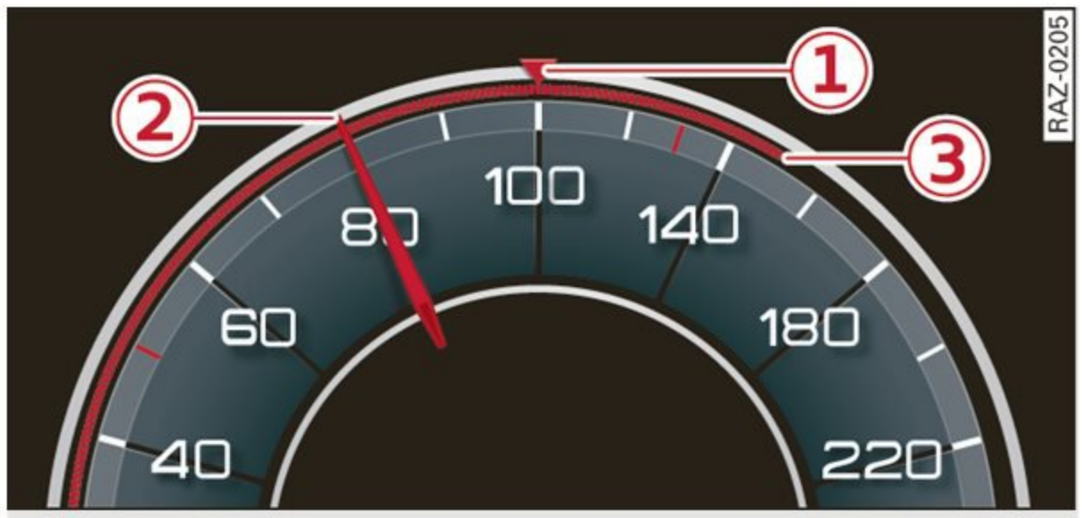


Fig. 99 Instrument cluster: display in speedometer

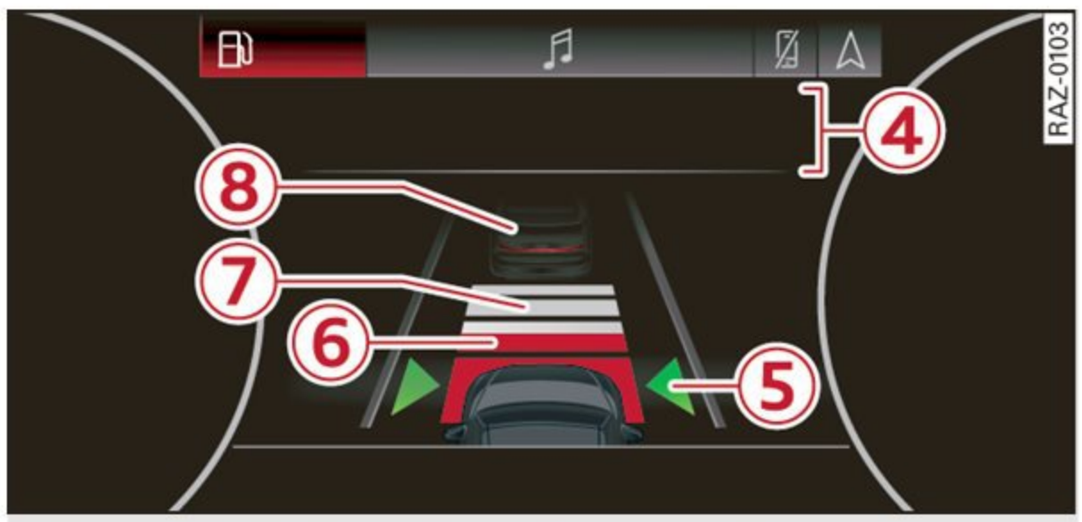


Fig. 100 Instrument cluster: driver assistance display

Indicator lights and messages in the speedometer inform you about the driving situation and the settings. In the **Driver assistance** display ▶

④ - ⑧, you can find more detailed information about the system.

Display in the speedometer

① Marking of the stored speed
② Current vehicle speed
③ Available speed range (example)

Image in the Driver assistance display

The display only appears when the **Driver assistance** display is open in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15*.

④ Messages and settings display
⑤ Lane guidance active or not active .
⑥ If you fall below the set distance, the distance bars turn red from the bottom upward.
⑦ Set target distance
⑧ Detected vehicle driving ahead

Indicator lights

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

– The adaptive cruise assist is switched on, but the speed/distance control is not active.

– The speed/distance control is active. No vehicles were detected ahead. The stored speed is maintained.

– The speed/distance control is active. A vehicle was detected ahead. The adaptive cruise assist controls the speed and distance from the vehicle driving ahead, and accelerates and brakes automatically.

– The speed/distance control is active. A vehicle was detected ahead. Your vehicle is stationary and will not start driving automatically.

– The speed/distance control is active. No vehicles were detected ahead. Your vehicle is stationary and will not start driving automatically.

– The automatic braking is not enough to maintain a sufficient distance to a vehicle driving ahead. You must intervene ⇨ *page 135, Driver intervention request*.

– Lane guidance is active.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

– There is no lane guidance.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Using adaptive cruise assist

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 101 Lever: using adaptive cruise assist

Switching on

► To switch on the adaptive cruise assist, pull the lever up to position ① until it engages.

Storing the speed and activating regulation

► To store the current speed and activate the regulation, press the SET button ②. The stored speed is indicated with a marking in the speedometer ① ⇨ *page 130, fig. 99* and shown in the instrument cluster ⇨ .
► To store the speed when stationary, the brake pedal must also be pressed.

You can set any speed between 20 mph and 95 mph (30 km/h and 150 km/h).

Pausing cruise control

The cruise control can be paused at any time while driving or when stationary.

► Press the lever away from you in the direction of the arrow to pause the cruise control. Or
► Press the brake pedal.

The indicator light turns off

Resuming cruise control

A previously stored speed can be resumed at any time after a pause. ▶

- ▸ To resume cruise control while driving, pull the lever toward you in the direction of the arrow.
- ▸ To resume cruise control when stationary, pull the lever toward you in the direction of the arrow while pressing the brake pedal.

Switching off

If you do not want to use the adaptive cruise assist for a longer period of time, you can switch it off.

- ▸ To switch off the adaptive cruise assist, push the lever away from you to position (0) until it engages.

The indicator light and the stored speed will turn on.

WARNING

- – Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
- – The activated adaptive cruise assist is only an assist system, and the driver is still responsible for controlling the vehicle. The driver is especially responsible for braking, steering, starting to drive, and controlling the speed and the distance from other vehicles.
- – Activate the adaptive cruise assist only if the surrounding conditions permit it. Always adapt your driving style to the current visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- – Switch the adaptive cruise assist off temporarily when driving in turning lanes or highway exits. This prevents the vehicle from accelerating to the stored speed when in these situations.
- – If you press the SET (2) button when driving at speeds below 20 mph (30 km/h), the vehicle will accelerate automatically up to 20 mph (30 km/h), which is the minimum speed that can be set.

Tips

- – Always keep your hands on the steering wheel. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
- – If you switch the ignition or the adaptive cruise assist off, the stored speed is erased for safety reasons.
- – When the adaptive cruise assist is switched on, the ESC and the ASR are switched on automatically.
- – The system cannot be switched off if the road exceeds the maximum possible grade for safe operation.
- – If you signal to pass and the adaptive cruise assist suggests a passing maneuver, the adaptive cruise assist will accelerate just before changing lanes to shorten the distance to the vehicle driving ahead.

Switching lane guidance on and off

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 102 Turn signal lever: switching lane guidance on and off

Within the limits of the system, lane guidance provides corrective steering to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle in the center of the lane as much as possible. This feature can be deactivated.

- ▸ Press the ⇨ *fig. 102* button to switch lane guidance on or off. When switching on, the indicator light turns on briefly and a message appears.

Lane guidance display overview

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster: If the indicator light turns on, lane guidance is not active. ▶

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: If the indicator light turns on with a white light, then lane guidance is not active.

This may be due to the following reasons:

– The necessary lane marker lines have not been detected (for example, in a construction zone or because the lines are obstructed by snow, dirt, water, or lighting)
– The lane is too narrow or too wide
– The curve is too narrow
– The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Tips

– Always keep your hands on the steering wheel. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– It is recommended to only switch on lane guidance on well-constructed roads.
– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Changing the speed

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 103 Operating lever: changing the speed

- To increase or decrease the speed in smaller increments, briefly tap the lever toward ⊕ or ⊖ to the first level.
- To increase or decrease the speed in larger increments, briefly tap the lever toward ⊕ or ⊖ to the second level.
- To increase or decrease the speed quickly, hold the lever toward ⊕ or ⊖ until the marking in the speedometer ① ⇨ *page 130, fig. 99* has reached the desired speed.

Preselecting a speed

You can also preselect the speed when adaptive cruise assist is not active by moving the lever in the desired direction ⊕/⊖. Activate the previously selected speed by pulling the lever toward you in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *page 131, fig. 101*.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

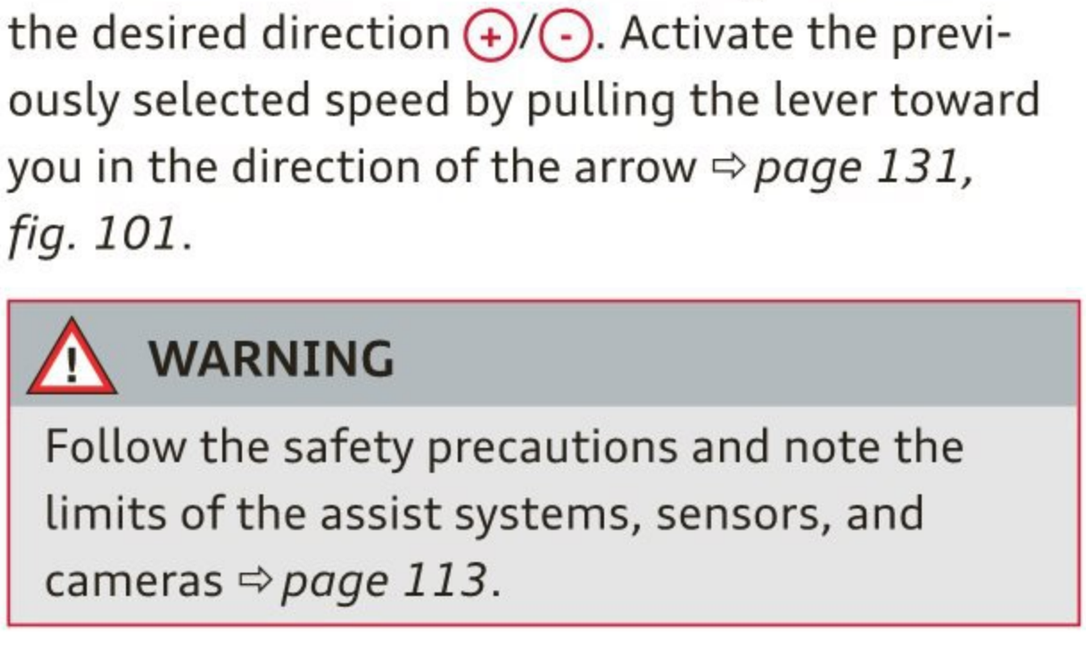


Fig. 104 Operating lever: setting the distance

If you adjust the speed, you must also change the time gap to the vehicle driving ahead. The higher the speed, the greater the distance that is needed.

- Tap the rocker switch to display the distance that is currently set.
- To increase or decrease the distance in increments, tap the switch again toward ⊕ or ⊖.

The newly set distance is shown briefly, for example with the indicator light. In the **Driver assistance** display, a graphic display is shown instead of the indicator lights ⇨ *page 130,* ▶

fig. 100. The display matches the functions of the indicator lights.

When approaching a vehicle driving ahead, the adaptive cruise assist brakes to the set speed and then maintains the set distance. If the vehicle driving ahead accelerates, then the adaptive cruise assist will also accelerate up to the speed that you have set.

The following distances can be set:

Symbol	Meaning
	The time between is approximately 1 second. This setting corresponds to a distance of approximately 92 feet (28 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).
	The time between is approximately 1.3 seconds. This setting corresponds to a distance of approximately 118 feet (36 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).
	The time between is approximately 1.8 seconds. This setting meets the general recommendation of “half the speed shown on the speedometer”. This corresponds to a distance of approximately 164 ft (50 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).
	The time between is approximately 2.4 seconds. This setting corresponds to a distance of approximately 219 ft (67 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).
	The time between is approximately 3.6 seconds. This setting corresponds to a distance of approximately 328 ft (100 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Tips

– When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to any applicable legal regulations.
– Depending on the selected driving program and distance, driving behavior when accelerating may vary from moderate to sporty ⇨ *page 136, Adjusting the adaptive cruise assist*.
– The distances provided are specified values. Depending on the driving situation and how the vehicle ahead is driving, the actual distance may be more or less than these target distances.

Overriding control

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 105 Lever: overriding the control

Requirement: the adaptive cruise assist must be switched on.

Overriding control

- To accelerate manually, pull the lever toward you in the direction of the arrow and hold it there, or press the accelerator pedal.
- To resume the usual cruise control, release the lever or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

When you are in the **Driver assistance** display, the message **Adaptive cruise assist: overridden** appears.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

– Resting your foot on the accelerator pedal could override the cruise control. Braking interventions and corrective actions by the system may not occur.

Driving in stop-and-go traffic

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

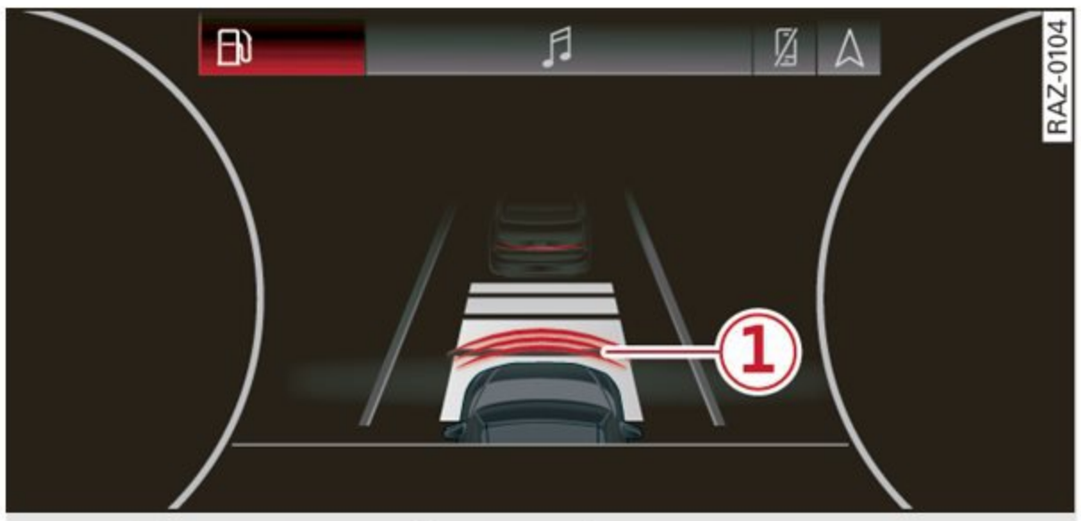


Fig. 106 Instrument cluster: safe start monitor

The adaptive cruise assist also assists you in stop-and-go traffic [1]. If a vehicle driving ahead stops, your vehicle may brake and remain at a stop, within the limits of the system.

Starting to drive with adaptive cruise assist[1]

As long as the message **ready to drive** is displayed, your vehicle will begin driving when the vehicle ahead starts to move ⇨ ⚠.

If you are stopped for several seconds, your vehicle will no longer drive autonomously for safety reasons, and the message will turn off.

- ▸ To reactivate **ready to drive** temporarily, pull the lever in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *page 134, fig. 105*.
- ▸ To resume manual control of the vehicle, tap the accelerator pedal.

Safe start monitor

The vehicle can still start to drive even if certain obstacles are detected when starting to drive ⇨ ⚠. For example, if an obstacle is detected by the ultrasonic sensors for parking system plus, the  indicator light will warn you of the danger.

If you are in the **Driver assistance** display, the display ① ⇨ *fig. 106* and the message **WARNING!** also appear. An audio signal will also sound. Your vehicle will drive more slowly when starting. This may also occur in some situations when there is no apparent obstacle.

- ▸ Press the brake pedal to slow your vehicle down.

WARNING

- – Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
- – If the message **ready to drive**[1] appears, your vehicle will start driving even if there is an obstacle between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure there are no obstacles between your vehicle and the vehicle driving ahead.

Tips

For safety reasons, your vehicle will only start to drive automatically if:

- – The driver's safety belt is fastened
- – All doors and the hood are closed
- – Your vehicle is not stopped for a long period of time

Driver intervention request

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

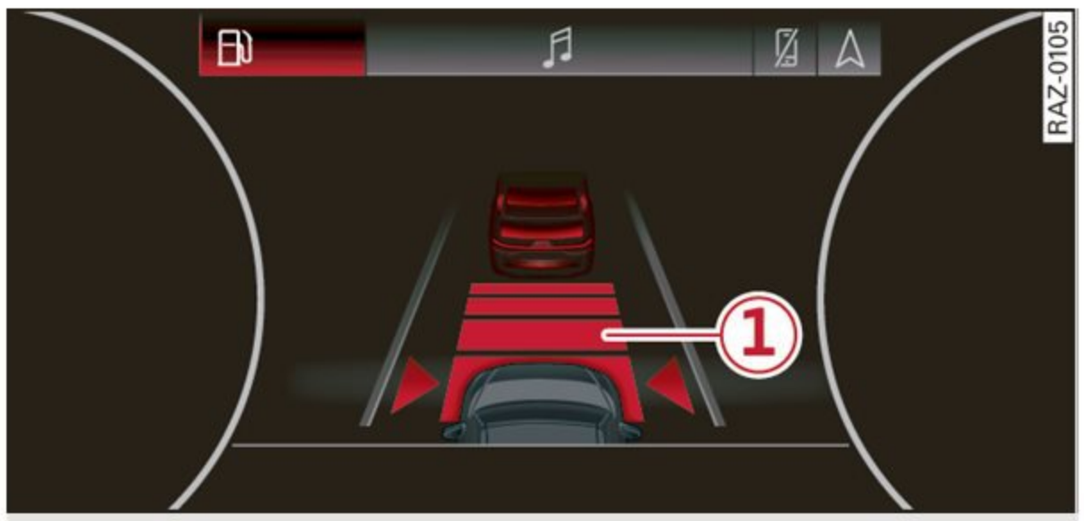


Fig. 107 Instrument cluster: request for driver intervention

The request for driver intervention instructs you to resume manual control of the vehicle if the adaptive cruise assist braking function is not able to maintain a sufficient distance to the vehicle ahead. The system will warn you of the hazard ▶

[1] This is not available in some countries.

with the indicator light and the message **DISTANCE!**.

The display (1) only appears when the **Driver assistance** display is open in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15*.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Adjusting the adaptive cruise assist

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

You can adjust the adaptive cruise assist to your own preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

- Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Adaptive cruise assist**.

Possible settings:

Driving program – depending on the driving program and the distance that are set, the vehicle handling will be adjusted from **Sport** to **Moderate** and the lane guidance haptic feedback will be adjusted.

Store last distance - the last distance that was set will be stored after the ignition is switched off. If the distance is not stored, distance (time distance of approximately 1.8 seconds) is automatically preset every time the ignition is switched on.

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

Predictive control – when predictive control is switched on, the system reacts automatically to situations ⇨ *page 129*.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

If the / indicator light turns on, the adaptive cruise assist functions are not available.

If the indicator light turns on, the adaptive cruise assist lane guidance is not available.

The displayed messages specify the cause and possible solutions. Try switching the systems on again later. If the message indicates that the system view is limited, the weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area covering the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 114, fig. 87*. If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Narrow area

This message appears in the **Driver assistance** display if the adaptive cruise assist is adjusting the speed in a narrow area, for example a construction zone.

Please take over steering and pay attention to traffic!

This message appears if steering activity is no longer detected. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time.

Adaptive cruise assist: Please take over!

This message appears if the vehicle rolls back when starting on a slight incline, even though the systems are active. Press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling or starting to move.

Adaptive cruise assist: limited availability. See owner's manual

This message appears when the sensor view is limited, for example, when weather conditions are too poor or a sensor is covered. You can always switch on the adaptive cruise assist; however, certain functions such as assistance in narrow areas will not be available. Under certain circumstances, some objects may be detected late or may not be detected at all. Be especially careful. However, cleaning the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 114, fig. 87* may correct the malfunction.

Distance warning

Description

Applies to: vehicles with distance warning

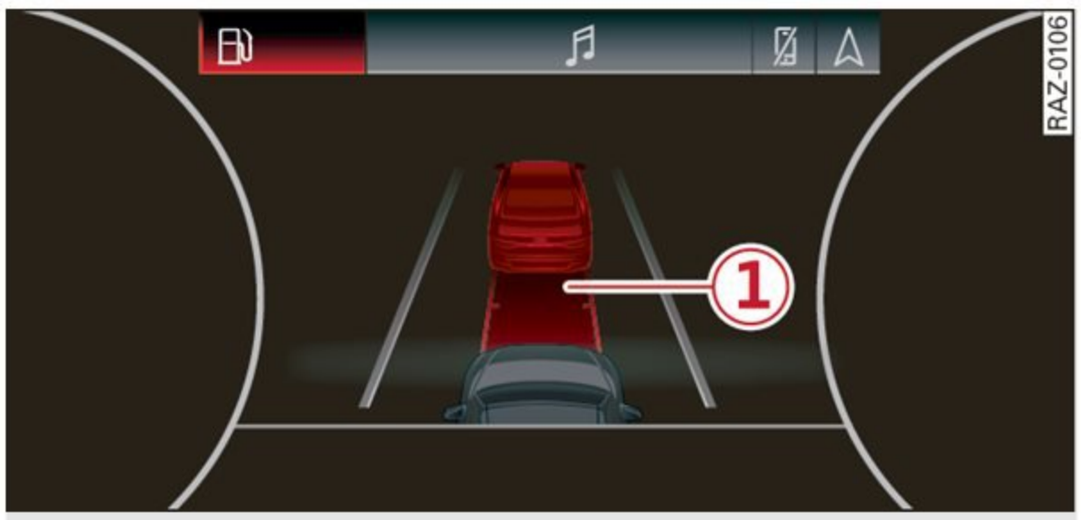


Fig. 108
-Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist Instrument cluster Distance warning

At speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h), this function measures the distance to the vehicle ahead as time. If the distance falls below the warning threshold, the system warns you of the hazard with the indicator light.

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist: The display (1)* only appears if you have opened the **Driver assistance** display in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15* and the adaptive cruise assist is inactive.

Adjusting the distance warning

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 116*.

You can adjust the distance warning threshold to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

– Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Distance warning**

Messages

If the / indicator light turns on, the distance warning functions are not available. The displayed message indicates the cause and possible solutions. If the message indicates that the system view is limited, the weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area covering the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 114, fig. 87*. If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Tips

– The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– You may fall below the warning threshold briefly when passing or when quickly approaching a vehicle driving ahead. There is no warning in this scenario. A warning is given only if you fall below the warning threshold for an extended period of time.

Lane departure warning

General information

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

The lane departure warning can detect lane marker lines within the limits of the system. If you are approaching a detected lane marker and it appears likely that you will leave the lane, the system can warn you with corrective steering and a steering wheel vibration, if necessary.

The system functions in the speed range of approximately 40 mph - 155 mph (65 km/h - 250 km/h).

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning and without side assist: Even if the system is ready, it will not warn you if you activate a turn signal before crossing the lane marker line. In this case, it assumes that you are changing lanes intentionally.

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning in combination with side assist: If the turn signal is activated, the lane departure warning is ready, and a lane change has been classified as critical by the lane departure warning due to vehicles ▶

traveling beside you or due to approaching vehicles, then a noticeable corrective steering movement will occur briefly before exiting the lane. This will attempt to keep your vehicle in the lane.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Description

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

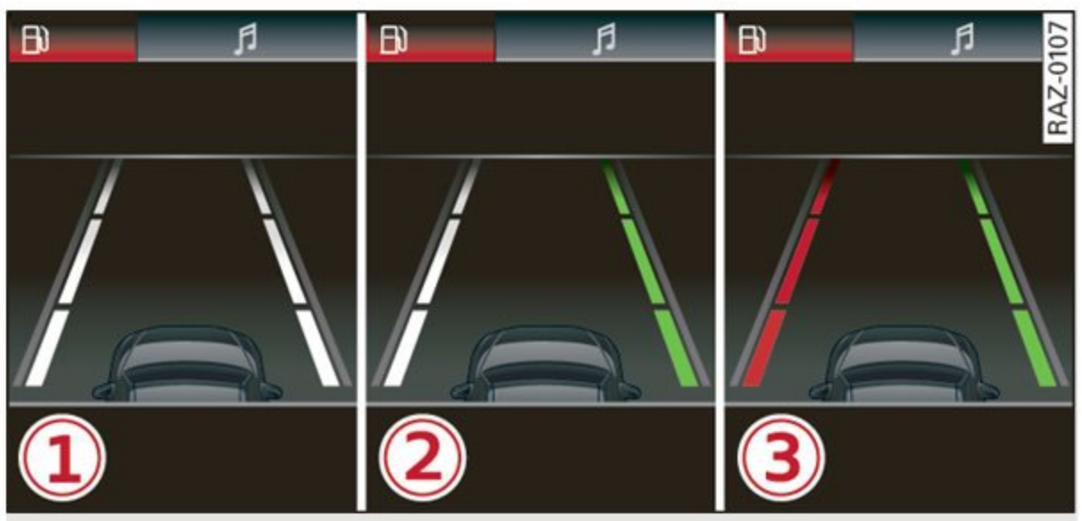


Fig. 109 Instrument cluster: driver assistance display

Switching the lane departure warning on and off

The lane departure warning is automatically activated as soon as the ignition is switched on [1].

► To switch the system off or on, select on the lower display ⇨ *page 21*.

Display and warning

The availability and warning readiness is indicated with the , and indicator lights on the respective side.

You can also open the **Driver assistance** display in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15*. The display matches the functions of the indicator lights.

Display	Meaning on the corresponding side
① White line(s)	The lane departure warning is switched on but not ready to provide warnings.
② Green line(s)	The lane departure warning is switched on and ready to provide warnings.
③ Red line	The lane departure warning will warn you before leaving a lane. The steering wheel can also warn you with a vibration.

The lane departure warning is ready to provide warnings if an object is detected on at least one side of the individual lane.

If the indicator light turns on, the lane departure warning is not ready to provide warnings. This may be due to the following reasons:

– The necessary lane marker lines have not been detected (for example, in a construction zone or because the lines are obstructed by snow, dirt, water, or lighting)
– The speed is below the activation speed
– The lane is too narrow or too wide
– The curve is too narrow
– The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
– The system warns the driver that the vehicle is leaving the lane using corrective steering. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
– Corrective steering may not occur at all in certain situations, such as during heavy braking. Always be ready to intervene. ▶

[1] In certain countries

Tips

- If the system is switched off, it switches on again automatically once the ignition is switched on again[1)].
- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
- The system does not provide any corrective steering or steering wheel vibrations if it detects that you are passing another vehicle.

Adjusting the lane departure warning

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

You can switch the optional steering wheel vibration warning for the lane departure warning on and off. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

- Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Lane departure warning** > **Vibration warning**.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

If the / indicator light turns on, the lane departure warning functions are not available. The displayed message indicates the cause and possible solutions. Try switching the lane departure warning on again later. If the message indicates that the system view is limited, the weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area covering the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 114, fig. 87*. If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Audi pre sense

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Within the limits of the system, the Audi pre sense functions can initiate measures in certain driving situations to protect the vehicle occupants and other road users. Depending on the vehicle equipment, various Audi pre sense systems may be installed:

- **Audi pre sense basic** can react during emergency and dangerous braking maneuvers and unstable driving situations (such as oversteering or understeering).
- **Audi pre sense front**[2)] can detect an impending frontal impact and react with warnings, braking interventions, and preemptive safety measures for the vehicle occupants.
- **Audi pre sense rear** monitors the rear traffic behind your vehicle and can react to an impending rear impact.
- **Audi pre sense side** can detect an impending side impact from cross-traffic and vehicles coming from the side, and can initiate preemptive safety measures.
- The **evasive steering assist** can assist during an evasive maneuver recognized as critical with steering movement and by braking individual wheels individually.
- The **turn assist** can detect vehicles in the opposite lane and react with braking maneuvers.

Audi pre sense preemptive safety measures

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Depending on the vehicle speed and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be initiated in certain situations:

- Visual and audio warnings
- Activation of the emergency flashers[2)]
- Reversible tensioning of safety belts
- Closing the windows and panoramic glass roof
- Adjusting the seats ▶

1) In certain countries

2) This is not available in some countries.

– Other preemptive safety measures by individual systems

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Tips

– Depending on the dangerous situation that is detected and the selected Audi drive select* mode, all preemptive safety measures may not be initiated under certain circumstances. Certain functions can be adjusted or skipped if necessary.
– Audi pre sense may be restricted or unavailable under certain circumstances, for example if:
  – There are passengers with unfastened safety belts
  – It has only been several seconds since the ignition was switched on The indicator light turns on
  – When driving in reverse
  – There is an airbag control module malfunction
  – The ESC is limited, switched off, or malfunctioning ⇨ *page 108*

Audi pre sense basic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense basic

Audi pre sense basic is automatically active at speeds of approximately 20 mph (30 km/h) and higher. Audi pre sense basic can trigger the Audi pre sense preemptive safety measures during emergency braking and dangerous braking maneuvers as well as in unstable driving situations, such as oversteering or understeering.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Audi pre sense front

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense front

The **Audi pre sense front** uses the data from the camera and calculates the probability of a rear-end collision. Within the limits of the system, an impending frontal impact with vehicles, pedestrians[1)], or cyclists[1)] may be detected in both urban and rural speed ranges.

Audi pre sense front is active at speeds of approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) and higher. It can react to pedestrians[1)] or cyclists[1)] at speeds up to approximately 50 mph (85 km/h), and can react to vehicles at speeds up to approximately 155 mph (250 km/h).

Early warning/acute warning

The system can recognize various dangerous situations. The **early warning** occurs if:

– A vehicle driving ahead brakes suddenly
– Your own vehicle approaches a vehicle in front of you that is traveling at a significantly slower speed or that is stationary
– A pedestrian or cyclist[1)] is standing in the lane or is moving into the lane

The message **Audi pre sense** and a warning tone will warn you about the danger.

The brakes may also be applied as an **acute warning** when there is an impending collision. You will also be warned by an indicator in the instrument cluster display. When this warning occurs, it may only be possible to avoid a collision by swerving or braking strongly.

Automatic deceleration

If you do not react to the acute warning, Audi pre sense front can brake the vehicle to a full stop within the limits of the system [1)]. This reduces the vehicle speed in the event of a collision.

Automatic braking force increase

If Audi pre sense determines that you are not braking strongly enough when a collision is imminent, it can increase the braking force based on the situation. ▶

1) This is not available in some countries.

Take-over

If the message **Please take over!** appears, the vehicle has been braked to a stop by Audi pre sense and you must resume control of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
- Audi pre sense front cannot overcome natural physical laws. It is a system designed to assist and it cannot prevent a collision in every circumstance. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
- Audi pre sense front does not react to certain objects, such as animals, crossing or oncoming vehicles, bars, railings, or railcars.
- Audi pre sense front may be limited or unavailable when driving in curves.
- In trailer mode, the braking behavior of the trailer can be different than usual during automatic braking.

Tips

Keep in mind that Audi pre sense front can apply the brakes unexpectedly. Always secure any cargo or objects that you are transporting to reduce the risk of damage or injury.

Audi pre sense rear

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense rear

Within the limits of the system, **Audi pre sense rear** uses data from radar sensors in the rear area of the vehicle and calculates the probability of a rear-end collision with the vehicle behind you.

Audi pre sense preemptive safety measures can be initiated if the risk of a collision with the vehicle behind you is detected.

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
- Audi pre sense rear does not react to pedestrians, animals, crossing objects, and objects not detected as vehicles.

Tips

- Audi pre sense rear functions switch off when trailer mode is detected. There is no guarantee the functions will switch off when using a retrofitted trailer hitch.
- Audi pre sense rear functions may also switch off if there is a malfunction in the side assist system.

Audi pre sense side

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense side

Audi pre sense side uses data from the extra radar sensors installed in the front and rear areas of the vehicle, and other sensors can react to side impacts from cross-traffic and vehicles coming from the side.

Audi pre sense side is active at speeds up to approximately 35 mph (60 km/h). The Audi pre sense preemptive safety measures can be triggered when a collision risk is detected.

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
- Audi pre sense side does not react to pedestrians, animals, and objects not detected as vehicles.

Tips

- The Audi pre sense side functions are limited when trailer mode is detected.
- The Audi pre sense side functions may also switch off if there is a malfunction in the intersection assistant*.

4K8012721BA

Evasive steering assist

Applies to: vehicles with evasive steering assist

The evasive steering assist can help you to steer the vehicle around an obstacle detected in a critical area. If you avoid an obstacle after the acute warning, then the evasive steering support assists you by specifically braking individual wheels and applying slight steering adjustment to correct the steering wheel angle as long as you are actively steering. The swerve assist is available at speeds between approximately 20 mph and 90 mph (30 km/h - 150 km/h).

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
- The evasive steering assist does not react to pedestrians, animals, crossing objects, and objects not detected as vehicles.

Tips

- If the ESC is limited, switched off, or malfunctioning ⇨ *page 108*, the evasive steering assist functions may also not be available.
- An indicator in the instrument cluster will inform you when there is an intervention.

Turn assist

Applies to: vehicles with turn assist

When your vehicle is turning

The turn assist can assist you with a braking intervention when starting to drive or when driving slowly, to reduce the risk of your vehicle colliding with an oncoming vehicle when you are making a left turn[1)]. The braking intervention causes your vehicle to stay in its lane. The function is only available when the turn signal is turned on and at speeds up to maximum of 6 mph (10 km/h).

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
- The turn assist does not react to pedestrians, animals, crossing objects, and objects not detected as vehicles.

Tips

- If the ESC is limited, switched off, or malfunctioning ⇨ *page 108*, the turn assist functions may also not be available.
- An indicator in the instrument cluster will inform you when there is an intervention.

Adjusting Audi pre sense

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 116*.

You can adjust the Audi pre sense functions to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

- Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Audi pre sense**.

Possible settings:

- **Turn assist**
- **Evasive steering support**

Prewarning[2)] - the early warning can be switched off or the Audi pre sense warning time can be set (**Early**/**Medium**/**Late**).

Set the warning time for the early warning to **Early** at first. If this causes undesired early warnings to appear, then set the warning time to **Medium**. The **Late** warning time should only be set in special circumstances. ▶

1) When making a right turn in countries with left-hand drive vehicles.

2) In certain countries

Tips

– Switch Audi pre sense off when you are not using public streets, when loading the vehicle onto a vehicle carrier, train, ship, or other type of transportation, or when towing the vehicle. This can help to prevent an undesired intervention from the Audi pre sense system.
– If the system is switched off, it switches on again automatically once the ignition is switched on again[1)].
– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

If the / indicator light turns on, the Audi pre sense functions are not available. The displayed message indicates the cause and possible solutions. If the message indicates that the system view is limited, the weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area covering the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 114, fig. 87*. If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Side assist and exit warning system

Introduction

The side assist and exit warning system can help you monitor your blind spot and traffic behind your vehicle. Within the limits of the systems, these systems can inform and warn you of the following situations:

The **side assist** can detect approaching vehicles or vehicles traveling in the same direction next to or behind your vehicle. The display on the left exterior mirror can assist you when changing to a lane on the left or making a left turn, while the display in the right exterior mirror assists you when changing to a lane on the right or making a right turn.

When opening the door when the vehicle is stationary, the **exit warning** can warn you of a possible collision with moving objects approaching from the rear.

Tips

For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 289*.

Side assist

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

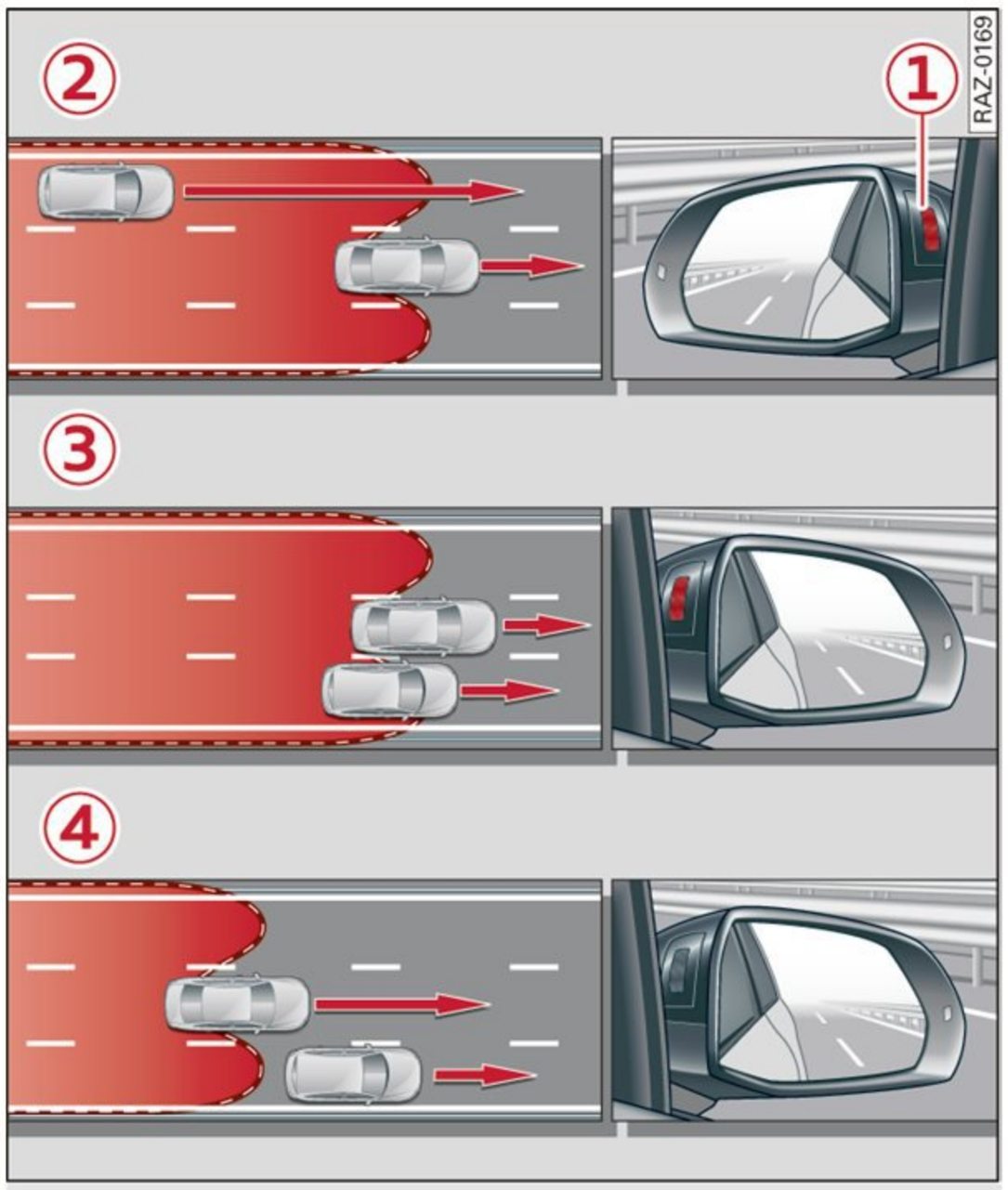


Fig. 110 Driving situations and display in the outside mirror (example)

General information

The side assist is active starting at walking speeds, and uses a display in the exterior mirror ① to warn you of the following dangers:

② Approaching vehicles: a vehicle may be classified as critical in some cases, even if it is farther away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the sooner the display in the outside mirror will turn on. ▶

1) In certain countries

③ Vehicles traveling in the same direction: the indicator will turn on in the outside mirror when vehicles traveling in the same direction are classified as critical. The side assist warns you of all detected vehicles when they are in the “blind spot” or before they reach that point.

④ Vehicles you are passing: if you slowly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is less than 9 mph (15 km/h)), the display in the exterior mirror will turn on when the vehicle enters your blind spot. The display will not turn on if you quickly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed is greater than approximately 9 mph (15 km/h)).

Information stage

At the information level, the side assist informs you of detected objects that are classified as critical. This is even possible when your vehicle is stationary and the turn signal is turned on, so that the system can also assist you when turning. From speeds of approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) and higher, the system will warn you of detected objects that are classified as critical, even if the turn signal is not turned on.

The display remains dim in the information stage so that you are not distracted while looking forward.

Warning stage

If the display in a mirror blinks brightly when you activate a turn signal, side assist is warning you about detected objects classified as critical.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and other driver assistance systems, the display in the mirror may also flash if you have not activated a turn signal. If you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears you will be leaving the lane, the display in the mirror will warn you about detected vehicles that are classified as critical. You can also be warned with corrective steering ⇨ *page 137, Lane departure warning*.

Detection range

The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In some situations, the display in the exterior mirror may turn on even though there is no vehicle located in the area that is critical for a lane change. For example:

– If the lanes are narrow or if you are driving on the edge of your lane. If this is the case, the system may have detected a vehicle in another lane that is *not* adjacent to your current lane.
– If you are driving through a curve. Side assist may react to a vehicle that is in the same lane or one lane over from the adjacent lane.
– If side assist reacts to other objects (such as roadside structures like guard rails).

Adjusting side assist

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 116*. If the system is activated, the displays in the exterior mirrors will turn on briefly when the ignition is switched on.

You can adjust the side assist to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

– Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Side assist**

Possible settings:

Brightness – the display brightness adjusts automatically to the brightness of the surroundings, both in the information stage and in the warning stage. In very dark or very bright surroundings, the automatic adjustment will set the display to the minimum or maximum level. In such cases, you may notice no change when adjusting the brightness, or the change may only be noticeable once the surroundings change. Adjust the brightness to a level where the display in the information stage will not disrupt your view ahead. If you change the brightness, the display in the exterior mirror will briefly show the brightness level in the information stage. The brightness of the warning stage is linked to the brightness in the information stage and is adjusted along with the information stage. ▶

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
– The display may not appear on time when vehicles are approaching or being passed very quickly.

Tips

If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be incorrect.

Exit warning

Applies to: vehicles with exit warning system

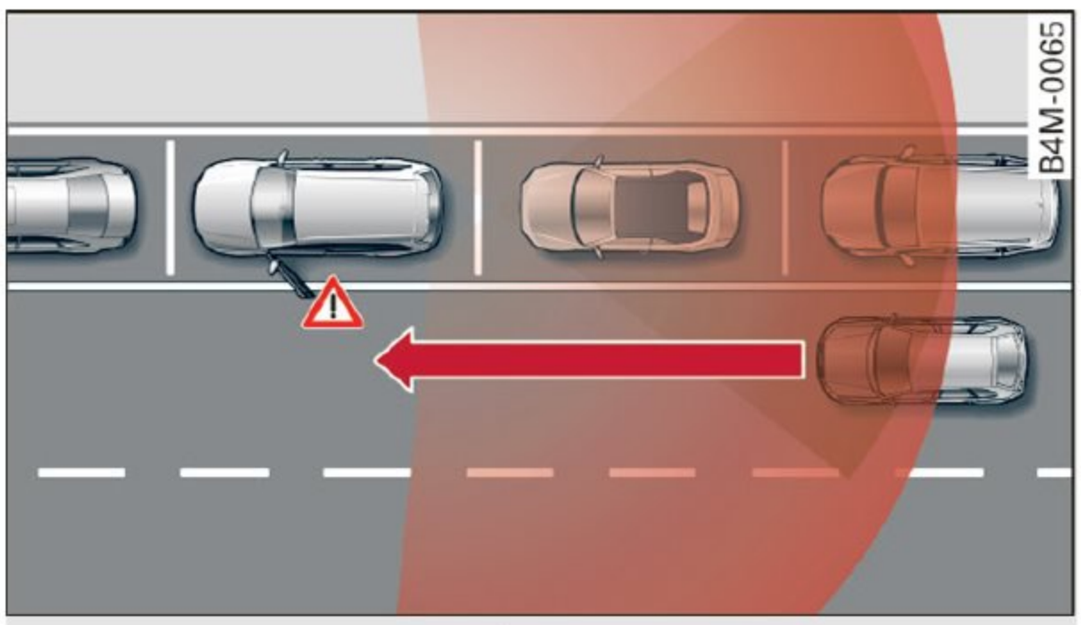


Fig. 111 Operating principle

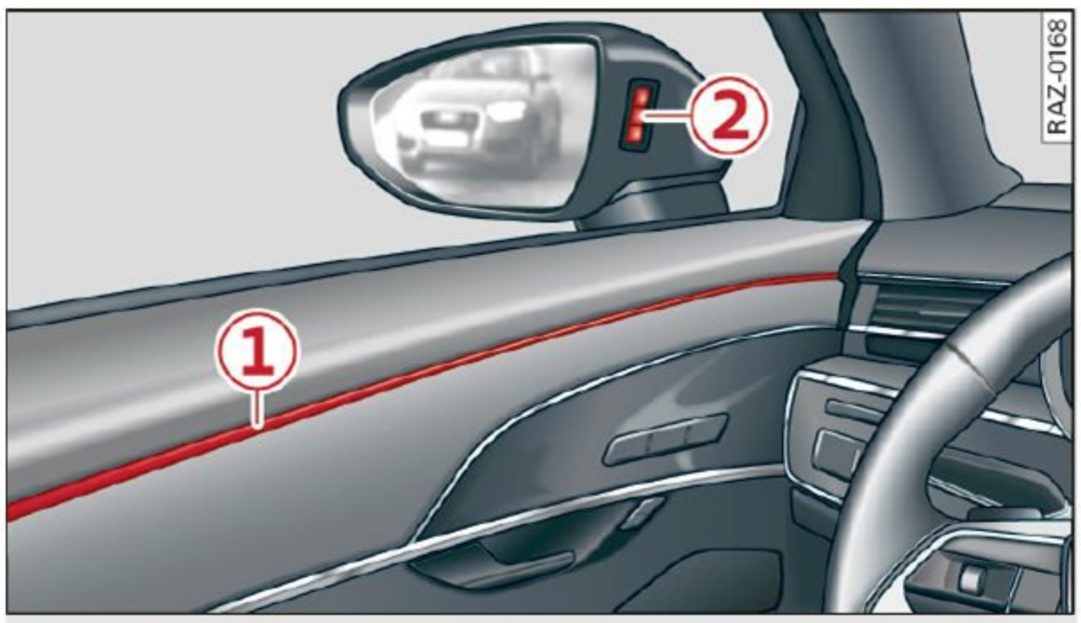


Fig. 112 Front door: warning strip (diagram)

When opening the door when the vehicle is stationary, the exit warning can warn you of a possible collision with detected objects approaching from the rear.

The system uses the data from the radar sensors in the rear area of the vehicle and monitors the area behind the vehicle and at the sides of the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 111*. Moving objects that are approaching from behind, such as cars, can be detected ⇨ ⚠.

If you pull a door handle while a road user that is classified as critical is approaching, then the warning strip ① on that door and the display in the outside mirror ② will turn on. The opening of the door will also be slowed briefly.

If the door is opened, the displays on that side will flash. If another road user that is classified as critical is approaching while a door is already open, the displays on that door will turn on.

Switching the exit warning on and off

– The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 116*.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
– Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. The exit warning system does not replace the attention of the vehicle occupants. The vehicle occupants are always responsible for opening the doors and exiting the vehicle.
– The exit warning system does not respond to people and cannot warn you about every type of approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the traffic as well as the vehicle's surroundings with direct eye contact.
– The display may not appear in time when vehicles are approaching very quickly.
– The exit warning system does not react to stationary objects or pedestrians.
– The exit warning system will not provide alerts if your vehicle is pulled too far into the parking space so that it is hidden by adjacent vehicles.

Tips

The exit warning system can still be available for approximately three minutes after switching off the ignition. Then the displays flash briefly and the system switches off.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with side assist and exit warning

If the / indicator light turns on, the side assist and exit warning functions are not available. The displayed message indicates the cause and possible solutions. If the message indicates that the system view is limited, the weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. If necessary, clean the area around the sensors in the rear corners of the vehicle. If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Intersection assistant

Description

Applies to: vehicles with intersection assistant

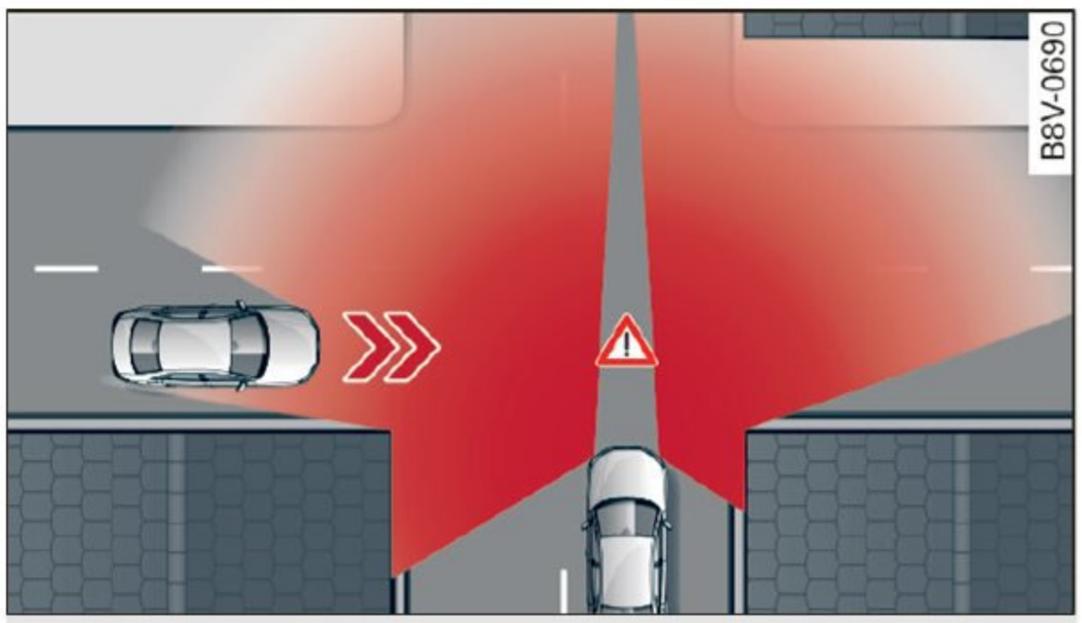


Fig. 113 Diagram: detected cross traffic

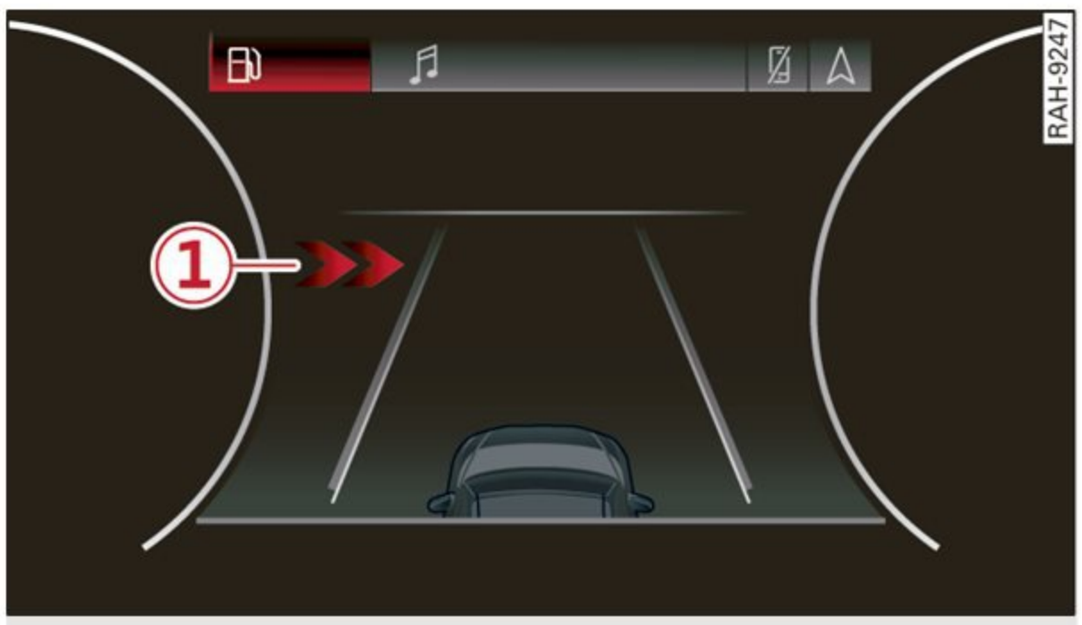


Fig. 114 Instrument cluster: directional display from the intersection assistant

General information

The **intersection assistant** can warn the driver of approaching cross traffic in complex intersections ⇨ *fig. 113*.

The system monitors intersections and exit ramps using the sensors installed in the vehicle that detect the front and side areas around the vehicle. Moving objects that are approaching from behind, such as cars, are detected within the limits of the system ⇨ ⚠. The system can also warn the driver of a potential collision with detected approaching cross traffic in intersections and exit ramps with poor visibility.

Requirements for using the intersection assistant:

– The intersection assistant must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 116*.
– The speed must not be higher than approximately 18 mph (30 km/h).
– The selector lever must be in the “D/S” position.

Displays, warnings, and braking

– **Display**: the red arrow ① shows the direction from where the cross traffic is approaching. The indicator in the upper display only appears when the parking aid is activated. For vehicles with peripheral cameras only in the **Front** and **Corner view (front)** camera views. The display only appears in the instrument cluster ⇨ *fig. 114* when the **Driver assistance** display is open in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15*.
– **Warnings**: the message **Audi pre sense** and the indicator light warn you of critical cross traffic when driving forward. A warning tone will also sound.
– **Automatic brake activation**: if you do not react to a warning, a brief braking by the system can warn you of a potential collision with an approaching object when driving forward at speeds up to 6 mph (10 km/h).

Messages

If the / indicator light turns on or if is displayed, then the intersection assistant functions are not available. The displayed message indicates the cause and possible solutions. If the message indicates that the system view is limited, the weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. If necessary, clean the area around the sensors in the front corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 114, fig. 87* If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an ▶

authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
- The intersection assistant will not provide alerts about people and cannot warn you about every type of approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the traffic as well as the vehicle's surroundings with direct eye contact.
- The system may not react if vehicles are approaching very fast.

Tips

For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 289*.

Emergency assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with emergency assist

General information

Within the limits of the system, the emergency assist detects if the driver is inactive. In these instances, the system warns the driver, assumes control of the vehicle if necessary, and brings the vehicle automatically to a stop in the lane.

Regardless of the speed, the emergency assist is automatically available when the adaptive cruise assist* is activated. When the adaptive cruise assist* is deactivated, the system is only active at speeds higher than approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

Emergency assist functions

Within the limits of the system, the emergency assist monitors the driver's steering, accelerator, and brake pedal activity. Depending on the severity of the situation, it may initiate visual, audio, and haptic warnings in stages:

- Reduces the speed
- Messages
- Lowers the volume of the Infotainment system
- Audible warning
- Tightening of the safety belt
- A brief application of the brakes

If the driver remains inactive despite the warnings, the emergency assist controls the vehicle within the limits of the system:

- The Audi pre sense preemptive safety measures are triggered ⇨ *page 139*.
- The vehicle will stay in the lane and will be braked to a stop.
- As soon as the vehicle comes to a full stop, the emergency flashers are activated[1)] and the vehicle prepares for the vehicle passengers to be rescued. The parking brake is set, "P" gear is engaged, the doors are unlocked, and the interior lighting is activated. If there is no movement for several seconds, the emergency call [1)] will be made if necessary.

Overriding the emergency assist

If necessary, you can override the emergency assist ⇨ ⚠:

- Move the steering wheel. Or
- Press the brake pedal. Or
- Press the accelerator pedal noticeably

When stationary, you can end the emergency assist by leaving the "P" position or releasing the parking brake ⇨ *page 99*.

Switching the emergency assist on and off

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 116*.

Messages

If the SOS indicator light turns on, the emergency assist functions are not available. The displayed message indicates the cause and possible solutions. If one of the messages does not turn off, ▶

1) This function is not available in every market and on all vehicle equipment levels.

drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
- The emergency assist is an assist system that should only be used in cases of emergency to take over control of the vehicle and bring it to a stop.

Tips

- Depending on the severity of the detected situation, not all preemptive safety measures will be initiated. Certain functions can be adjusted or skipped if necessary.
- If the emergency assist was triggered, it will only be available again after a brief period.
- Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile[1)].
- An indicator in the instrument cluster will inform you when there is an intervention.

1) This function is not available in every market and on all vehicle equipment levels.

Parking and maneuvering

Introduction

Depending on the vehicle equipment, various parking aids will help you when parking and maneuvering.

The **parking system plus** assists you while parking using audio and visual signals to warn you about objects detected in front of, behind, and at the sides* of the vehicle ⇨ *page 149*.

The **rearview camera** shows the area behind the vehicle in the MMI display. The lines in the rearview camera image help you to park and maneuver ⇨ *page 151*.

The **peripheral cameras** are an addition to the rearview camera and help you to see various areas around the vehicle while parking and maneuvering ⇨ *page 151*.

The **rear cross-traffic assist** can warn you of approaching cross traffic when driving in reverse or exiting a parking space ⇨ *page 155*.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Tips

Practicing parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the systems is recommended. Practice parking in good light and weather conditions.

Parking system plus

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

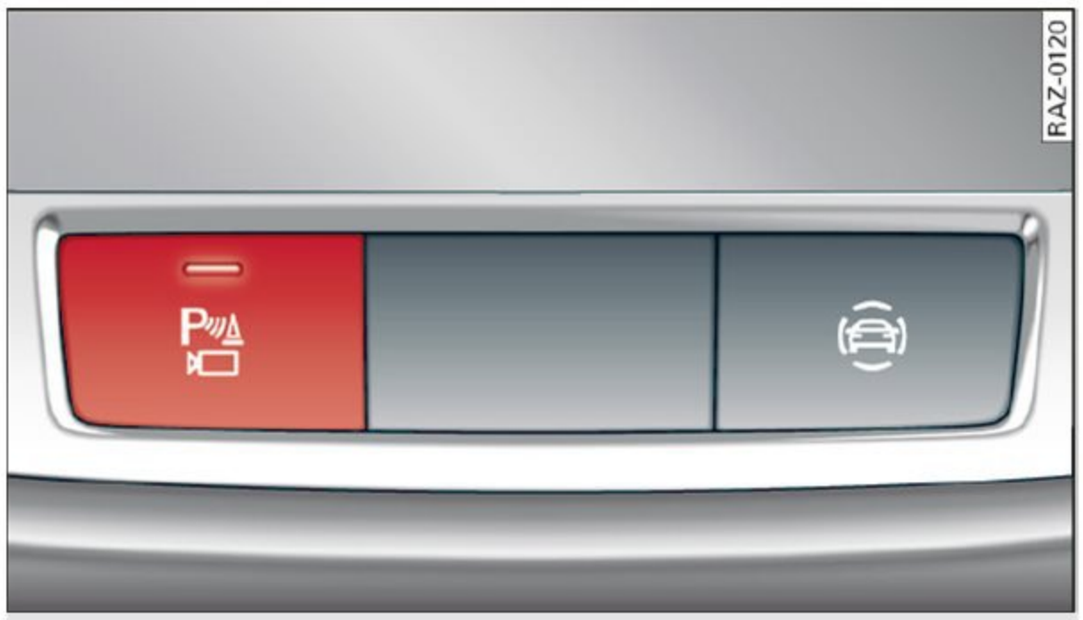


Fig. 115 Center console: parking aid button (example)

The parking system plus uses audio and visual warnings to help you avoid obstacles when parking.

Switching on and off

Requirement: the vehicle speed must be under approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

- ▸ Press the P or P button in the center console. When switching on, a brief tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching on automatically

- ▸ The system switches on automatically when reverse gear is engaged while the engine is running. A brief tone will sound.
- ▸ If **Automatic activation** is switched on in the MMI and if the vehicle approaches) an obstacle at speeds below approximately 6 mph (10 km/h), the parking aid will switch on automatically. Audible signals will sound once the obstacle is within the sensor detection area.

Switching off automatically

The distance indicator for the parking system plus switches off automatically when driving forward faster than 6 mph (10 km/h).

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Note

Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.

Tips

If the parking aid is switched off, it can only be reactivated automatically when one of the following conditions is met:

– The vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h)
– The ignition is switched off and back on again
– The parking brake is set and then released
– The "P" gear is engaged and released again

Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

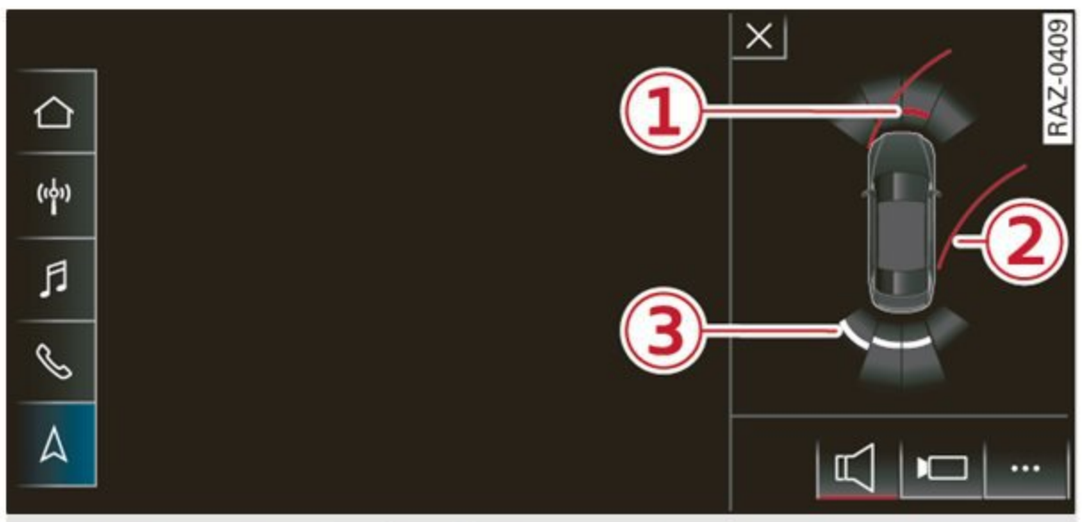


Fig. 116 Upper display: distance indicator

If the sensors detect an obstacle, audible and visual signals will warn you.

Audio signals

The closer your vehicle gets to a detected obstacle, the shorter the time between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when an obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 m) away from the front or rear of the vehicle. A continuous tone sounds when an obstacle is less than approximately 0.7 feet (0.20 m) away from the sides* of the vehicle. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ (!).

The audio warnings can be switched off until the next time the parking aid is switched on by pressing 🔇 on the upper display. The volume can be changed in the settings [...] ⇨ *page 156*.

Visual warnings

The visual warnings in the upper display help you to detect the critical vehicle area and to estimate the distance to an obstacle.

Red segments (1) show detected obstacles that are in your vehicle's path. The red lines (2) mark the expected direction of travel based on the steering angle. A white segment (3) indicates a detected obstacle that is outside of the vehicle's path. As your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle, the segments move closer to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Obstacles in the collision area, including those outside of the vehicle's path, are shown in red. Do not continue driving farther.

Error messages

If a sensor or speaker is faulty, P will appear in the MMI. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

If 🖐 is displayed in the MMI, the ultrasonic sensor indicated is icy or dirty. Clean the area covering the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 114, fig. 87*.

If the P indicator light turns on, there is a system malfunction and some parking system plus functions may not be available. The displayed message indicates the cause and possible solutions. Try switching the systems on again later. If the message indicates that the system view is limited, the weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area covering the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 114, fig. 87*. If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
– Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be ▶

detected with limitations may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

Note

Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.

Tips

– The side area (5)* ⇨ *page 114, fig. 88* is detected and evaluated when passing. There may have been changes to the surrounding area after switching the ignition off and on again, after opening the doors, or if the vehicle is left stationary for a period of time. In this case, the area will appear black until the area has been detected and evaluated.
– If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually lowers after a few seconds until it is muted (this does not apply to the continuous tone). If the obstacle comes closer than it was before the sound was muted, the tone will sound again. If the obstacle becomes farther away than it was before the sound was muted, no tone will sound. Pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings when you start to drive.

Rearview camera and peripheral cameras

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera/peripheral cameras

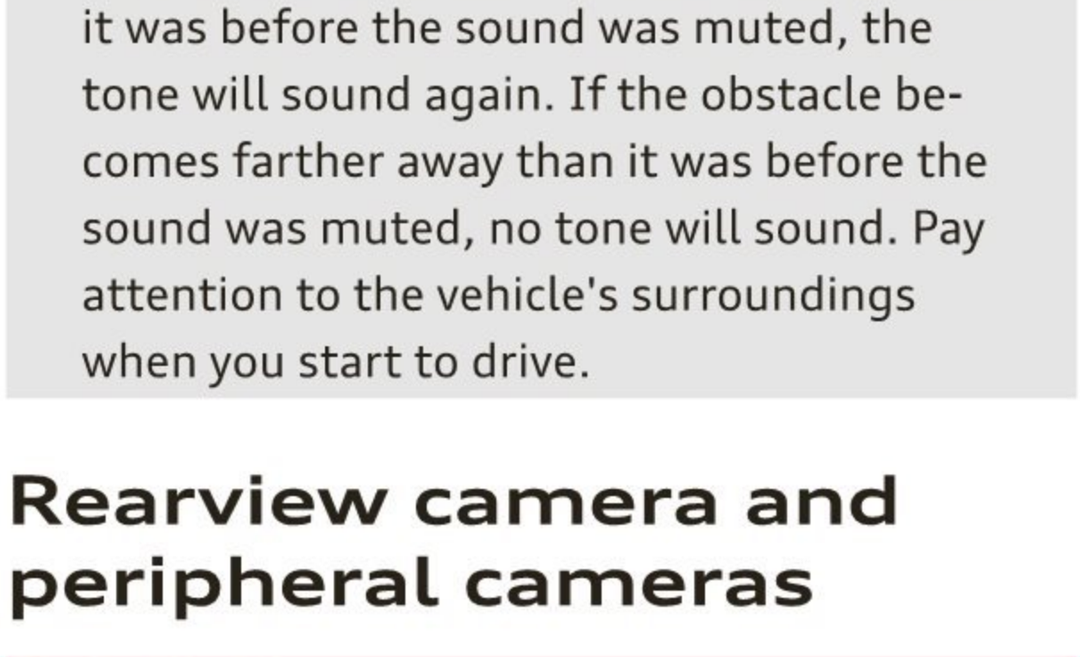


Fig. 117 Diagram: lines to aid in parking

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a rearview camera or multiple peripheral cameras may be available.

The **rearview camera** helps you to park or maneuver using the orientation lines.

The **peripheral cameras** expand the vehicle overview to include various views around the vehicle that can be selected.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera/peripheral cameras



Fig. 118 Center console: parking aid button

Switching on and off

Requirement for vehicles with rearview camera: The vehicle speed must be below approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

Requirement for vehicles with peripheral cameras: The vehicle speed must be below approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

- Press the P button in the center console. When switching on, a brief tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on. Or
- Select on the upper display if the visual distance indicator is shown ⇨ *page 150, fig. 116*.

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically when reverse gear is engaged while the engine is running. A brief tone will sound. ▶

Switching off automatically

The system switches off automatically when driving forward faster than 6 mph (10 km/h).

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.

Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera/peripheral cameras

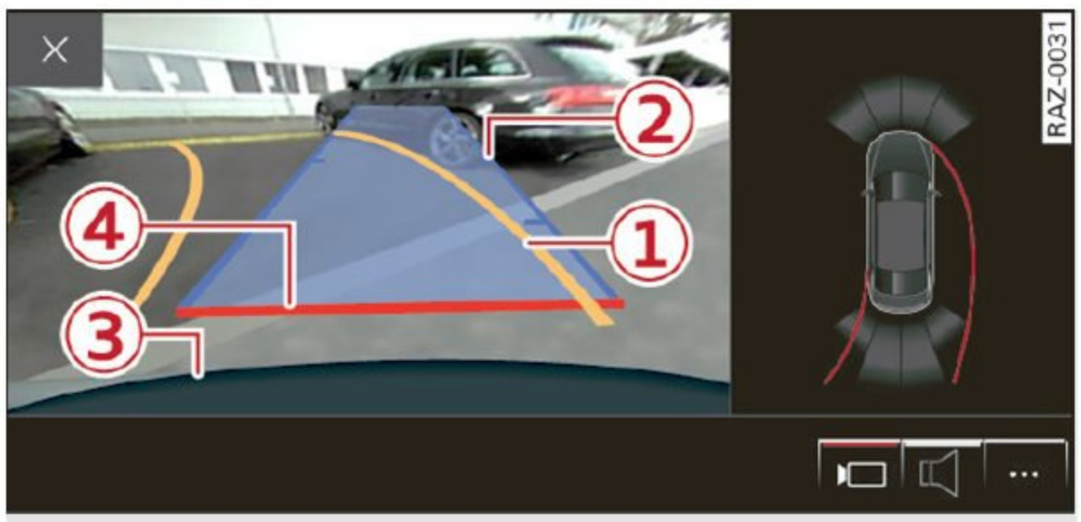


Fig. 119 Upper display: aiming at a parking space

When parking with the rearview camera or peripheral camera, the parking system plus audio and visual warnings* will also assist you ⇨ *page 150*.

For vehicles with peripheral cameras, the area surrounding the vehicle is shown on the right side of the display. You can switch between the optical display and camera image ⇨ *page 156*.

Visual orientation lines

① The orange orientation lines show the vehicle's direction of travel ⇨ (!). Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines align with the parking space.

② Use the blue markings to help you estimate the distance to an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 ft (1 m). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear.

③ You can recognize the rear bumper in the lower display.

④ You should stop driving in reverse when the red orientation line touches the edge of an object, at the latest.

Symbols

If /// is displayed and the display area represented by that symbol is not available, then the camera on the that side is not available. The power exterior mirrors may have been folded in or a door or the luggage compartment lid may have been opened.

If is displayed, there is a system malfunction and the display area represented by that symbol is not available. The camera is not working in this area.

If is displayed, the respective ultrasonic sensor is icy or dirty. Clean the area covering the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 114, fig. 87*.

If one of the symbols continues to be displayed, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
– Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

Note

– The orange orientation lines ① show the direction the rear of the vehicle will be traveling, based on on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.
– Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.
– Only use the images provided by the camera on the rear of the vehicle when the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on ▶

the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with air suspension: The accuracy of the orientation lines and blue surfaces on the camera display decreases when the vehicle is raised or lowered with the air suspension.

Operating the peripheral cameras

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

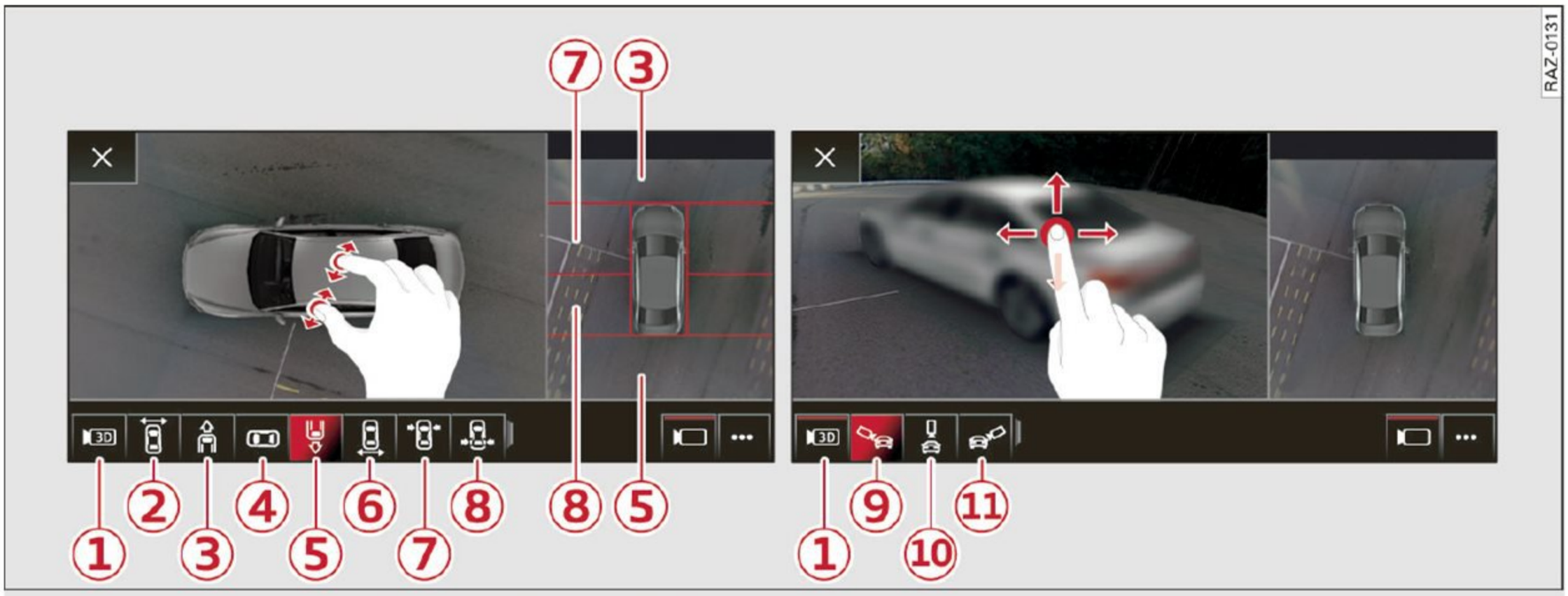


Fig. 120 Upper display: left side: surrounding area. Right side: 3D surroundings.

On vehicles with peripheral cameras, you can select among different views.

The camera views can be controlled with the touch display. In certain views, you can zoom in or out on the displayed area, and move, tilt, or rotate the **3D surroundings**.

Selecting the views

- ▸ To display the entire selection bar, tap the current view ② or swipe at the edge of the selection bar from left to right [1)].
- ▸ To select a view, select the desired view ② - ⑧ on the upper display, or tap in an area on the side **View** of the screen [2)].
- ▸ To select a **3D surroundings** view, first press the 3D symbol ① and then the desired **3D surroundings** view ⑨ - ⑪.

Switching the views quickly

To switch the views quickly (for example, from **Corner view (front)** to **Front**):

- ▸ Press the camera image twice. Or
- ▸ Pull two fingers apart or together in a sideways motion on the camera image.

Zooming in and out on the views

Applies to: surroundings and 3D surroundings views

- ▸ To zoom in or out on an area, place two fingers on that area and push them apart or pull them together ⇨ *fig. 120*, left side.

Moving the view

Applies to: surroundings and 3D surroundings views

- ▸ To move the view, press and pull it in any direction using one finger. ▶

1) Depending on the country: perform the gesture in the opposite direction. The sequence of views may vary. However, the symbols that label the views are the same.

2) Requirement: the vehicle surroundings (**Camera**) must be selected and visible in the side **View** of the screen ⇨ *page 156*.

► To re-center the **3D surroundings**, press twice on the camera image.

Tilting or rotating the views

Applies to: 3D surroundings view

► To tilt or rotate the **3D surroundings**, use your finger to drag it in any direction ⇨ *fig. 120*, on the right side.

► To re-center the **3D surroundings** behind the vehicle, press twice on the camera image.

	Symbol/Description	Description
①	3D	Switch between **3D surroundings** and **Surroundings**
②	**Corner view (front)** or display the selection bar	This view makes it easier to drive out of tight parking spaces or areas and intersections with poor visibility. It shows an almost 180° panorama view in front of the vehicle.
③	**Front**	This view assists you in using the full area for maneuvering in front of the vehicle.
④	**Surroundings**	This view helps you to maneuver and position the vehicle more precisely. The area around the vehicle is shown using the camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system ⇨ ⚠.
⑤	**Rear**	This view assists you in using the full area for maneuvering behind the vehicle. This is the rearview camera image.
⑥	**Corner view (rear)**	This view can assist you when driving out of tight parking spaces or areas with poor visibility. It shows an almost 180° panorama view behind the vehicle.
⑦	**Front tires**	This view helps you to see the distance between the front tires and the curb and the steering wheel angle when parking.
⑧	**Rear tires**	This view helps you to detect the distance between the rear wheels and the curb when parking.
⑨ ⑩ ⑪	**3D surroundings**	In these views, you can see the areas surrounding the vehicle in 3D when parking. The vehicle surrounding views are created from the camera images and sensor data. The vehicle image is shown by the system ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
– The **Surroundings** and **3D surroundings** are created from the individual camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.

Note

Only use the images provided by the camera on the rear of the vehicle when the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.

Tips

– Depending on the selected gear, it will automatically switch between the **Front** and **Rear** views. If you switch the view manually, ▶

the automatic front/rear camera change will be temporarily deactivated.
– When first activated while a forward gear is engaged, the **Corner view (front)** is displayed.

Rear cross-traffic assist

Applies to: vehicles with rear cross-traffic assist

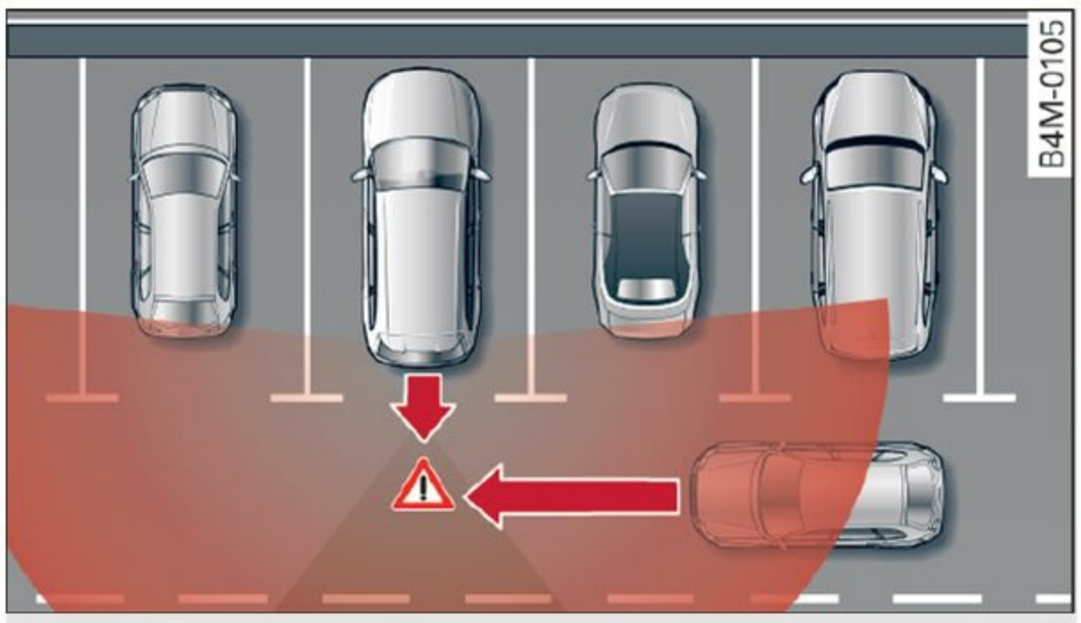


Fig. 121 Diagram: rear cross-traffic assist

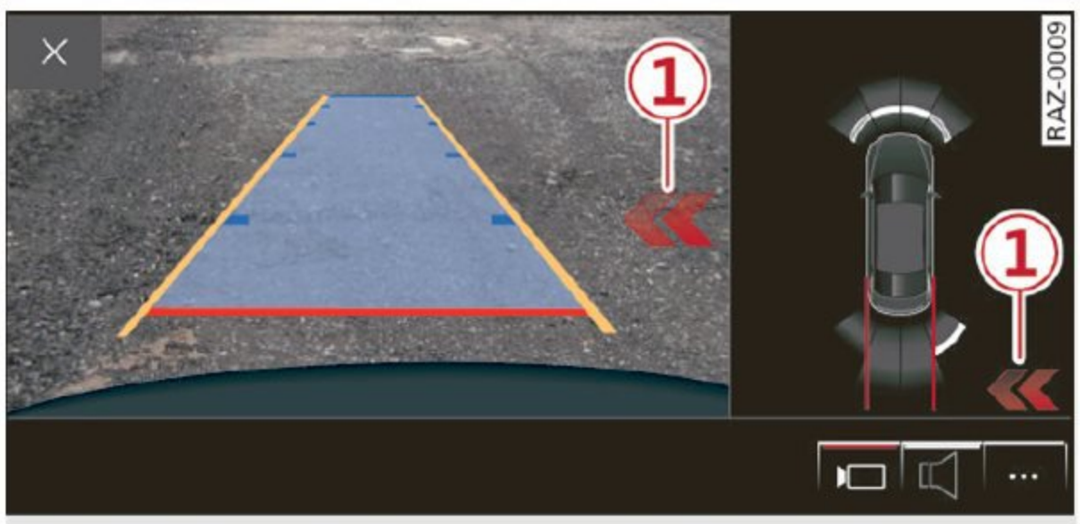


Fig. 122 Upper display: rear cross-traffic assist display

The rear cross-traffic assist can warn you of a potential collision with approaching cross-traffic detected when driving in reverse. Within the limits of the system, the system monitors the areas behind and next to the vehicle using the radar sensors when exiting a parking space. Moving objects that are approaching, such as cars, are detected ⇨ *fig. 121* ⇨ ⚠.

Requirements for using the rear cross-traffic assist:

– The rear cross-traffic assist must be switched on in the parking system settings in the MMI ⇨ *page 156*.
– Reverse gear must be engaged and the speed while driving in reverse must not be higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).

Displays, warnings, and braking

– **Display**: the indicator ① in the upper display only appears when the parking aid is activated. For vehicles with peripheral cameras, this only happens in the **Rear** and **Corner view (rear)** camera views. Arrows show the direction from which the cross traffic is approaching.
– **Audible warnings**: a continuous tone may sound as an additional warning when driving in reverse.
– **Automatic brake activation**: if you do not react to a warning, a brief braking by the system can warn you of a potential collision with an approaching object.

The audible warning signal and the automatic brake activation occur only when driving in reverse.

Messages

If the / indicator light turns on or if is displayed, then the rear cross-traffic assist functions are not available. The displayed message indicates the cause and possible solutions. If the message indicates that the system view is limited, the weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area covering the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 114, fig. 87*. If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113*.
– The rear cross-traffic assist will not provide alerts about people and cannot warn you about every type of approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the traffic as well as the vehicle's surroundings with direct eye contact.
– The system may not react if objects are approaching very quickly.
– The rear cross-traffic assist will not provide alerts if your vehicle is parallel parked or if your vehicle is pulled too far into the ▶

parking space so that it is hidden by adjacent vehicles.

Tips

– Once an automatic brake activation occurs, the system cannot initiate another activation for several seconds.
– If there is an acoustic warning signal from the rear cross-traffic assist, then the parking system may not warn you of detected obstacles under certain circumstances.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 289*.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Adjusting the parking aids

You can adjust the parking aid to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Parking aid**. Or
▸ Applies to: MMI: Select ··· on the upper display when the parking aid is active.

Possible settings:

Activating automatically

View – switch between the visual display (**Graphic**) and vehicle surroundings (**Camera**) in the side view on the screen.

Clean rearview camera – starts the cleaning of the rearview camera.

Front volume – volume for the front area.

Rear volume – volume for the rear area.

Entertainment fader – the volume of the audio/video source is lowered when the parking system is turned on.

The new value is given briefly during the adjustment.

Rear cross-traffic assist

Telephone

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone

To make calls in your vehicle using the Multi Media Interface (MMI), you have various options depending on the vehicle equipment and the range of functions on your mobile device.

Handsfree

After you have connected your mobile device to the MMI via Bluetooth, you can use the handsfree system and operate telephone functions through your MMI. You can make calls using the antenna on your mobile device.

Car phone function*[1)]

Applies to: MMI with car phone

In conjunction with Audi connect (Infotainment)*, the car phone function is available via a separate mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* or an SAP[2)]-capable cell phone.

With the car phone function and the Audi phone box*, calls are made using the exterior antenna on the vehicle. Using the external antenna helps when there is a low signal and also provides better reception quality ⇨ *page 161*.

WARNING

- Medical experts warn that mobile devices can interfere with the function of pacemakers. Always maintain a minimum distance of about 8 inches (20 cm) between the mobile device antenna and the pacemaker:
  - Do not carry the mobile device in a pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  - Switch the mobile device off immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with the pacemaker.
- Do not use the voice recognition system* ⇨ *page 25* in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may take longer to dial the number or may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.
- Switch your mobile device off in areas where there is a risk of an explosion. These locations are not always clearly marked. This may include gas stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles, or locations where fuel vapors (such as propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour, sawdust or metal) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where you would normally turn your vehicle engine off.
- The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 18, Traffic safety information*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

- The Bluetooth connection range is limited to inside the vehicle. It can also be affected by local conditions and interference with other devices.
- To learn which Bluetooth connections and which of the functions in your mobile device are supported, check with your mobile device service provider or the database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth.
- If you use the car phone*, it is recommended to use the Wi-Fi hotspot* in the vehicle ⇨ *page 176* so that the apps on your mobile device continue to have Internet access.

1) Not available in every market. In conjunction with Audi connect (Infotainment)* and Audi phone box*.

2) SIM Access Profile

Setup

Connecting a mobile device to the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone

Requirement

The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection setup.

The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 220* and mobile device must be switched on.

The mobile device that will be connected must not be connected to any other Bluetooth device.

The MMI must only be connected to one mobile device.

Connecting a mobile device

- ▸ Press **PHONE** on the home screen.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions. The available Bluetooth devices will be displayed after several seconds.
- ▸ Press on the desired mobile device in the list of displayed Bluetooth devices.
- ▸ To update the list, press ⟳.
- ▸ A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be generated.
- ▸ Confirm the PIN on your mobile device, or
- ▸ Enter the PIN for connecting on your cell phone. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.
- ▸ Enter your SIM card PIN in the MMI [1].
- ▸ Pay attention to any additional system prompts displayed on your mobile device or the MMI, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the mobile device, you may also need to download contacts and confirm access to your messages separately.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, information about the connected profiles will appear. You can also change the profiles later ⇨ *page 220*.

In addition, the mobile device contacts will be automatically loaded into the MMI. This process can take several minutes, depending on the number of contacts.

You can also access the telephone functions in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 171*.

Applies to: MMI with Audi connect (Infotainment)

- ▸ You have connected your mobile device successfully to the MMI with the Bluetooth SIM Access Profile. To use Audi connect Infotainment services, you can use the embedded SIM card [2][3] or your personal SIM card.
- ▸ Confirm the system prompt with **Yes** or **No**. Additional information on Audi connect (Infotainment) can be found under ⇨ *page 173*.

No: all data connections for all Audi connect Infotainment services are established through the embedded SIM card[2] [3] by a cell phone service provider ⇨ *page 173*. Your mobile device is only connected via the **handsfree** profile. You will not be able to use the car phone function*.

Yes: all data connections for all Audi connect Infotainment services will run through your personal SIM card. All connections through the embedded SIM card[2] will be disconnected. You will be able to use the car phone function*.

You can use the Audi connect Infotainment services.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*. ▶

1) Not available in every market. Applies to mobile devices with Bluetooth SIM Access Profile in conjunction with Audi connect (Infotainment)* and Audi phone box*.

2) SIM card installed in the vehicle at the factory.

3) Not available in every market.

Tips

- You can apply additional settings to connected mobile devices under **Connected devices** ⇨ *page 219*.
- You can also search for the MMI on your mobile device using the Bluetooth device search.
- You only have to pair your device one time. Bluetooth devices that are already paired automatically connect to the MMI when the Bluetooth function is switched on, when they are within range, and when the ignition is switched on. The last connected mobile device is given first priority.
- Authorizing the MMI connection on your mobile device will make it possible to connect automatically.
- Pay attention to any system prompts displayed on your mobile device or the MMI, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the mobile device, you may also need to download contacts and confirm access to your messages separately.
- You will receive the PIN (SIM) and the PUK (Personal Unlocking Key) along with the SIM card from your cell phone service provider. If you enter a PIN (SIM) incorrectly three times[1)] in a row, the SIM card will be locked and must be unlocked by entering the PUK.
- When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the mobile device will automatically disconnect. Depending on your mobile device, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your mobile device so that you can continue the call on your phone.
- You can obtain more information from your mobile device service provider or from your mobile device user guide. For information on using the telephone, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Operating two mobile devices through the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone

You can connect two mobile devices to the MMI, for example your business and your personal mobile device. You can use both mobile devices to make calls in the vehicle.

Connecting an additional mobile device

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI, or a mini SIM card[2)] must be inserted in the SIM card reader*.

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > . Follow the system instructions, or
- ▸ Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Telephone 1** or **Telephone 2** > **New connection**.

See ⇨ *page 158, Connecting a mobile device to the MMI*.

Using the mini SIM card in the SIM card reader*

See ⇨ *page 160, Making calls with a personal mini SIM card*.

Switching between two mobile devices

Requirement: telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected.

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > . **Switch telephones:** the device name of your active mobile device is displayed.

Tips

- If you have two mobile devices connected to the MMI via Bluetooth, telephone 2 will be disconnected if you insert a separate mini SIM card for making calls in the SIM card reader*.
- The device name of the active mobile device (such as myPhone) will be displayed in the **PHONE** menu.

1) The number of attempts depends on the SIM card.

2) Not available in every market. In conjunction with Audi connect (Infotainment)* and Audi phone box*.

– If telephone 1 does not connect automatically to the MMI when the ignition is switched on, you can use a previously-connected telephone 2 in the **PHONE** menu via .
– You can send and receive messages on telephone 1 as well as on telephone 2 ⇨ *page 167*.
– On mobile devices with multi-SIM functionality, the MMI only accesses one SIM card. You can switch between SIM cards using the mobile device.

Making calls with a personal mini SIM card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment) and Audi phone box

The SIM card reader is in the storage compartment under the front center armrest.

For this telephone option[1)], you can be reached at the number assigned to your personal mini SIM card in the SIM card reader. Depending on the type of mini SIM card, it may have the same phone number as your mobile device on the existing mobile network contract (twin/multi SIM card) or another phone number from a separate mobile network contract.

Using a personal mini SIM card

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ The angled corner of the mini SIM card must be at the left front corner of the card. Insert the mini SIM card into the SIM card reader slot until the mini SIM card locks into place.
- ▸ When prompted by the MMI, enter the PIN for your mini SIM card in the MMI.
- ▸ Press **OK**.
- ▸ To connect automatically in the future, press **Yes**.
- ▸ Applies to: using a personal SIM card: Press on the **Car phone (SIM)** or **Personal mob. device (BT)** connection type.

Car phone (SIM): this will use the exterior antenna on the vehicle. Your personal mini SIM card in the SIM card reader will be used for phone calls and Audi connect (Infotainment)*.

Personal mob. device (BT): the vehicle's exterior antenna will only be used in connection with the Audi phone box. Your personal mini SIM card in the SIM card reader will only be used for Audi connect (Infotainment)*.

You can also select if a data connection should also be established for Audi connect Infotainment services*. Refer to the information on activating Audi connect (Infotainment) ⇨ *page 173*.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, the signal strength and connection type will be displayed in the MMI status bar ② ⇨ *page 19, fig. 16*.

Switching between the mini SIM card and your mobile device

Requirement: a mini SIM card must be inserted in the SIM card reader.

- ▸ Press in the **PHONE** menu. **Switch telephones: show SIM card**. The device name of your active mobile device will be displayed.

Removing the mini SIM card

- ▸ Press on the mini SIM card briefly.

Note

– To reduce the risk of damaging the SIM card reader, only use mini SIM cards (25 mm x 15 mm). Contact your cell phone service provider for more information on mini SIM cards.
– If a SIM card of a different size is inserted in the SIM card reader instead of a mini SIM card, do not under any circumstances remove this card yourself due to the risk of damaging the SIM card reader. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– There is a risk of damaging the SIM card reader if you use a SIM card adapter, because vibrations can cause the SIM card to fall out of the adapter while driving. ▶

1) Not available in every market.

Tips

If your personal mini SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader* and is used to make phone calls, you can access contacts on another mobile device ⇨ *page 219*.

Using the Audi phone box

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

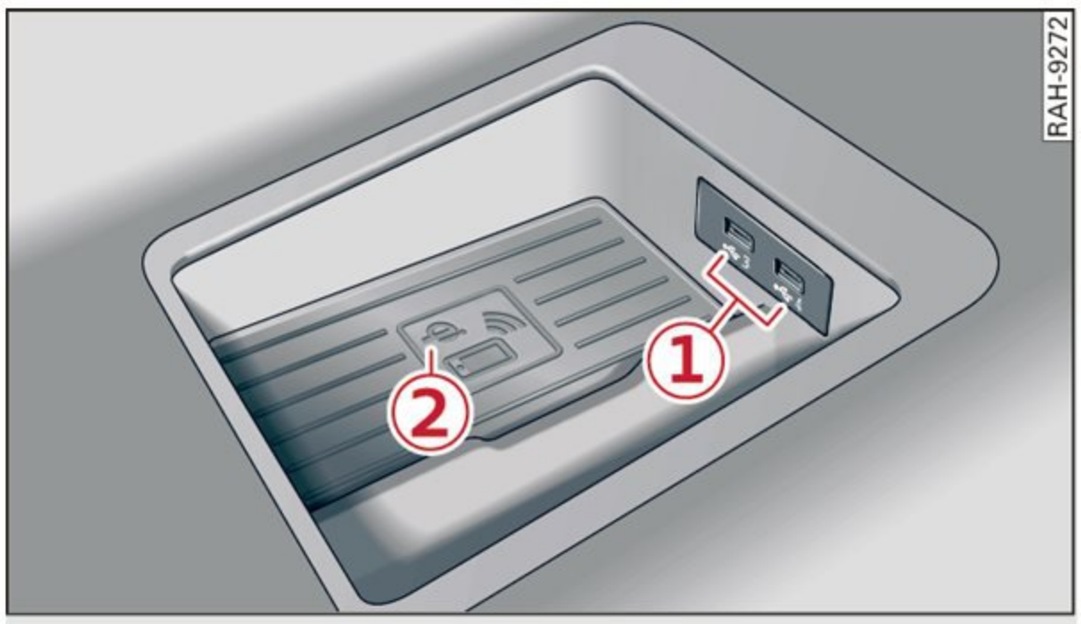


Fig. 123 Storage compartment under the center armrest: Audi phone box with connections (diagram)

You can charge your mobile device battery wirelessly* using the Audi phone box. You can make calls through the exterior antenna* on the vehicle. Using the external antenna* helps when there is a low signal and also provides better reception quality.

– **Audi phone box**: position the mobile device centered on the symbol ② ⇨ *fig. 123* with the display facing up in the Audi phone box.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may then be able to use the following functions:

– **Connect to the external vehicle antenna***[1)]
– **Wirelessly* charge the mobile device**. Requirement: the charging function must be switched on. You must have a Qi-capable[2)] mobile device.

When the device reminder signal is switched on, you will be notified that your mobile device is still in the Audi phone box when you leave the vehicle.

Requirement:

– A Qi-capable[2)] mobile device must be in the Audi phone box, or
– Your mobile device must be connected to the Audi music interface by a USB adapter, and the Audi smartphone interface must be active, or
– Your iPhone® must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth® ⇨ *page 158* and must be charging through the Audi music interface using a USB adapter.

Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Device reminder signal**.

The following settings are available:

– **Signal tone**
– **Spoken cue***: this setting is switched on at the factory.
– **Off**
– **Show pop-ups**: when this function is switched on, the charge status of your mobile device is displayed. You will also be reminded not to forget your mobile device when leaving the vehicle. Messages will appear in the MMI when using your Audi phone box in the front*.
– **Front wireless charging***: when the function is switched on, you can charge your Qi-capable mobile device wirelessly in the front* Audi phone box.

Charging a mobile device using the USB adapter: connect your mobile device to the Audi music interface using a USB adapter cable ① ⇨ *fig. 123*. You can charge your mobile device using specific USB adapters ⇨ *page 207, fig. 141*.

WARNING

– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.
– The mobile device may become hot during wireless charging. Pay attention to the ▶

1) Not available in every market. These are additional car phone functions only in conjunction with Audi connect (Infotainment)*.
2) The Qi standard makes it possible to charge your mobile device wirelessly.

temperature of your mobile device and be careful when removing it from the Audi phone box.
– An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Maintain a minimum distance of approximately 2.4 in (6 cm) to the Audi phone box charging plate. The thresholds for prolonged exposure at this distance comply with ICNIRP1998. Therefore, interactions such as irritation of sensory organs, malfunctions of active implants (such as pacemakers, infusion pumps, or neurostimulators) or effects on passive implants (such as prosthetic limbs) is highly unlikely. If you have an implant, consult a medical specialist if you have any questions. You can also switch the function for wireless charging in the Audi phone box on and off separately for the front* and rear*. You can continue to charge your mobile device using a cable connection.

Tips

– The Audi phone box is not available in all countries. For additional information, contact an authorized Audi dealership.
– Make sure there are no objects between the Audi phone box and the mobile device.
– Placing the mobile device in a bag or protective sleeve inside the Audi phone box can interfere with the connection to the external antenna*.
– Metallic objects in the Audi phone box block the wireless* charging of your mobile device and calls using the exterior antenna*.
– The charging time and temperature will vary depending on the mobile device being used.
– Your mobile device can only be charged in the Audi phone box when the ignition is switched on.
– To reduce the risk of malfunctions, make sure the mobile device is positioned correctly in the Audi phone box.
– The maximum charging output is 5 watts.
– Strong transmission quality cannot be guaranteed if more than one mobile device is in the box.*
– Only one mobile device at a time can be charged wirelessly* in the Audi phone box.
– Audi recommends using Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi has verified their reliability, safety, and suitability.
– You can purchase a USB adapter from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or at specialty stores.

Using the telephone

Opening the telephone

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone

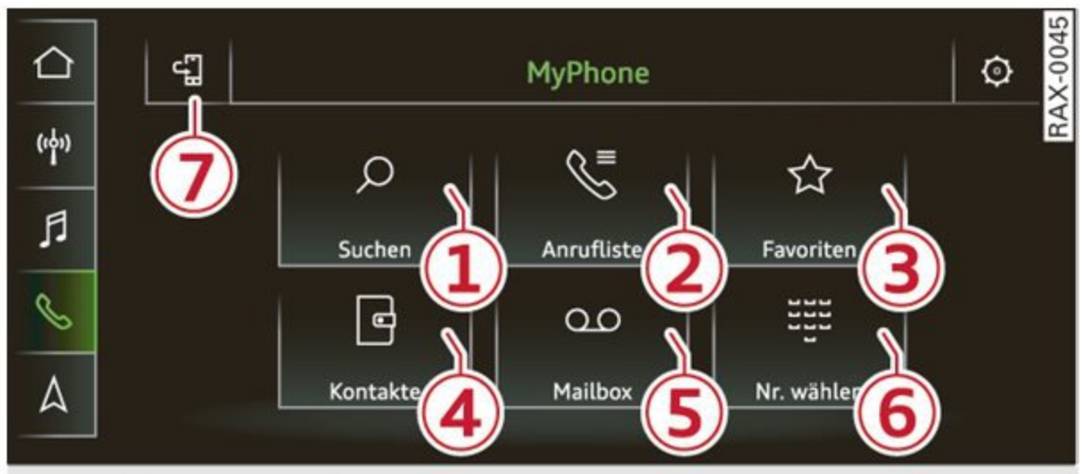


Fig. 124 MMI: selection menu

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 158*, or a mini SIM card must be inserted in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 160*.

► Press **PHONE** on the home screen.

The following telephone functions will be available ⇨ *fig. 124*:

① Search
② Call list ⇨ *page 163*
③ Favorites ⇨ *page 163*
④ Contacts ⇨ *page 163*
⑤ Voicemail ⇨ *page 165*
⑥ Dial number ⇨ *page 165*
⑦ Switching between two mobile devices ⇨ *page 169*

The device name for your mobile device, such as MyPhone, is displayed in the **PHONE** menu ⇨ *fig. 124*.

Call list

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone



Fig. 125 MMI: dialing a phone number from the call list

▸ Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Call list**.

Requirement: the call list must contain at least one phone number.

Call list symbols ⇨ *fig. 125*:

① Missed calls
② Dialed numbers
③ Received calls
④ Edit call list
⑤ Displaying a business card ⇨ *page 164*
⑥ Number of interactions with a contact or a number

If more than one interaction with a number has already taken place, the last one is always displayed in the form of an arrow ①, ② or ③ ⇨ *fig. 125*.

Press and hold a contact or a phone number in the list until the **Options** menu appears. Depending on your mobile device, the following options may be available:

– **Save as a shortcut**: see ⇨ *page 21, Shortcuts*.
– **Edit number**: edit a phone number before dialing it. Press **Dial** and start the call.
– **Show history**: Requirement: you must have already had more than one interaction with a contact. All interactions with a contact or a number are displayed.
– **Store as favorite**: see ⇨ *page 163*.
– **Send text message**: see ⇨ *page 167*.
– **Send e-mail**: see ⇨ *page 168*.

Tips

The call list can only be edited via the MMI.

Favorites

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone

You can store the desired number for a contact as a shortcut in the favorites bar.

Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Favorites**.

Storing an existing phone number as a favorite:

▸ Press **Call list**.
▸ Press on a contact in the list until the **Options** menu appears.
▸ Press **Store as favorite**. **The favorite has been stored** will appear briefly.

Deleting stored favorites

▸ Select: **Favorites** > ✎ > *one or multiple favorites*, or **Select all** > **Delete**.
▸ Press **Done**.

Tips

– The names of the favorites in the MMI match the names of the contacts.
– Stored favorites on the mobile device will not appear on the MMI.
– If there are multiple mobile devices, you can create separate favorites in the MMI for each mobile device.

Accessing the contacts

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone



Fig. 126 MMI: example: business card

You can connect multiple mobile devices to the MMI or use mini SIM cards with the SIM card reader*, and you can manage up to four private directories in the MMI.

After connecting a mobile device, the mobile device contacts are imported into the MMI. ▶

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 158*. You must have at least one contact stored in your mobile device.

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Contacts**, or
- ▸ Select **NAVIGATION** > **Contacts**

Contacts are displayed in alphabetical order and can be sorted by first or last name ⇨ *page 170*, **Sort order**.

Displaying a business card

To open a business card, press on a contact in the directory. The business card shows you details about a contact.

If you press on a contact in the business card, there are multiple options available:

① Store as favorite ⇨ *page 163, Favorites*
② Options
③ Call
④ Send text message ⇨ *page 167*
⑤ Start navigation
⑥ Send e-mail ⇨ *page 168*

Business card options

Press ②.

– **Send contact***: you can select **Text message** or **E-mail** ⇨ *page 167*.
– **Add destination**: you can add a business or private address. Also see ⇨ *page 190, Contacts as navigation destinations*.
– **Read out name**[1)]: the MMI automatically creates a name tag that can be read aloud for each entry ⇨ *page 25*.
– **Save as a shortcut**: see ⇨ *page 21, Shortcuts*.

Contact options

Press on a contact in the list until the **Options** menu appears.

– **Send contact**: you can select **Text message** or **E-mail** ⇨ *page 167*.
– **Send text message**: see ⇨ *page 167*.
– **Send e-mail**: see ⇨ *page 168*.
– **Store as favorite**: see ⇨ *page 163*.
– **Save as a shortcut**: see ⇨ *page 21, Shortcuts*.

Deleting contacts

– **Deleting all contacts**: select: **Contacts** > ✎ > **Delete all**. All contacts are deleted only in the MMI.
– **Deleting imported contacts**: requirement: you must have imported at least one contact. Select: **Contacts** > ✎ > *one or more contacts*, or **Select all** > **Delete import.** > **Done**. The imported contacts are deleted.

Tips

– Pay attention to any synchronization prompts on your mobile device when importing contacts. Requests to synchronize the contacts must be confirmed so that your mobile device contacts can be loaded into the MMI.
– The contact display in the MMI depends on the mobile device being used. For more information on supported mobile devices, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Only the contacts of the mobile device being actively used are displayed.
– The contacts from the mobile device may not be transferred in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with different first letters may be missing in the MMI.
– If your personal mini SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 160*, the SIM card entries and the contacts in the local MMI memory are displayed.
– If your personal mini SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader* and is used to make phone calls, you can access contacts on another mobile device ⇨ *page 219*.
– If contacts are loaded from the mobile device into the MMI, the contacts on the SIM card will no longer be displayed in the MMI.
– The contacts in the local MMI memory are always visible and can be accessed by other users. ▶

1) Not available in all languages.

– After switching off the ignition and exiting the vehicle, the mobile device directory will be loaded when the MMI is started again if the mobile device is within range and the Bluetooth function is switched on in the mobile device and the MMI. Otherwise, contacts from the mini SIM card inserted in the SIM card reader* will displayed in the MMI.
– Only the contacts in the local MMI memory can be deleted.

Listening to voicemail

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone

▸ Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Voicemail**.

Requirement: there must be no voicemail number stored.

– **Entering the voicemail number**: enter the desired number. Press **OK**.

Requirement: a voicemail number must be stored.

– **Dialing the voicemail number**: press **Voicemail**. The call begins immediately.

Tips

– This service must be set up and activated in advance by the cell phone service provider. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
– The voicemail number depends on the cell phone service provider.

Dialing a phone number

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone

You can enter the phone number using the MMI ⇨ *page 22, Text input* or dictate it with the voice recognition system* ⇨ *page 25*.

Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth.

▸ Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Dial number** > *the emergency call number specific to the country (for example, 911)* > **Select**.

WARNING

– Because your phone works with radio signals, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely on only your phone when it comes to essential communication (such as a medical emergency).
– Always follow the instructions given by the emergency personnel during an emergency call and only end the call when they instruct you to do so.

Tips

Emergency numbers are not the same everywhere. Find out which emergency number is used in your current location.

Accepting or ending a call

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone

You have the following options:

– **Answering an incoming call**: press **Answer**.
– **Declining a call**: press **Decline**.
– **Declining a call with a text message***: press **Decline with text message**.
– **Silencing the ringtone**: press **Mute**.

Caller information: the name, phone number or **Unknown** will appear in the MMI depending on if the caller has been stored as a contact and if the phone number has been transmitted. A picture may also be displayed, depending on whether you have assigned a picture to a contact in your directory and if it was transferred to your MMI. You can find out if your mobile device supports this function from your mobile device network provider, your mobile device owner's manual, or at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth.

Tips

– The radio or media playback is muted during a phone call.
– Missed calls are displayed with a symbol in the status bar of the MMI display ② ⇨ *page 19, fig. 16*.

During a phone call

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone

The following options may be possible during a call depending on the mobile device being used and the type of connection:

- **End call**: end the current phone call.
- **Mute**: the other person on the call will no longer be able to hear you. You will still be able to hear the other person. To switch the microphone back on, press **Unmute**.
- **Hold/Resume**: place your current phone call on hold and answer another.
- **Send tone sequence**: press **Numbers**. You can enter tone sequences (DTMF) and send them to the other party on the call.
- **Answering an incoming call**: if there is an incoming call while another call is active, you can select **Replace** to put the existing call on hold and answer the incoming call.
- **Declining an incoming call**: press **Decline** to decline an incoming call. If the cell phone service provider does not support two phone calls at the same time, you can replace the existing call with the incoming call.
- **Muting the incoming call**: press **Mute**.
- **Other call options**: press **More**.

Requirement: two phone calls must be in progress.

- **Conference call***: add a call on hold and up to five active parties (depending on the cell phone service provider) to the conference call.
- **Swap call**: alternate between two phone calls while one of the calls is on hold. Press on the respective call. Selecting **End call** will end the active phone call. A call that was placed on hold stays on hold and can be taken off hold with **Resume**.
- **Answering an incoming call**: if there is an incoming call while a call is active and another one is on hold, select **Replace** to replace the existing call with the incoming call.

Press **More**.

– **Transferring a call***: press **Transfer call to mobile device** to transfer the existing call from the MMI to your mobile device or Bluetooth® headset*.

– **Switching to hands-free mode***: Requirement: you must have a phone call in progress on your cell phone. Press **Switch to hands-free** to transfer the call from your cell phone back to the MMI.

– **Add call**: Select: **Call list/Contacts/Favorites** > *select an entry from the list* or press **Dial number** and enter a phone number. Then the active call will be on hold.

– **Remove member***: you can remove conference call members individually when a conference call is active. Press on the contact you would like to remove. The conference call may end depending on the cell phone service provider.

– **Microphone input level**: you can adjust the microphone input during a phone call using the slider.

Connected devices: see ⇨ *page 219*.

Telephone settings: see ⇨ *page 169*.

Tips

– To be notified of an incoming call during a phone call, the *call waiting* function in your mobile device must be switched on when using the **Handsfree** profile. You can obtain more information from your mobile device service provider or from your mobile device user guide.

– You can have one active call at a time.

– When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the mobile device will automatically disconnect. Depending on your mobile device, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your mobile device so that you can continue the call on your phone.

– The display of an incoming phone call in the MMI may still be visible for a few seconds after a call is answered or ignored depending on the mobile device in use.

Messages

Text messages

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and car phone function or mobile devices with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

Depending on the mobile device being used and the mobile network contract, you may be able to receive and send text messages using the MMI.

Requirement: a personal mini SIM card with messaging option must be inserted in the SIM card reader*, or your mobile device must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP) ⇨ *page 158*.

▸ Select on the home screen: **MESSAGES** > ✉ > **Text message (SIM)*/text message (telephone 1)/text message (telephone 2)***.

Inboxes

– **New text message**: press on a template in the list or dictate a text message. Press **Add** and select one or more recipients from your contacts. To remove a recipient, press **Delete**. Press **Send**.
– **Inbox**: displays all received text messages.
– **Sent**: displays all sent text messages.
– **Outbox**: displays all text messages to be sent.
– **Drafts***: text messages that have not been sent yet by the mobile device are displayed on the MMI.
– **Deleted***: deleted text messages are displayed.
– **User-defined***: folders defined by the user are transferred from your mobile device.

Message options

The following options are available when you select a text message:

– **Read out*** the text message[1)].
– **Reply**: a reply can be sent to the selected message in the **Inbox**.
– To switch to the previous or the next message, press ⏮ or ⏭.
– **More**: options

When you press **More**, the following options are available:

– **Call**: Requirement: a number must be stored. You can call the contact.
– **Forward**: the selected text message can be forwarded to other recipients. Text can also be added before sending.
– **Navigate**: Requirement: the contact must have a navigation address stored with it in the directory. You can start route guidance.
– **Extract numbers**: Requirement: the message must contain a correct number. You can extract a number from a text message.
– **Send again**: Requirement: the text message must be in the **Outbox**. The selected text message can be resent.

Press on an entry in the **Inbox** until the **Options** menu appears.

– **Reply**: a reply can be sent to the selected message in the **Inbox**.
– **Forward**: the selected text message can be forwarded to other recipients. Text can also be added before sending.

Settings

Press ⚙.

– **Automatically forward text message to mobile device***[2)]: when this function is switched on, text messages will also be automatically stored on your mobile device.
– **New text message notification**: when this function is switched on, you will be notified when new text messages are received. New text messages are indicated with an envelope ✉ in the MMI status bar.
– **Text message center***: the number for the text message center of your cell phone service provider is displayed. If no number has been stored yet, you can enter the text message center number. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
– **Delete text messages from SIM card***: if the memory capacity on the SIM card is full, an envelope with a line through it is displayed in the ▶

1) Not available in all languages.
2) Function is not supported on all mobile devices.

MMI status bar. You can continue to send text messages, but you cannot receive new text messages. To delete all sent text messages from the SIM card, select **All sent messages**. To delete all read text messages from the SIM card, select **All read messages**.

Delete text message

Select: *a mailbox* > ✎ > *one or more text messages* > **Delete** > **Done**.

Tips

- Please note that you may have to activate the receiving and sending of text messages depending on the SIM card being used (for example, when using a multi-SIM). You can obtain more information from your mobile device service provider or from your mobile device user guide.
- For more information on supported mobile devices, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- You need a mobile device with Message Access Profile that also supports the sending function to be able to send text messages through the MMI.
- Messages that are deleted in the MMI are also deleted in the mobile device automatically.
- Only new received messages may be displayed depending on your mobile device.

E-mail*

Applies to: MMI and mobile devices with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

Depending on the type of mobile device being used, you may be able to receive and send e-mails through the MMI.

Requirement: your mobile device must be connected to the MMI via the Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP) and handsfree profile ⇨ *page 158*. You can find out if your mobile device supports this function by checking your mobile device owner's manual.

▸ Select on the home screen: **MESSAGES** > (✉) > **E-mail (telephone 1)**/**E-mail (telephone 2)***.

Inboxes

– **New e-mail**: press on a template in the list. Press **Add** and select one or more recipients from your contacts. To remove one or all recipients, press **Delete**. Press **Send**.
– **Inbox**: displays all received e-mails. To update the list, press ↻.
– **Sent**: displays all sent e-mails.
– **Outbox**: displays all e-mails to be sent.
– **Drafts**: e-mails that have not been sent yet are displayed.
– **Deleted**: deleted e-mails are displayed.
– **User-defined***: folders defined by the user are transferred from your mobile device.

Message options

The following options are available when you select an e-mail:

– **Read out*** the e-mail[1)].
– **Reply**: a reply can be sent to the selected e-mail in the **Inbox**.
– To switch to the previous or the next message, press ⏮ or ⏭.
– **More**: more options

When you press **More**, the following options may be displayed depending on your mobile device and the applicable mail folder:

– **Call**: Requirement: a number must be stored. You can call the contact.
– **Forward**: the selected e-mail can be forwarded to other recipients. Text can also be added before sending.
– **Extract e-mail add.**: you can extract the e-mail address from an e-mail.
– **Navigate**: Requirement: the contact must have a navigation address stored with it in the directory. You can start route guidance.
– **Extract numbers**: Requirement: the text in the e-mail must contain a correct number. You can extract a number from an e-mail.
– **Show all recipients***: you can display the recipients of an e-mail. ▶

1) Not available in all languages.

– **Show attachmts.***: you can display a list of attachments to an e-mail.
– **Send again**: the selected e-mail in the **Outbox** and **Sent** mailboxes can be sent again.

Press on an entry in the **Inbox** until the **Options** menu appears.

– **Reply**: a reply can be sent to the selected e-mail.
– **Reply all**: a reply can be sent for the selected e-mail and it will be sent to all of the entered recipients.
– **Forward**: the selected e-mail can be forwarded to different recipients.

Settings

Press ⚙.

– **New e-mail notification**: when this function is switched on, you will be notified when new e-mails are received. New e-mails are indicated with an envelope ✉ in the MMI status bar.

Deleting e-mails

Select: *a mailbox* > ✎ > *one or more e-mails* > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

For more information on supported mobile devices, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Settings

Telephone settings

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone

▸ Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > ⚙.

Switching between two mobile devices

Requirement: telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected.

Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > 📱. **Switch telephones:** the device name of your active mobile device is displayed.

Declining a call with a text message*

When this function is switched on, you can decline an incoming call with a text message.

Call options*

The following settings may be available depending on the mobile device:

– **Call forwarding**: you can switch the forwarding of incoming calls to your voicemail or to another phone number on and off. You can check if the function is activated or deactivated with **Status**.
– **Call waiting**: you will be alerted to an incoming call during a phone call when the function is switched on. You can check if the function is activated or deactivated with **Status**.
– **Send own number**: sending your phone number with an outgoing call can be switched on and off. With the **Net.-depen.** setting, the setting listed in the contract with the cell phone service provider is used. The settings only apply to the **PHONE** menu in the MMI. Please note that the settings on your mobile device will apply after disconnecting the Bluetooth connection. You can determine which setting is active with **Status**.

Ringtone and volume settings

– **Ringtone and message volume**: you can adjust the volume of the selected ringtone and the notification volume when a message is received by moving the position of the slider.
– **Ringtone***: the ringtones are played using the **Ringtone** function. Press on an entry in the list.
– **Microphone input level**: you can adjust the microphone input during a phone call using the slider.

Turn on car phone or data module

Applies to: car phone/data module

When this function is switched on, you can use the car phone or data module.

As long as the car phone was *not* turned off separately the last time it was used, it will turn on automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Edit voicemail number

You can change your voicemail number. ▶

Enable VoLTE

When this function is switched on, Voice over LTE will be supported.

Network settings

– **Login to mobile phone network**: select to log into your cell phone service provider network automatically or manually.
– **Network selection**: Requirement: the data module must be switched on and **Login to mobile phone network** must be set to **Manual**. Select a network manually from the list of available networks at the present location.

Car phone serial number (IMEI):

Applies to: car phone

The serial number (IMEI) of your car phone is displayed.

Tips

– Several mobile devices can be paired with the MMI, but only two* mobile devices can be actively connected.
– To delete all paired Bluetooth devices, the **Bluetooth** function can be reset to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 219*.

Directory settings

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone

▸ Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Contacts** > ⚙.

Switching between two mobile devices

Requirement: telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected.

Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > 📱. **Switch telephones:** the device name of your active mobile device is displayed.

Hide grayed-out contacts

When this function is switched on, contacts that have no phone numbers stored for them will be hidden.

Sort order

You can sort the contacts in alphabetical order according to **Last name, First name**, or **First name Last name**.

Download contacts

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI or a mini SIM card must be inserted in the SIM card reader*.

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can manually download your mobile device contacts. Depending on the mobile device, you may need to disconnect and reconnect the Bluetooth connection to update the contacts.

Memory capacity

The MMI **Memory capacity** is displayed.

You can manage up to 23,000 contacts in the MMI. You can load up to 5,000 contacts from mobile devices. You can also import up to 3,000 contacts from a storage device.

Importing and exporting contacts

Requirement: an SD card must be in the SD card reader* ⇨ *page 204* or a USB storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 207*.

Contacts in vCard format (.vcf) can be imported or exported from the MMI.

– **Importing contacts from a storage medium**: Select: **Import contacts** > **Search for import data** > **SD card 1** or **USB device 1**/**USB device 2** > *desired contacts* or **Select all contacts** > **Start import**.
– **Exporting contacts to a storage device**: Requirement: Only previously imported contacts can be exported. Select: **Export contacts** > **Find media source for exporting** > **SD card 1** or **USB device 1**/**USB device 2** > *desired contacts* or **Select all contacts** > **Start export**.

Tips

– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 173*.
– For additional information on the myAudi account, visit www.audiusa.com/myaudi. ▶

– The imported contacts are stored in the local MMI memory.
– A maximum of 3,000 contacts can be imported. You can check the MMI memory capacity at any time ⇨ *page 170*.
– Never save important data on memory cards or USB storage devices. Audi is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.
– Contacts that were downloaded from a mobile device cannot be exported.
– There should be no other files or folders on the storage medium containing the contacts to be imported.
– Apple devices and MTP devices (such as smartphones) are not recognized as USB storage devices.

Cell phone network settings

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and telephone

Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Mobile phone network**.

Switching the car phone or data module on*

Applies to: car phone/data module

See ⇨ *page 169*.

Save SIM PIN in MMI*

Applies to: personal SIM card usage

When this function is switched on, the SIM PIN is automatically saved in the MMI after it is entered for the first time. The SIM PIN for four different SIM cards can be saved in the MMI.

Automatic network selection*

Applies to: personal SIM card usage

– **Automatic network selection**: when this function is switched on, you will automatically log in to your cell phone service provider network.
– **Network provider**: Requirement: the data module must be switched on and the automatic network selection must be switched off. Select a network manually from the list of available networks at the present location.

SIM PIN settings*

Applies to: personal SIM card usage

– **SIM PIN request**: when this function is switched on, the SIM PIN is requested.
– **Change SIM PIN**: you can change the PIN on your SIM card. First enter the current SIM PIN. The SIM PIN may only contain the numbers 0 through 9. You must enter the new SIM PIN twice for security reasons. It is then stored on the SIM card.

Instrument cluster

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel and telephone

In the instrument cluster display, you can control the MMI functions with the multifunction steering wheel. For operation, see ⇨ *page 12* and ⇨ *page 27, Additional function buttons*.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the functions listed below may be available:

Requirement: the Telephone tab must be selected in the instrument cluster.

Press the ☰ button. See also ⑥ ⇨ *page 12, fig. 6*.

Possible options:

– **Call list**: Requirement: the call list must contain at least one phone number.
– **Favorites**: Requirement: favorites must be stored in the MMI.
– **Switch telephones**: Requirement: two cell phones must be connected to the MMI.
– **Back to call**: Requirement: there must be a call in progress.

Tips

– The call list can only be edited via the MMI.
– Depending on the selected function, it may be necessary to use the MMI.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Problem	Solution
Pairing the mobile device to the MMI failed.	Make sure the requirements for connecting a cell phone have been met ⇨ *page 158*, or make sure you did not accidentally decline the PIN for establishing a connection on your cell phone. If necessary, repeat the pairing process ⇨ *page 158*.
The mobile device does not support the **SIM Access Profile** (for example, iPhone).	Insert your personal mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* and you can use the car phone functions regardless of the mobile device. You can also use the contacts from your mobile device when the mini SIM card is inserted if your mobile device is connected through the **Contacts** profile ⇨ *page 219*.
After pairing, **not all contacts or no contacts** have been loaded into the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups on your cell phone.
Certain **telephone functions** are grayed out or not available.	The telephone functions depend on the mobile device service provider and the mobile device you are using. You can obtain more information from your mobile device service provider, in your mobile device user guide, or online at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth.
Some **telephone functions** may be switched off or not available, even though the mobile device is supported.	On corporate phones, some Bluetooth settings may not be compatible or the mobile device Bluetooth function may be deactivated. You can obtain more information from your system administrator.
Applies to: Audi phone box: Wireless charging of your mobile device is not working or has been interrupted.	Applies to: Audi phone box: Check if wireless charging on the Audi phone box is switched on. Check if your mobile device is Qi-capable. Check if your mobile device is positioned correctly in the Audi phone box ⇨ *page 161* and *no* other objects are between them.
The **MESSAGES** menu is not available.	Check if the *Show messages* option is on your mobile device and it is enabled.

Audi connect

Introduction

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

– Audi connect Infotainment
– Audi connect vehicle control

Tips

– AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.
– You can also find more information on Audi connect online at www.audiusa.com.

Audi connect Infotainment

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

With Audi connect Infotainment services, online information is transmitted directly to the vehicle.

An Internet connection is required to use Audi connect Infotainment. Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following options may be available:

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect Infotainment services when road and traffic conditions permit. Always read and follow the notes in ⇨ *page 18, Traffic safety information*.

Tips

– The data connection for Audi connect Infotainment services is pre-configured at the factory. You can change the data connection settings at any time if you need to change the configuration ⇨ *page 176*.
– Use of the LTE* mobile network standard is not available in every country. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or your cell phone service provider for additional information.
– Audi connect Infotainment services are only available within the cell phone network coverage from your cell phone service provider.
– Availability, scope, providers, screen display, and costs of services may vary depending on the country, model, model year, end device and rates.

Embedded SIM card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment and an embedded SIM card

The data connection for Audi connect Infotainment services is made through an embedded SIM card (eSIM card) that is installed in the vehicle. You can use the Audi connect Infotainment services immediately.

Note

– The connection costs for Audi connect Infotainment services are included in the price of Audi connect Infotainment. Please note that charges may apply when using certain services. For example, this applies to Internet radio/podcasts or for services that use the Wi-Fi hotspot, such as online media sources. Depending on the country, data plans may need to be purchased for these services ⇨ *page 177*. For additional information, see www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
– In certain situations, the Wi-Fi hotspot data connection may be established as a replacement for the SIM card on your Wi-Fi device. This feature depends on the configuration of your Wi-Fi device and operating system. This could result in fees depending on your cell phone service provider, especially if you are using this feature while abroad. A flat rate data plan is strongly recommended. For more information, contact your cell phone service provider or refer to the owner's manual for your Wi-Fi device.

4K8012721BA

Audi connect Infotainment services

Configuration

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time ⇨ *page 28*.

Tips

For detailed information on configuration, visit www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following services may be available:

Weather

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **WEATHER**.

Editing settings: Select: **WEATHER** > ⊞.

Adding a location: select: **In a new city** > *enter the desired location*.

► To permanently set weather for a location, press on *a location*.

► To always show the weather based on the vehicle position, press on the crosshairs.

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

► To show the weather at the destination, press on 🏁.

Removing a location: select: ✎ > *one or more locations* or **Select all** > **Delete**.

News

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NEWS**.

If you logged in to myAudi in your vehicle ⇨ *page 28*, personalized newsfeeds can be displayed.

Twitter

Requirement: you must have logged into myAudi in the vehicle using your login information ⇨ *page 28*. You must have connected your myAudi account with Twitter at my.audi.com.

You can only connect one Twitter account with your myAudi account. Not all settings can be adjusted in the MMI. Some can only be adjusted through the Twitter website.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NEWS** > ⊞. Press on a Twitter entry in the list.

Calendar

Requirement: the myAudi app must be installed and open on your mobile device. Access to your calendar must be enabled on your mobile device. You must be logged into the myAudi app with your myAudi login data and you must have selected your vehicle. The Wi-Fi function on your mobile device and the MMI must be enabled and your mobile device must be paired to the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot ⇨ *page 176, Wi-Fi settings*.

You can display the your mobile device calendar on the MMI.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **CALENDAR**.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

Audi connect vehicle control services

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control

With Audi connect vehicle control services [1], you can utilize various services using the myAudi app or online at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

Tips

- Accessing specific data or controlling functions remotely depends on the charge level of the vehicle battery. Therefore, these functions only have limited availability after switching off the ignition.
- The costs for Audi connect vehicle control services are included in the pricing of the services. The cell phone network, for example, must be available to use these services.

Setup

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control

- ▸ Register at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
- ▸ Set the key user ⇨ *page 29*.
- ▸ Install the myAudi app on your mobile device and log in with your login information.

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following services may be available:

Remote locking and unlocking

Requirement: the vehicle must be parked and the ignition must be switched off. This service allows you to unlock or lock your vehicle.

Vehicle status report

This service transfers driver information system data to a server. Depending on the vehicle equipment, certain data may be accessed, such as the remaining range or mileage. The values may differ from the values displayed in the vehicle.

Car Finder

This service transmits the parking location to a server when the ignition is switched off. The vehicle location, your location, or the route to your vehicle can be displayed. The new parking location cannot be determined with this service if the vehicle is moved after shutting the vehicle off and without switching the ignition on and off again, for example if the vehicle is towed or stolen.

Online Audi service request

Requirement: the service must be activated on the myAudi website and your Audi dealer must be specified. This service transmits service-relevant data to your selected authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi service facility. They will contact you before your next service appointment.

Geofencing Alert

Requirement: a key user must be set in the vehicle ⇨ *page 29*.

This service allows you to set permitted and forbidden zones for your vehicle as well as set time limits for these zones. If your vehicle leaves a permitted zone or enters a forbidden zone, you will be notified with a push notification and/or an e-mail.

Speed Alert

Requirement: a key user must be set in the vehicle ⇨ *page 29*.

You can set up to two speed limits for your vehicle using this service. If your vehicle exceeds a set speed limit, you will be notified with a push notification and/or e-mail.

Valet Alert

If you give your vehicle to a parking service, you can set a zone and a speed limit using the myAudi app. If the vehicle leaves the zone or exceeds the speed limit, you will be notified with a push notification and/or e-mail. ▶

[1] Depends on the country and equipment. These services are available for a limited time.

Stolen Vehicle Locator

This service assists you in locating your vehicle if it is stolen.

– Contact the police. You receive a Case ID.
– Call the service hotline and give your Case ID.

The service hotline will forward the established data to the police. You receive the Audi Service hotline number when you purchase your vehicle.

Tips

You can set in myAudi if you would like to be notified via push notifications and/or e-mail.

Settings

Cell phone network

Applies to: personal SIM card usage

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Mobile phone network**.

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

Data connection settings

Using the **Data connection settings** menu, you can set when an Internet connection should be made. The Internet connection disconnects automatically once the requested Audi connect Infotainment service no longer requires any data.

– **Data roaming**: data roaming is switched off at the factory. To use a data connection outside of the country, data roaming must be switched on. The setting is stored for the current SIM card or the mobile device that is currently connected.
– **Allow MMI online services**: when this function is switched on, a data connection is automatically established in order to use Audi connect Infotainment services.
– **Allow Wi-Fi devices**: when this function is switched on, you can allow or deny Internet connections.

Connection settings

The connection is configured automatically based on the SIM card being used. The following values can be changed. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

– **APN**: the access point depends on the cell phone service provider and is assigned automatically.
– **User name**: the user name for your online profile is assigned by the cell phone service provider.
– **Password**: the password for your online profile is assigned by the cell phone service provider.
– **Apply settings**: the changes to connection settings are stored.

Automatic network selection

Applies to: personal SIM card usage

– **Automatic network selection**: when this function is switched on, you will automatically log in to your cell phone service provider network.
– **Network provider**: Requirement: the data module must be switched on and the automatic network selection must be switched off. Select a network manually from the list of available networks at the present location.

Data usage counter

Your current data usage is displayed.

– **Reset counter**: you can reset your usage statistics to zero.
– **Warning limit**: you can set a warning limit for your data usage (GB/MB).

Wi-Fi settings

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can use the MMI as a Wi-Fi hotspot to connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices to the Internet.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Wi-Fi**

– **Wi-Fi**: when this function is switched on, the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is active and visible to other devices. You can connect your Wi-Fi device to the MMI and use the Internet connection if necessary. If you switch off the Wi-Fi in the MMI, the Wi-Fi hotspot will be deactivated. Therefore, any other devices accessing the Wi-Fi ▶

hotspot will no longer be connected to the Wi-Fi.

Wi-Fi hotspot settings

– **Access point (SSID)**: name of the Wi-Fi network.
– **Password**: a random password is set in the MMI at the factory. The password can be changed. The encryption method requires a password to be at least eight characters long. Choose a secure password.
– **Visible to others**: switch visibility of the Wi-Fi network on or off.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of an accident, use the Audi connect Infotainment services with a Wi-Fi hotspot only in the rear seat when the vehicle is in motion, or only when the vehicle is stationary.
– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 67, Airbag system*.
– As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.

Note

– In certain situations, the Wi-Fi hotspot data connection may be established as a replacement for the SIM card on your Wi-Fi device. This feature depends on the configuration of your Wi-Fi device and operating system. This could result in fees depending on your cell phone service provider, especially if you are using this feature while abroad. A flat rate data plan is strongly recommended. For more information, contact your cell phone service provider or refer to the owner's manual for your Wi-Fi device.
– Applies to: embedded SIM card usage: The connection costs for Audi connect Infotainment services are included in the price of Audi connect (Infotainment). Please note that charges may apply when using certain services. For example, this applies to Internet radio/podcasts or for services that use the Wi-Fi hotspot, such as online media sources. Depending on the country, fee-based data plans may need to be purchased for this ⇨ *page 177* or your personal SIM card may need to be used. For additional information, see www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
– You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection, and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Tips

For additional information about the Audi connect Infotainment services, visit www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

Data plans[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with data plans

Requirement: you must have created a myAudi account at www.audiusa.com/myaudi. Your vehicle must be registered in your myAudi account. You can purchase data plans at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

WARNING

– As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices, and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.

1) Not available in every market.

– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 67*.

Note

– Please note that when you are using a personal SIM card, you cannot use data plans that you have purchased previously or purchase new data plans.
– Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

– When traveling in a different country, the data connection may be disconnected to prevent unplanned roaming charges, depending on the factory settings. You can only use Audi connect Infotainment services in another country once you have activated the data roaming option.
– For more information on roaming charges, contact your cell phone service provider.
– For additional information, visit www.audiusa.com.
– Please note that any vehicle passenger can delete the SIM owner.
– The associated vehicle is not automatically deleted from the customer portal for the cell phone service provider when you delete the SIM owner in the vehicle. If selling your vehicle, you should delete the vehicle from the customer portal for the cell phone service provider to avoid being charged for additional purchases.
– If driving out of the country, applicable data plans must be purchased. If no data plans are available for the country in which you are located, you can use your personal SIM card.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

Problem	Solution
Audi connect Infotainment services: individual Audi connect Infotainment services are grayed out or not available.	Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be activated or configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time. You can find detailed information online at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
Wi-Fi hotspot: it is not possible to connect through Wi-Fi.	Check if Wi-Fi is activated in the MMI ⇨ *page 176*. Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.

Emergency call

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available.

With **emergency call**, you can call for help in dangerous situations as quickly as possible. Use this function when emergency help is needed ⇨ *page 179*.

With **online roadside assistance**, you can request assistance if there is a breakdown or a minor accident ⇨ *page 180*.

Tips

– The services are provided through a SIM card installed in the vehicle. The cost of the call and data connections is included in the price of the services. Services are provided assuming that the cell phone network required for the installed SIM card is functioning and available for use. The available services set by Audi AG are only available within the cell phone network coverage area for the cell phone service provider selected by Audi AG.
– You can find what data will be transferred at www.audiusa.com.
– These services cannot be deactivated using the settings in the Infotainment system.

Emergency call

Description

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

An emergency call is a combination of data transmission and a phone call. The data transmission from your vehicle forwards important information, such as the vehicle and position data, to the emergency call center.

Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

The emergency call can be made two different ways.

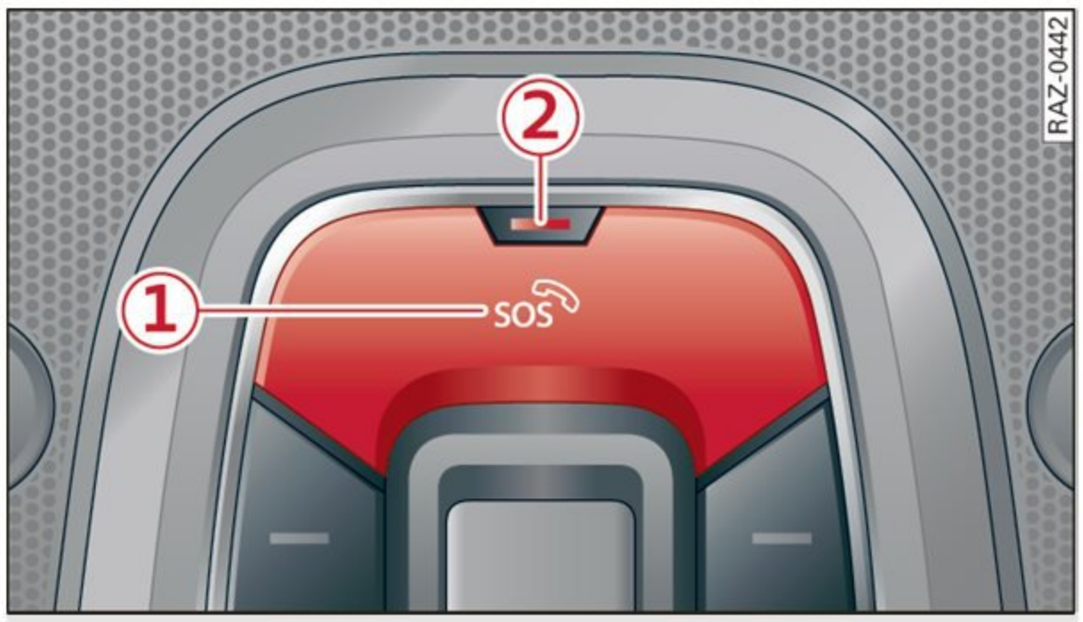


Fig. 127 Front headliner: cover for the emergency call button

Requirement: the LED ② must be green.

Manual emergency call

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ Tap the cover ① to open it.
- ▸ Press and hold the emergency call button until the LED ② blinks green. The emergency call will be made.
- ▸ If the emergency call button is pressed by mistake, then press it again immediately and hold it until the LED stays green. The emergency call will be canceled.

Automatic emergency call

The vehicle electrical system initiates an automatic emergency call under certain circumstances, for example if an airbag deploys. The LED in the emergency call button ② blinks green. The emergency call will be made. It cannot be canceled.

The LED indicates the status of the system as follows:

– **Green** – the emergency call function is available.
– **Red** – there is a malfunction in the emergency call function. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. An emergency call cannot be made.
– **Off** – the emergency call function is not available, perhaps because no network is available. ▶

Tips

If the emergency call is canceled due to a poor connection, then the system automatically tries to connect again.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

Emergency call function: malfunction! Restricted functionality. Please contact Service

If this indicator light turns on and this message appears, the emergency call function is restricted. For example, you cannot call the emergency call center, but data may still be transmitted under certain circumstances. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Emergency call function: malfunction! Function unavailable. Please contact Service

If this indicator light turns on and this message appears, you cannot make an emergency call. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Online roadside assistance

Description

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance

An online roadside assistance call [1)] is a combination of data transmission and a phone call. The data transmission from your vehicle forwards important information to the Audi service center, such as the vehicle and position data.

Calling online roadside assistance

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance

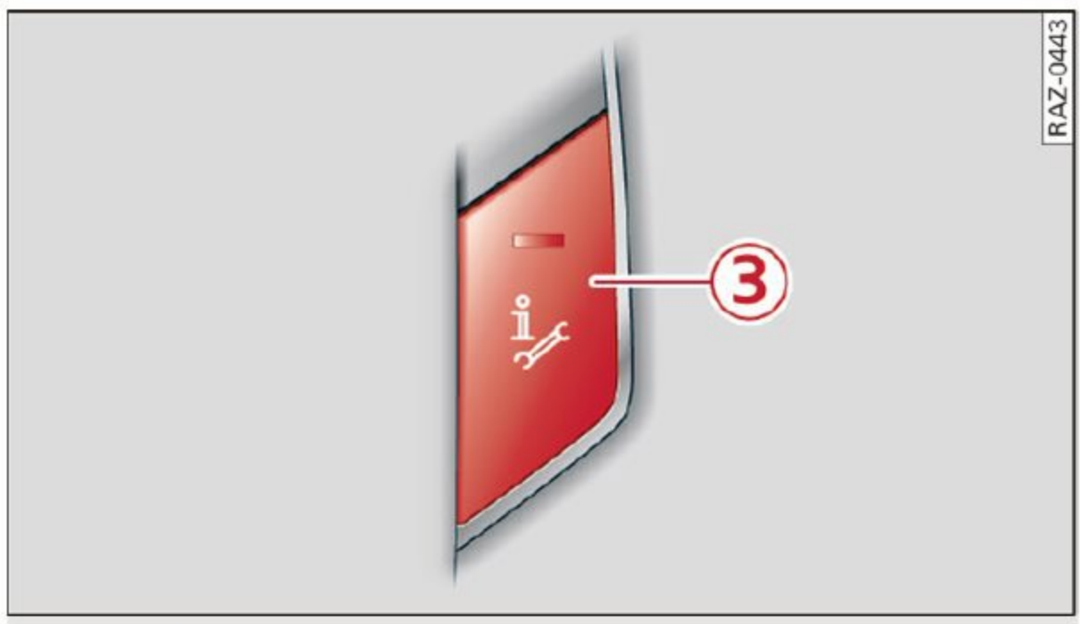


Fig. 128 Front headliner: online roadside assistance button

Calling online roadside assistance

- Press the button (3). The LED in the button turns red. The online roadside assistance call will be made.
- If you press the button (3) by mistake, then press it again. Or
- Select and confirm **Cancel** or **End call** in the MMI.

Audi incident assistance

A minor accident may be detected by the vehicle electrical system. You are able to select between online roadside assistance and an emergency call in the MMI.

Tips

If the roadside assistance call is canceled due to a poor connection, then the call must be made again.

1) The availability of the services offered depends on the country and may change in the future.

Navigation

Opening navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The navigation system directs you to your destination, around traffic incidents, and on alternative routes, if desired.

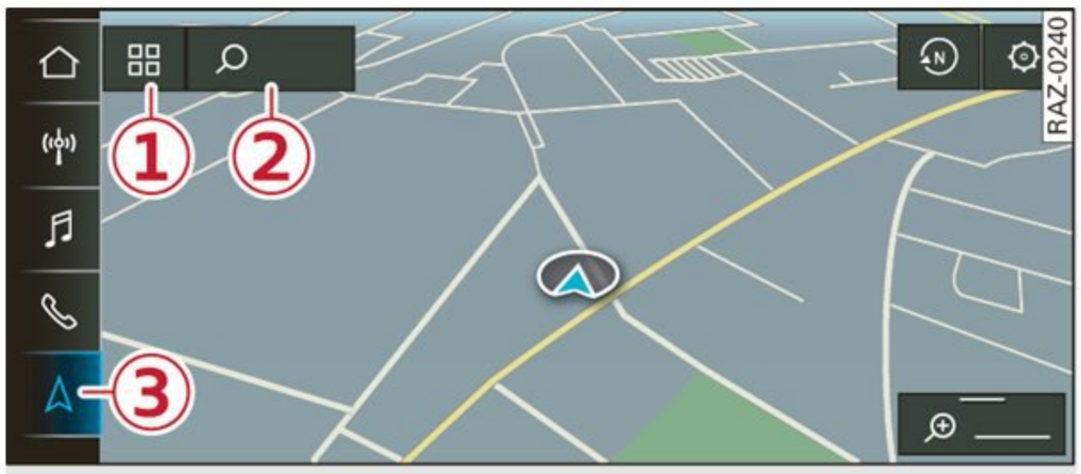


Fig. 129 Upper display: standard map: route guidance is not started

Opening navigation using the MMI

► Press **NAVIGATION** on the home screen.

After accessing the navigation for the first time, the map is displayed.

Opening navigation using the multifunction steering wheel

► Select the navigation tab using the multifunction steering wheel.

► To display navigation when route guidance has started, select on the multifunction steering wheel: ☰ > **Map**.

Applies to: upper display

The following functions are available:

① Open the **Select destination** menu ⇨ *page 182, fig. 130*.

② Open intelligent search directly ⇨ *page 182*.

③ **Switch between the map and the menu**: press △ repeatedly until the desired function is displayed.

You can find additional information about the map update at ⇨ *page 188, Map operation*.

WARNING

– The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 18, Traffic safety information*.

– The route calculated by the navigation system is a driving recommendation. Follow the traffic regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle. In the event that the driving directions contradict traffic regulations, always follow the traffic regulations applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle to reduce the risk of an accident.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

– Snow and obstructions on the GPS antenna or trees and large buildings can impair satellite reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position. Several deactivated or malfunctioning satellites can also interrupt GPS reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position.

– Because street names sometimes change, the names stored in the MMI may in rare cases differ from the actual street name.

– The navigation data in your navigation system is available through the MMI internal flash drive.

– Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Depending on the selected function, operation using the upper display may be required.

– Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment): Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, additional services may be available.

myAudi Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

MMI navigation works seamlessly with the myAudi app.

Your destinations (favorites, last destinations) and personal routes are synchronized through your myAudi account. All top destinations are available in the vehicle and in the myAudi app. ▶

To download the destinations automatically into the vehicle, we recommend linking the access data from your myAudi account to your personal profile ⇨ *page 28*.

myAudi navigation functions:

– You can send destinations and routes from the myAudi app to the vehicle ⇨ *page 185*.
– Active route guidance in the myAudi app can be continued in the MMI.
– Depending on the situation, it may be possible to continue active route guidance from the MMI in the myAudi app to continue navigating to the destination after leaving he vehicle.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Entering a destination

Select destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 130 Upper display: Select destination menu

▸ Press **NAVIGATION** on the home screen.
▸ If the map is displayed, press ⊞ ① ⇨ *page 181, fig. 129*.

The following functions are available ⇨ *fig. 130*:

① **Intelligent search** 182
② **Entering an address** 183
③ **Last destinations** 183
④ **Favorites** 184
⑤ **POIs** 184
⑥ **Contacts** 185
⑦ **Received destinations & routes** . . 185

Intelligent search for navigation destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Using the intelligent search, you can enter the data for a navigation destination in any order all at once (for example, 5th Avenue New York). You can search for points of interest, contacts, previous destinations, received destinations, and routes or favorites to navigate to the desired destination.

Opening a menu

▸ Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > 🔍.

Intelligent search

▸ Enter one or more search terms into the input field. See ⇨ *page 22, Text input*.
▸ Press on the desired destination in the results list. The **Details** menu will be displayed.
▸ Press **Start**. Route guidance will be activated and the map will be displayed ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132*.

If the MMI is connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 173, Audi connect*, the **Intelligent search** automatically includes results from the Internet. See ⇨ (!).

Change search area

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

▸ Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > 🔍.
▸ To change the search area, press 📍/🧭/🏁 ⇨ *table on page 184* repeatedly until the desired search area is selected.

Online search[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online search

You can use the results from a search engine provider to find a navigation destination.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 173, Audi connect*. ▶

1) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > 🔍 > G.
- ▸ Enter one or more search terms into the input field.
- ▸ The search engine provider shows suggestions 🔍 to narrow down the search.
- ▸ Press on suggestions until the desired destination appears in the results list. If necessary, use one finger to swipe upward or downward until the suggestions 🔍 or destinations 📍 appear.
- ▸ Press on the desired destination 📍. The **Details** menu will be displayed.
- ▸ Press **Start**.

Route guidance will be activated and the map will be displayed. ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132*

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

– The MMI input suggestions depend on the last navigated destinations.
– The navigation system always searches for the fastest route. You can find information on alternative routes under ⇨ *page 189*.

Entering an address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

As an alternative to the intelligent search, you can also enter an address in stages.

Opening a menu

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Enter address**.

Enter a destination using an address

- ▸ Press on the respective input field and enter an address.
- ▸ Press on **Apply**. The **Details** menu will be displayed.
- ▸ Press **Start**.

Route guidance will be activated and the map will be displayed ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132*.

Destination entry for a street intersection

- ▸ Select: **Intersection** > *enter a street* > **Start**.

Loading previous destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Your last destinations and routes can be loaded directly as a navigation destination.

As soon as you start route guidance, the destination is automatically saved in the last destinations. Your previous destinations are marked with the 🕓 symbol.

If you have met the requirements for myAudi navigation, your previous destinations will be synchronized with your myAudi account ⇨ *page 181*.

Accessing previous destinations

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Last destinations** > *select a desired destination* > **Start**.
- ▸ Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Select: ☰ > **Last destinations** > *select the desired destination*.

Changing and loading a previous destination

Applies to: MMI

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Last destinations** > ✎≡ > ✎ > *change the address* > **Use address** > **Start**.

Restore last tour

Applies to: MMI

Your last route is labeled with the 🕓 symbol.

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Last destinations** > **Restore last tour**. Route guidance will start immediately.

Deleting previous destinations

Applies to: MMI

Requirement: a route with at least two stopovers must have already been canceled.

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Last destinations** > ✎≡ > *select one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Tips

The last route will be automatically deleted from the list if you start a new route guidance after canceling the route.

Setting a favorite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can access frequent destinations in the favorites. You can quickly and easily start route guidance using the home address or business address function.

Requirement: a favorite must be stored ⇨ *page 190*.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Favorites** > *select a desired destination* > **Start**.
- Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Select: ☰ > **Favorites** > *select the desired destination*.

POIs (point of interest)

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

Search for points of interest such as gas stations and restaurants. If the MMI is connected to the Internet, points of interest will be automatically included in the search.

- Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Points of interest**.

The system always searches in the search area that is currently selected ⇨ *table on page 184*.

- **Searching for points of interest**: enter the name of a POI.
- **Searching for a point of interest in a specific category**: Select: *a category* (for example, gas stations) > *a point of interest*.
- **Changing the search area**: Requirement: route guidance must be active. Press ⓐ/🔍/🏁 repeatedly until the desired search area ⇨ *table on page 184* is selected.

Sorting points of interest

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 173, Audi connect*. You must have a category selected.

- Press on the respective symbol for sorting until the desired sorting order is selected.

Search areas in detail

Symbol	Meaning
	**Search nearby**
	**Search along the route**
	**Search at destination/Search at stopover**

Search nearby: the points of interest will be listed starting from the immediate vicinity around the vehicle position.

Search along the route: points of interest along the route can only be selected during active route guidance. The points of interest are located directly along or in the immediate vicinity of the calculated route. You can select points of interest from various categories. For example, you can search for a hotel or parking lot along route.

Search at destination/Search at stopover: points of interest near a destination or a stopover can only be selected during active route guidance. You can select points of interest from various categories. For example, you can search for a hotel or parking lot at the destination.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

Distances to points of interest are displayed as a straight-line distance from your current location. The actual distance from your current location to the point of interest is updated automatically. The list of points of interest that were found is not resorted when this happens.

Selecting contacts as destinations

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and navigation system

You can navigate directly to contacts.

Requirement: an address with navigation data or a navigation destination must already be assigned to a contact ⇨ *page 190*.

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Contacts** > *select a contact*.
- ▸ Press on an address.
- ▸ Check the address and change it, if necessary. Start navigation ⇨ *page 183, Entering an address*.

Route guidance will be activated and the map will be displayed ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132*.

Additional functions for contacts in navigation can be found under ⇨ *page 190*.

Tips

– Addresses that have been imported from your mobile device into the MMI can also be used as a destination.

– If a contact is grayed out in the directory, this contact has neither a destination nor an address assigned to it.

Loading received destinations and routes

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

You can search for destinations or routes in the myAudi app and send to the vehicle.

Requirement: the MMI and the mobile device must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 173, Audi connect*. You must have the myAudi app installed on your mobile device.

- ▸ Send a destination or route in the myAudi app to the vehicle.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Received dests. & routes**.
- ▸ Make sure you are logged into the vehicle and the myAudi app with the same myAudi account. The received destination and routes will be loaded automatically.
- ▸ **Navigating to a destination**: press on a destination.
- ▸ **Deleting destinations**: select: ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Destination details

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

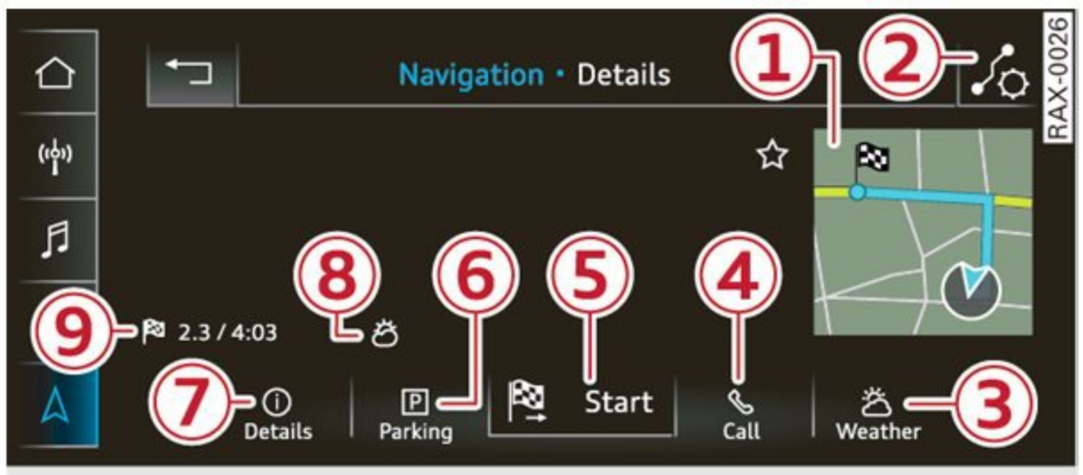


Fig. 131 Upper display: diagram: details

After you have selected a destination, the details ⇨ *fig. 131* will be displayed. Route guidance is will not be active yet.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and an active Internet connection, the following functions or information may be displayed ⇨ *fig. 131*:

① **Map preview**: to zoom in on the map preview, press on the map.

② **Route criteria**: see ⇨ *page 195*.

③ **Weather**: Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 173, Audi connect*. Also see ⇨ *page 174*.

④ Applies to: MMI and telephone

Call: Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 158*. You will make a direct call to the phone number that is stored for the destination.

⑤ **Start**: starts navigation to the displayed destination directly. The map will be displayed ⇨ *page 188, Map operation*.

⑥ **Parking**: press **Parking** to search for a parking space at the destination. You can use the parking space as the destination or stopover.

⑦ **Details***: Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 173, Audi connect*.

⑧ **Weather at the destination***: Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 173, Audi connect*.

⑨ **Display of distance/driving time to the destination**

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Selecting a destination from the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

A point on the map can be used as the destination.

Opening the map

- ▸ Press **NAVIGATION** on the home screen.
- ▸ If necessary, press △ to display the map.

Adjusting the scale

- ▸ Select: ⊕/Ⓐ > *select a scale*.

Marking the destination

- ▸ Press and hold a point on the map until a marking appears ㉑ ⇨ *page 187, fig. 133*. **Or**: the address of the selected destination is displayed ⑯ ⇨ *page 187, fig. 133*.

Setting the map content (such as POIs) as the destination

Requirement: map content must be displayed ⇨ *page 195*.

- ▸ Press on map content on the map (for example, ㉒ ⇨ *page 187, fig. 133*).

Selecting the destination

- ▸ Select: ⑮ ⇨ *page 187, fig. 133*. **Or**:
- ▸ To display destination details, press on ⑯ ⇨ *page 187, fig. 133* > **Start**.

Route guidance will be activated and the map will be displayed ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132*.

Stopovers and route plan

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can enter an additional destination when route guidance is active.

Entering a stopover

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

- ▸ Enter a destination ⇨ *page 182*.

Displaying stopovers or the route plan

All destinations are listed in the route plan.

- ▸ Press on ⑦ ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132* on the map.

Editing stopovers

- ▸ Press on ⑦ ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132* on the map.
- ▸ **Adding a stopover**: Select: **Add destination** > *select a destination* > **Add**.
- ▸ **Moving a stopover**: press ✎. Touch the ⬍ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.
- ▸ **Deleting a stopover**: Select: ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Canceling route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Requirement: route guidance must be active and the map must be displayed.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Press 🏁 ③ ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132*.
- ▸ Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Select: ☰ > **Cancel route guidance**.

Map

Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 132 Upper display: diagram: active route guidance (standard map)



Fig. 133 Upper display: diagram: marked map item (standard map)

► Press **NAVIGATION** on the home screen.

► If necessary, press △ to display the map.

The following list gives an overview of the information displayed on the map. Press on any function (for example, alternative routes) to show additional options.

① Destination input ⇨ *page 182*

② Intelligent search ⇨ *page 182*

③ Cancel route guidance ⇨ *page 186*

④ Current route

⑤ Request spoken prompt

⑥ Alternative routes ⇨ *page 189*

⑦ Display active destinations, stopovers, or route plan. The distance to the destination including the calculated arrival time is displayed. See ⇨ *page 186*.

⑧ The trailer mode* function is switched on ⇨ *page 196*

⑨ Traffic information ⇨ *page 193*

⑩ Altitude

⑪ Displays the maximum permitted speed[1)]: within city limits, on expressways, and on highways.

⑫ Current vehicle position

⑬ Route information ⇨ *page 196*

⑭ Name of the street on which you are currently driving

⑮ Start route guidance for the marked destination ㉑ ⇨ *page 186, Selecting a destination from the map*

⑯ Display details for the destination ⇨ *page 185*

⑰ POI search within the vicinity of a marking

⑱ Adjust the map orientation. Also see ⇨ *page 195*

⑲ Navigation settings ⇨ *page 195*

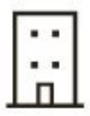
⑳ Adjust the scale. Set scale. **Or**: press on the magnifying glass shown to adjust the automatic zoom ⇨ *page 195*.

㉑ Marked destination. See ⇨ *page 186, Selecting a destination from the map*

㉒ Map contents (points of interest, favorites). When there are multiple map contents in the immediate vicinity, the symbols are shown stacked on the map. To display a list of individual symbols, press ⑯ ⇨ *fig. 133*. Press on a POI in the list.

㉓ Center the map to the current vehicle position

Additional possible symbols on the map

Symbol	Meaning
	Home address ⇨ *page 190, Favorites*
	Business address ⇨ *page 190, Favorites*
	Favorites ⇨ *page 190*
	Previous destinations display

1) Only applies to vehicles without camera-based speed limit display.

Traffic information display on the map or map preview

Color-coded markings along the route indicate the traffic flow:

Green: traffic is flowing freely.

Yellow: stop-and-go traffic.

Red: traffic jam or traffic obstructions.

Shaded markings indicate the length of the area with congestion.

Traffic information

– **Colored warning symbols**: traffic incidents ahead that are on your route.
– **Grayed out warning symbols**: traffic incidents that are not on your route.
– All traffic incidents will display in color when route guidance is inactive.
– **Warning symbols with arrow**: traffic incident that you have been routed around, for example .

You can adjust the display of colored markings for traffic information on the maps ⇨ *page 195*.

Map operation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can operate the map ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132* with the movements described in the following information.

Moving the map

▸ Drag your finger across the map in the desired direction.

Moving the map quickly

▸ Drag your finger across the map in the desired direction and lift your finger off the screen.

Zooming in on the map

▸ Place two fingers on the map and pull your fingers apart. **Or**: double tap on the map with one finger.

Zooming out on the map

▸ Place two fingers on the map and pull your fingers together. **Or**: double tap on the map with two fingers.

Rotating the map

▸ Rotate the map using two fingers.

Tilting the map

▸ Drag upward or downward with two fingers.

Tips

Certain gestures may not be available on all touch displays or in every menu.

Navigation view with route guidance started

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi virtual cockpit

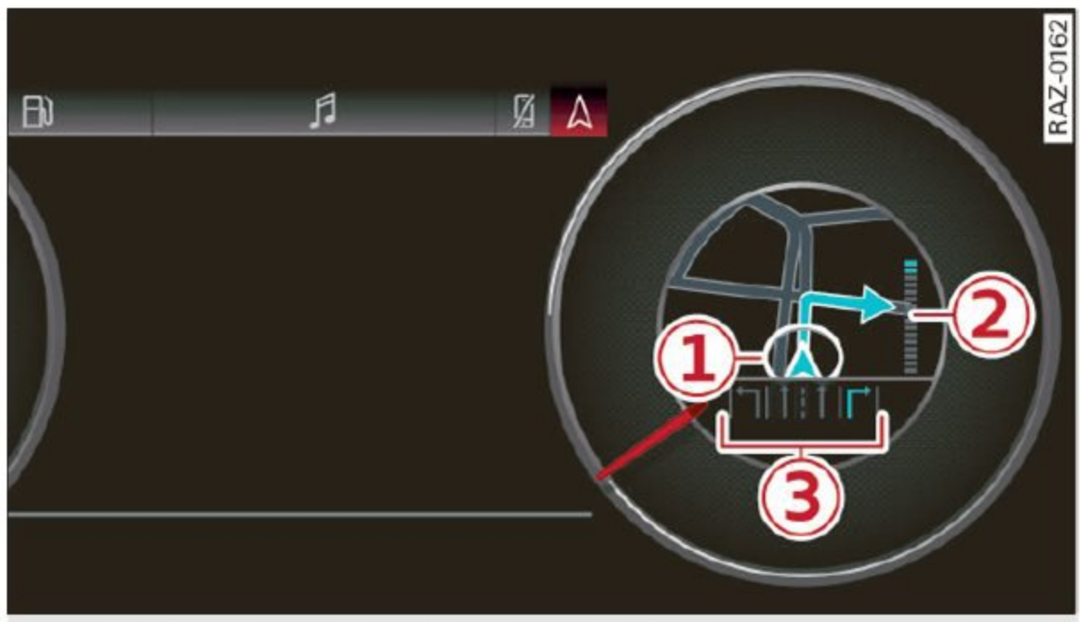


Fig. 134 Instrument cluster: standard map: turning maneuver when route guidance is active (Audi virtual cockpit)

Requirement: route guidance must be on ⇨ *page 182*.

The following information will be displayed in the driver information system, if available:

① Current vehicle position

② A bar graph appears when there is an upcoming turn. The fewer the bars that are shown, the shorter the distance is until the turn. If there is no upcoming turn immediately ahead, the distance to the destination or stopover, the calculated arrival time, and a direction arrow for the upcoming maneuver will be displayed in the right speedometer. If there is no upcoming maneuver, the distance to the next maneuver will be displayed.

③ Lane recommendation

Personal route assistance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and personal route assistance

Your MMI can learn the routes that you drive frequently (such as your daily commute to work and back) and suggest route guidance based on the current vehicle position.

When the function is switched on, the MMI records the routes driven regardless of whether or not you are using navigation.

Without starting route guidance, your MMI checks the traffic conditions and shows possible traffic incidents for the possible routes to be driven.

If you have met the requirements for myAudi navigation, your personal routes will be synchronized with your myAudi account ⇨ *page 181*.

Opening personal routes

Requirement: personal route assistance must be switched on ⇨ *page 196*. Route guidance must not be active. A notification is displayed.

- The MMI displays up to three suggestions. Press on a suggestion. Route guidance will start.

Alternative routes

A message will be displayed if there is a major traffic incident (more than a seven-minute delay) regardless of which menu is selected; a notification will appear. If the MMI has calculated an alternative route, you can select it as the route.

- Press on the notification.

The alternative routes will be displayed ⇨ *page 189, Alternative routes*.

As soon as you switch off personal route assistance, your personal routes will no longer be recorded. Routes that were already stored remain stored.

Deleting personal routes

- Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > ⚙ > **Personal route assistance** > **Delete recordings from the last 24 hours** or **Delete all personal routes and destinations**.

Tips

If personal route assistance is switched off and you press 🏁, the personal route assistance settings will be displayed ⇨ *page 196*.

Alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 135 Upper display: diagram: display of alternative routes in the overview map

Opening alternative routes

Requirement: route guidance must be started ⇨ *page 182* and the map must be displayed ⇨ *page 188*.

- Press ⑥ ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132*.

① Move route

You can move the route up to the next destination or stopover.

- Press ☝. The ☝ symbol will be displayed on the map.
- Press and hold ☝, and use your finger to pull the route to the desired position. Repeat this step until the desired route appears.
- Press ✓.
- To cancel, press on the current route ③. **Or**: press ⮌.

② Block route

You can block the current route for a certain distance starting from the vehicle position, for example to drive around upcoming streets or tunnel closures. The navigation system automatically calculates an alternative route and the length of the blocked route. The route to be avoided that you have entered applies only to the current route and must be set again, if needed. The areas ▶

you have selected to avoid will appear with red and white shading on the map.

- ▸ **Block route**: press ② ⇨ *fig. 135*.
- ▸ **Cancel route block**: press ⃠.

③ Current route

The distance to the destination and the calculated arrival time will be displayed for the current route.

④ Alternative route

As long as traffic information is available, the congestion along the route including the time delay will be displayed. The distance to the destination and the calculated arrival time will be displayed for the alternative route.

Select route

- ▸ Press on the information window for the applicable alternative route (for example ④ ⇨ *fig. 135*).

Additional functions

Favorites

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can access frequent destinations in the favorites. You can quickly and easily start route guidance using the home address or business address function.

Accessing favorites

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Favorites**.

If you have met the requirements for myAudi navigation, your favorites list will be synchronized with your myAudi account ⇨ *page 181*.

Storing favorites

- ▸ Press ☆ in the details ⇨ *page 185, fig. 131*. **Or**: press **Store as favorite** in the options ⇨ *page 194*.

Storing a home address or business address

- ▸ Press **Home address** or **Business address**. When accessed for the first time, you will be prompted to set the address.
- ▸ Select: **Create now** > *enter a destination* > **OK**.

Editing a home address or business address

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed. Your home address or business address must be stored.

- ▸ Press **Home address** or **Business address** until the **Options** menu is displayed.
- ▸ Select: **Change address** > *enter a destination* > (**Set as destination**) or (*Add to address*) > **OK**.

Editing a favorite

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed. At least one favorite must be stored.

- ▸ **Set a favorite as a destination**: press on a favorite.
- ▸ **Rename favorite**: press on a favorite until the **Options** menu is displayed. Select: **Change name** > *select a name* > **OK**.
- ▸ **Deleting a favorite**: select: ✎≡ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed. At least two favorites must be stored.

- ▸ **Moving a favorite**: press ✎≡. Touch the ⇕ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.

Tips

- – After deleting the home address or business address, only the address is deleted and the entry will still be displayed in the favorites.
- – Please note when moving favorites that items 1 and 2 are reserved for the home address and business address.

Contacts as navigation destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Two addresses (private/business) can be added as destinations for each contact. Addresses for contacts on your mobile device are displayed as a mailing address.

Accessing contacts

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Contacts**. ▶

Adding a destination to a contact

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 158*. **Or**: you must have imported contacts ⇨ *page 170, Importing and exporting contacts*. The **Hide grayed-out contacts** option must be switched off ⇨ *page 191*. There must be no business address or private address stored for the desired contact.

- ▸ Select: *a contact* > ••• > **Add destination**.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.

Settings

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Contacts** > ⚙.

Hide grayed-out contacts

When the function is switched on, contacts that have no address or navigation destination stored will be hidden in navigation. You can find information for additional settings under ⇨ *page 170, Directory settings*.

Tips

If you add a navigation destination to a contact, the destination will only be stored in the MMI. The MMI does not change any contacts on your phone.

Parking information

Applies to: navigation system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

In supported areas, you can display parking along the route.

Requirement: the **Parking** notification must be switched on ⇨ *page 20, Notification center*. The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 173, Audi connect*. Route guidance must be active, you must be close to your destination, and a notification must be displayed. **Or**: a point is marked on the map.

- ▸ Press on the notification. **Or**: press on 🅿 on the map.
- ▸ To navigate to a parking: space, press on a colored marking on the map.
- ▸ Select: 🏁 > **Start**.

Depending on availability, colored markings on the map indicate the probability of open parking spaces.

Color	Meaning
Green	High probability
Orange	Medium probability
Red	Low probability

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Satellite map

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

You can display the navigation map with satellite images.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 173, Audi connect*.

- ▸ Press **NAVIGATION** on the home screen.
- ▸ If necessary, press △ to display the map.
- ▸ Select: ⚙ > **Map settings** > **Satellite map**[1)].

The map view is based on data packets received from the Internet in the form of satellite images, which are then combined with the roadways from the ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132* standard map view.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

– The satellite map[1)] is updated regularly whenever the function is opened. The process may take several seconds. ▶

1) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

– When the satellite map display is switched on [1] with the 3D position map type, the MMI display automatically switches to the 2D map type when driving through tunnels.
– Depending on the Internet connection, the standard map may also be displayed when the satellite map is switched on [1].
– Also read the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 173*.

Map update

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and navigation system

Depending on the country, the following options may be available for updating your map material:

– Map updates through **online map update*** ⇨ *page 192*.
– Import map updates from the **SD card*** or **USB connection*** to your MMI ⇨ *page 192*.
– Map update at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. This can result in additional costs.

Online map update

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and navigation system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

Using map update online, you can update the map material in your navigation system directly from your vehicle.

Using your vehicle position, the MMI identifies regions which you are frequently in. Based on this, update data for these regions are available for your MMI.

Start map update

Applies to: MMI

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 173, Audi connect*.

► A notification for a map update will appear in the upper display.
► If the option **Automatic online map update** ⇨ *page 193* is switched on, the MMI will start the map update. **Or**:
► Press on the notification. **Or**: access the notification in the notification center on ⇨ *page 20* and press on the notification.
► If the **Automatic online map update** option ⇨ *page 193* is switched off, press on **Allow once** or **Always allow**.

The option **Automatic online map update** ⇨ *page 193* will be switched on. The MMI will start the map update. The progress of the download and installation will be shown in the upper display.

When the update has ended, a notification will be displayed.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

Because of the high volume of data, downloading large country packages or the whole package to your PC from your myAudi account, storing it on an SD card or a USB stick, and then importing it to your MMI is recommended ⇨ *page 192*.

Map update using an SD card or USB connection

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and navigation system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

With the map update, you can update the map material in your navigation system.

Requirement: you must have created a myAudi account at www.audiusa.com/myaudi. Your vehicle must be registered in your myAudi account. ▶

[1] AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

Prepare map update

- Load the map update at www.audiusa.com/myaudi and store it on an SD card or on a USB flash drive. For additional information, see www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

Start map update

Requirement: a map update for your vehicle must be on an SD card or a USB flash drive.

- Insert the SD card in your vehicle's SD card reader ⇨ *page 204*. **Or**: connect the USB flash drive to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 207*. A notification for a map update will appear in the upper display.
- Press on the notification. **Or**: access the notification in the notification center on ⇨ *page 20* and press on the notification. The update package is shown.
- Press **Next**. The installation status is shown in the upper display.
- When the update has ended, a notification will be displayed.

Map updates settings

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **System maintenance**.

Automatic online map update: when the function is switched on, map updates will be automatically downloaded and installed.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Traffic information

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 136 Upper display: diagram: traffic information overview

Open traffic information

Requirement: the map must be displayed ⇨ *page 188*.

- Press ⑨ ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132*.

Display traffic report details

- Press on the traffic report ② ⇨ *fig. 136*.
- To display the previous or next traffic report, press ←/→.

The following information can be displayed ⇨ *fig. 136*:

① A message will appear if the MMI calculates a better route for the current route guidance. More information can be found under ⇨ *page 194*.

② A traffic message is displayed. The distance to the hazardous area is calculated from the current vehicle position.

③ The traffic messages are sorted by street name. When route guidance is active, traffic information for your current route is sorted at the top. If there are multiple traffic messages for the same street, an arrow is displayed in front of the street name in the line. Press that line to display all of the traffic information.

When route guidance is active, traffic incidents and information about dangers along your route will be displayed in the upper section of the list. ▶

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

– Particularly critical traffic information, such as warnings about wrong-way drivers, is automatically displayed as a notification.
– This is not available in some countries.

Better route

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

By receiving traffic, your MMI calculates a better route if available and the possible time saved compared to the current route. You can decide which route you would like to use.

A notification will appear for several seconds if your MMI calculates a better route for the current route guidance.

A message will also appear in the traffic information overview ① ⇨ *page 193, fig. 136*.

Accept better route

Requirement: a notification about a better route must be displayed.

▸ Press 🏁. The better route is used for route guidance and the route is recalculated. **Or**: press the notification in the central area. The better route with the calculated arrival time is displayed ⇨ *page 189, Alternative routes*. Press on a better route (for example ④ ⇨ *page 189, fig. 135*).

Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online traffic information

The MMI can receive real-time online traffic information about congestion, accidents, road construction, and other incidents.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 173, Audi connect*. Traffic information must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 195*.

Traffic information will be displayed on the standard map ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132*.

Online traffic information is also displayed on the standard map ⇨ *page 191*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

– Having the **Online traffic information** function switched on provides the most accurate reports of traffic situations and traffic forecasting. Your vehicle transmits and processes its anonymous, encrypted position information at regular intervals to the traffic data provider. You can switch off data transfer at any time ⇨ *page 284*.
– The **online traffic information** network is not available in all countries, and the coverage is not nationwide.

Options and settings

Options

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Context-specific functions and settings may be available depending on the vehicle equipment.

Requirement: a list with navigation destinations (such as last destinations) must be displayed.

▸ Press on an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.

Store as favorite

See ⇨ *page 190*.

Edit address

You can edit an address for the next destination entry and navigate to the destination. Select: **Edit address** > *enter a street* > **Use address** > **Start**. If the address is permanently stored (for example, in the favorites), the stored entry will not be changed. ▶

Change address

See ⇨ *page 190, Favorites*.

Entering an address

See ⇨ *page 190, Contacts as navigation destinations*.

Change name

See ⇨ *page 190, Favorites*.

Save as a shortcut

See ⇨ *page 21, Shortcuts*.

Settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can adjust the navigation system settings in the instrument cluster and in the MMI display separately. The settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

Accessing settings using the MMI

► Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > ⚙.

Accessing settings using the multifunction steering wheel

Please note that a setting applied to the multifunction steering wheel is only valid for the instrument cluster map. You can adjust the map on the upper display using the MMI.

► Select in the instrument cluster: Vehicle functions tab > ☰ button.

Map settings

Satellite map: see ⇨ *page 191*.

Traffic: you can display current traffic information on the map. See ⇨ *page 188, Traffic information display on the map or map preview*

– **Free flow of traffic**
– **Traffic obstructions**
– **Traffic information**

Map colors

– **Automatic**: the map display adapts to the lighting conditions (for example, by changing from day to night when driving through a tunnel).
– **Day** or **Night**

Map orientation

– **2D map** or **2D north**: the current vehicle position is displayed. The map is oriented in the direction of travel or to the north.
– **3D map**: the current vehicle position is shown on a three-dimensional map and is oriented in the direction of travel.
– **Overview map**: the entire route from the vehicle position to the destination or the next stopover is displayed on the map. The map is oriented to the north.

Automatic zoom

– **On**: the map scale is adapted automatically depending on the type of road being traveled (expressway, highway, other roads) so that you always have an optimal overview of the road ahead. When route guidance is active, the scale is adjusted automatically for a better detailed view when there are upcoming maneuvers.
– **Intersection**: when route guidance is active, the scale is adjusted automatically for a better detailed view when there are upcoming maneuvers.
– **Off**

MMI map contents: you can switch the display of additional information (such as POIs) on the map in the upper display on or off.

– Always follow ⇨ ⓘ for the following map content:
– **3D city model**
– The weather forecast is displayed on a 3 mi (5 km) scale on the map.

Voice guidance

Voice guidance: you can adjust the navigation prompts. With the **Traffic** setting, the MMI will only give prompts if there are traffic incidents on your route.

Voice guidance during phone call

Entertainment fader during navigation: the audio playback volume is temporarily lowered when navigation prompts are active.

Route criteria

You can adjust which route criteria should be allowed or avoided for the route calculation. ▶

HOV/carpool lanes

Highways

Toll roads

Ferries

Route information

When this function is switched on and route guidance is active, route information (13) ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132* is displayed. The next maneuver will be displayed at the bottom. POIs and traffic information will also be displayed. Press route information to display a preview of the next maneuver on the map. You can switch the following information on or off in route information.

– **POIs along the route**
– **Traffic information**

Personal route assistance

Personal route assistance is switched off at the factory.

Your trips are recorded and destinations are suggested by the MMI when this function is switched on ⇨ *page 189*.

Trailer mode

Trailer mode is switched off at the factory.

When the function is switched on, the maximum permitted speed for vehicles with trailers is included during route guidance and the calculated arrival time is adjusted accordingly. When the function is switched on, the symbol (8) ⇨ *page 187, fig. 132* is displayed on the map.

Presentation mode

In presentation mode, the system simulates driving along the planned route without the vehicle actually moving. You can use **Specify starting point** when you would like to calculate a route starting from a location other than the current vehicle position, for example. **Simulating route guidance**: start route guidance and press **Presentation mode**.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

You can adjust the volume of navigation prompts during voice guidance using the On/Off knob ⇨ *page 18* Also see ⇨ *page 218*.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Problem	Solution
Intelligent search: the desired destination cannot be found.	The destination might not be entered in the navigation database. **Or**: check the spelling of the term that was searched. Check the current search area ⇨ *page 182* and use another, if necessary.

Radio

Opening the radio

The radio supports the FM, AM and SiriusXM (satellite radio) bands. Using the HD Radio receiver also allows you to receive radio stations on the FM and AM bands in digital format.*

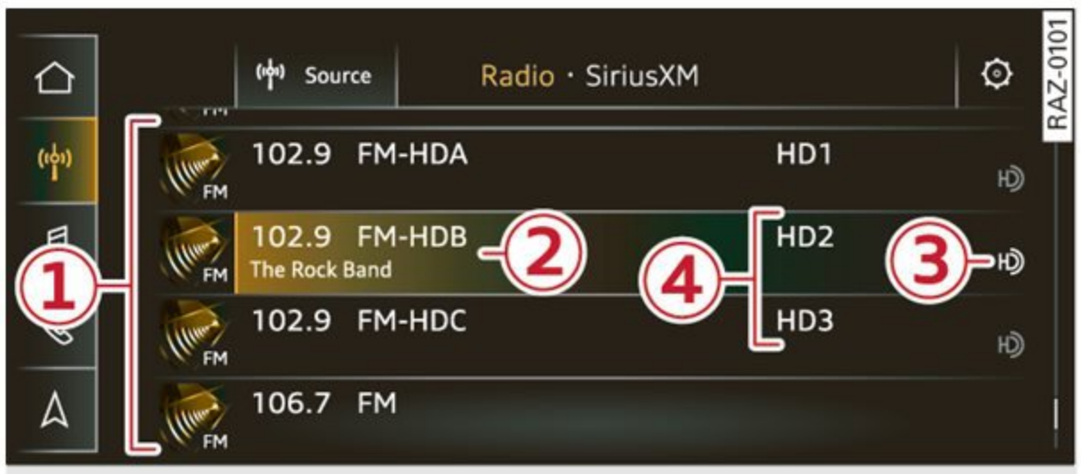


Fig. 137 Upper display: station list

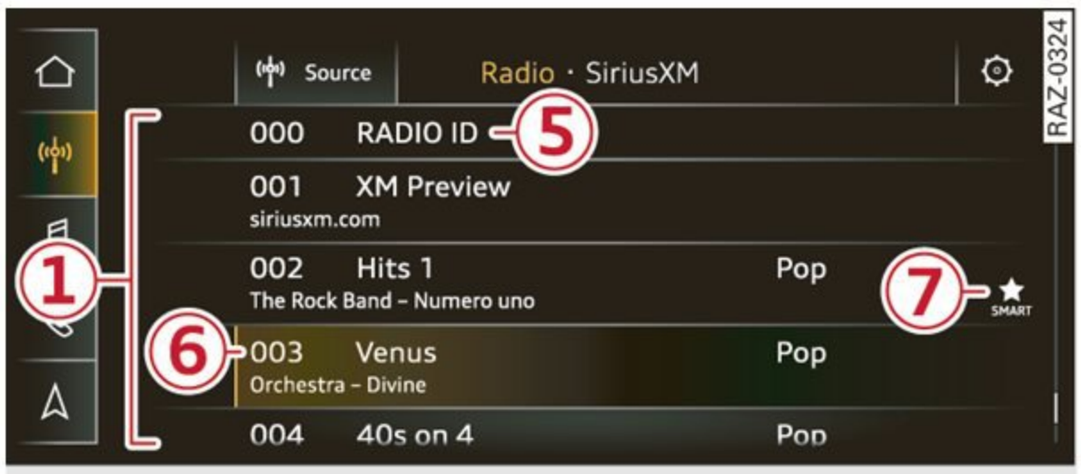


Fig. 138 Upper display: SiriusXM channel list

Depending on the station list, the following information may be displayed:

① **Station list**

Shows the station that is currently playing. The station list updates automatically.

② **Stations**

Depending on availability, the station name as well as program information, for example, may be displayed.

③ **HD Radio technology**

FM/AM stations that can be received by digital radio are marked with the HD Radio technology symbol HD.

If reception quality declines, the radio automatically switches to the analog FM/AM station depending on availability.

④ **Additional stations**

Digital HD Radio stations* may contain multiple additional stations*. If you lose reception, the additional stations* are muted since they can no longer be received.

⑤ **Radio ID**

Your radio ID and contact data for your satellite radio provider are displayed.

⑥ **Channel number**

⑦ **Smart Favorite**

See ⇨ *page 200*.

Adjusting the radio using the MMI

- ▸ To set a station, select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > *select a station list* > *select a station*.
- ▸ To set a frequency band, select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** *select a frequency band*.
- ▸ To select a frequency, follow the instructions under ⇨ *page 199, Free text search*.

Adjusting the radio using the multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: radio mode must be on.

- ▸ Select the Radio/Media tab using the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▸ To switch between radio and media, select: ☰ > **Switch to radio/Switch to media**.
- ▸ Turn the left thumbwheel to display the station list.
- ▸ To switch to a different source, press the ☰ button.
- ▸ To select a station or a source, turn and press the left thumbwheel.

Tips

– Contact the SiriusXM* provider if you would like to receive satellite programming.
– Buildings, tunnels, bridges, open areas, other vehicles or objects on the vehicle roof can affect reception.
– Satellite radio is not available in Alaska and Hawaii.

Radio functions

Overview

You can control the central radio functions in the playback view.

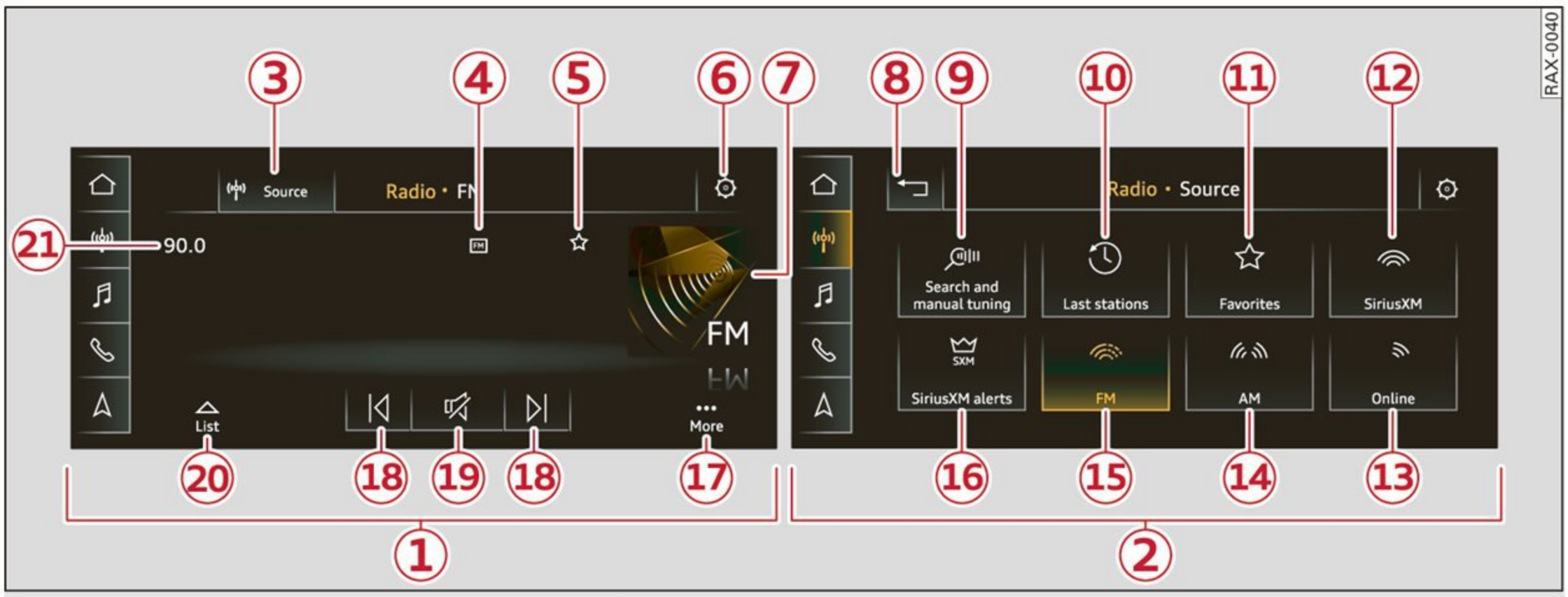


Fig. 139 Upper display: left side: playback view of radio functions, right side: sources

- **Opening the playback view** ①: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > *select a radio station*.
- **Opening sources** ②: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source**.

The following table gives an overview of the symbols and radio functions.

	Symbol/Description	Description
①	**Playback view**	You can control the central radio functions in the playback view.
②	**Sources**	The available sources are displayed and can be accessed in the radio.
③	**Source** button	Displays sources in the Radio menu.
④	**Frequency band**	Shows the current station frequency band. If a symbol with the **WEB** label is displayed, then the station is being streamed from online. Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ.
⑤	**Favorites**	**Storing a favorite**: press ☆. See ⇨ *page 199, Presets*
⑥	**Settings**	See ⇨ *page 202*
⑦	**Station logo**	Displays the station logo, if available. **Switching between picture views**: press the station logo. Use one finger to swipe to the right or left to switch between the **Station logo** and **Cover art**. Cover art: the album cover is displayed if available. Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ.
⑧	**Back**	Go back one level.
⑨	**Search**	See ⇨ *page 199, Free text search*
⑩	**Last stations**	Displays recently played stations from all frequency bands. See ⇨ *page 199*.
⑪	**Favorites**	See ⇨ *page 199, Presets*
⑫	**Station list**	Displays stations from the **SiriusXM** frequency band.
⑬	**Online***	See ⇨ *page 200, Online radio*

	Symbol/Description	Description
⑭	**AM**	Displays the station list for the **AM** frequency band.
⑮	**FM**	Displays the station list for the **FM** frequency band.
⑯	**SiriusXM alerts**	Overview of songs, artists, or teams from the stored SiriusXM alerts being currently received ⇨ *page 201*.
⑰	**More**	Access options for the current station. ⇨ *page 202, Options*
⑱	⏮/⏭	Tap to select the previous/next station.
⑲	🔊/🔇	Unmutes or mutes playback.
⑳	**List**	Displays the station list is. See ⇨ *page 197, Opening the radio*
㉑	**Info section**	Depending on availability, the station name as well as program information, for example, may be displayed. Also see ⇨ *page 203,* **Online additional data**.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

- Not all functions are available in every source and on every touch display.
- Applies to: MMI: To select the previous or next station, drag your finger to the left or right in the playback view in the center of the display.

Free text search

Applies to: vehicles with free text search

Using the free text search, you can select the order that the search terms are entered in the input field. Search in all frequency bands for a station name, channel number, or program type, such as **News**. *You can also select the frequency.*

▸ Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **Search**.

Selecting a frequency: enter a frequency. Press on a frequency in the results list.

The following information may be available:

Symbol	Description
🕘	Results from the list: **Last stations**
☆	Results from the list: **Presets**
((⊙))	Results from a **Station list**
For example, FM	Station frequency band

Last stations

Applies to: vehicles with last stations

You can listen to the last stations that were played in all frequency bands.

▸ Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **Last stations**.

- **Listening to previously played stations**: press *a station*.
- **Deleting last stations**: Select: ✎≡ > *select one or more stations* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Presets

Applies to: vehicles with favorites

You can store your favorite stations from every frequency band in the presets list.

Setting presets using the MMI

▸ To access a preset, select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Presets** > *select a preset*.
▸ To store a preset, press on ☆ ⑤ ⇨ *page 198, fig. 139*. **Or**: press **Store as preset** in the options ⇨ *page 202*.

Requirement: the presets list must be displayed. At least one preset must be stored. ▶

▸ To delete a preset, select: ✎ > *select one or more stations* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Requirement: the presets list must be displayed. At least two presets must be stored.

▸ To move a preset, press ✎. Touch the ⬍ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.

Smart favorites

SiriusXM channels are stored in the presets as smart favorites with the SMART symbol. After switching the ignition and the MMI on, the smart favorites store radio programs at a specific time. Press on a smart favorite. You have the following options:

– **Pause/Start**: press II/▷.
– **Selecting the previous or next track**: press ⏮ or ⏭.
– **Going to the beginning of a recording or live program**: press and hold ⏮ or ⏭.
– **Setting the playback point**: you can adjust the playback position using the knob.
– **Going to a live program**: press LIVE.

Online radio

Applies to: MMI with Audi connect (Infotainment) and online radio

You can listen to various radio stations or podcasts on the Internet using online radio.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 173, Audi connect*.

▸ Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **Online**.

The following functions are available in the online radio menu:

– **Search**: you only can search for online radio stations in this search. You can search for station names and categories.
– **Last played station**: the station that was played last will start playing.
– **Top stations**: select a station from the list of popular online radio stations.
– **Filtering the list**: Select: 🔍 > (*select a category*) > *select a station name*. The following categories are available:
  – **Countries**
  – **Genres**
  – **Languages**

Other categories may be available depending on the country and vehicle equipment.

Podcasts

– Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **Online** > **Podcasts**.

The following functions are available:

– **Listening to a podcast**: select: *a podcast* > *a podcast episode*.
– **Search**: press 🔍.

The following functions are available in the podcast playback view:

– **Displaying the podcast episodes**: press **List**.
– **Starting or stopping the podcast**: press ▷ or II.
– **Previous or next podcast**: press ⏮ or ⏭. **Or**: use one finger to drag the center of the display to the left or right.
– **Changing the playback point**: you can adjust the playback position using the knob.
– **Displaying the online radio menu**: press ⊞.
– **Switching to radio**: press **Source**. The sources in the Radio menu are displayed.

Podcast favorites

You can store podcasts in the **Podcast favorites**.

Storing a podcast favorite: requirement: the podcast playback view must be displayed. Press ☆. **Or**: press **Save podcast** in the options ⇨ *page 202, Options*.

Requirement: at least one entry must be stored in the **Podcast favorites**.

– **Listening to a podcast favorite**: press on the desired podcast.
– **Browsing podcast favorites**: use your finger to swipe to the left or right.
– **Displaying all podcast favorites**: press **All**.
– **Deleting a favorite**: Select: **All** > ✎ > *select one or more podcasts* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Requirement: at least two favorites must be stored.

– **Moving a favorite**: Select: **All** > ✎. Touch the ⇕ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

– Depending on the Internet connection and network traffic, the connection may be lost when online radio is playing.
– Online radio reception may not be possible if Internet service is throttled.
– The use of online radio depends on the service availability of the third party provider.
– The range and screen display of online media services from third party providers in the vehicle can vary.
– AUDI AG only provides access to online radio and does not assume any responsibility for the content of these services.

Radio text

Applies to: vehicles with radio text

Information that accompanies the program (such as artist, composer, song) is displayed in the radio text.

Opening radio text

▸ Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > *select a frequency band (such as FM)* > *select a station* > **More** > **Radio text**.

Displaying previous radio text entries: drag your finger downward. The last radio text entries are displayed if they are available.

Browsing through radio text entries: drag your finger upward or downward on the screen.

If a radio text entry is displayed with a color, a phone number or a navigation destination for the station is available as radio text plus information.

Tips

The availability of radio text and Radio Text Plus depends on the radio station.

SiriusXM alerts

Applies to: vehicles with SiriusXM

You can see an overview of your favorite artists, favorite songs, or teams that are currently being broadcast on a SiriusXM channel.

▸ Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **SiriusXM alerts**.

After you have saved a SiriusXM alert, you can see an overview in the **SiriusXM alerts** menu of the songs, artists, or teams being currently received and can play them directly from there.

Storing a SiriusXM music alert

Requirement: an artist or song must be playing on a SiriusXM channel.

– Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **SiriusXM** > *select a channel* > **More** > **Artist as SXM alert/Title as SXM alert**.

Storing a SiriusXM game alert

– Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > ⚙ > **Manage SiriusXM alerts** > **Store SiriusXM game alerts** > *select an entry from the list*.

Playing a song/artist/team from a SiriusXM alert (option 1)

Requirement: a SiriusXM music/game alert must be stored and must be currently broadcast on a SiriusXM channel.

– Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **SiriusXM alerts** > *select an entry from the list*.

Playing a song/artist/team from a SiriusXM alert (option 2)

Requirement: a SiriusXM music/game alert must have been received.

– Press on the notification. **Or**: access the notification in the notification center on ⇨ *page 20* and press on the notification. ▶

Managing SiriusXM alerts

Requirement: a SiriusXM alert must be stored.

– Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > ⚙ > **Manage SiriusXM alerts** > **Selected SiriusXM music alerts/Selected SiriusXM game alerts**.

When the function is switched on ☑, a SiriusXM alert will be received.

Deleting SiriusXM alerts: Select: **Selected SiriusXM music alerts/Selected SiriusXM game alerts** > ✎ > *select one or more alerts* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Options and settings

Options

Requirement: the playback view ② ⇨ *page 198, fig. 139* must be displayed.

► Press **More**. **Or**:

Requirement: a list with radio stations or podcasts* must be displayed. See ⇨ *page 197, fig. 137*.

► Press on an entry in the list until the **Options** menu appears.

Depending on the selected source, the following functions may be available.

Store as favorite

See ⇨ *page 199, Presets*.

Radio text

See ⇨ *page 201*.

Scan

All channels on the current playlist will be played for several seconds each.

Scan smart favorites

All smart favorites will be played for several seconds. The stored song on the smart favorite channel will be played from the beginning. See ⇨ *page 200*. To switch to the previous or next smart favorite, press the On/Off knob briefly to the left or right.

Artist as SXM alert

The artist being currently played will be stored as a SiriusXM (SXM) alert. See ⇨ *page 201*.

Title as SXM alert

The song being currently played will be stored as a SiriusXM (SXM) alert. See ⇨ *page 201*.

Team 1/Team 2 as game alert

You can store your team as a SiriusXM game alert. See ⇨ *page 201*.

Save podcast

See ⇨ *page 200, Podcast favorites*.

Save as a shortcut

See ⇨ *page 21, Shortcuts*.

Settings

► Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > ⚙.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following settings may be available.

FM/AM HD Radio*

You can switch HD Radio reception on or off.

SiriusXM Tune Start*

If you play a smart favorite when this function is switched on, the song currently playing on the channel will play from the beginning.

Managing SiriusXM alerts*

See ⇨ *page 202*.

SiriusXM channel sorting*

You can set how the channels are sorted in the SiriusXM channel list:

– **Channel number**: the channels are sorted in ascending order according to their channel number.
– **Channel name**: the channels are listed in alphabetical order.
– **First category, then channel number**: the channels are sorted by their category and then by their channel number. ▶

– **First category, then channel name**: the channels are sorted by their category and then by their channel names.

SiriusXM category filter*

The stations shown in the station list can be filtered by your personal preferences and by program type. The program categories that you can select depend on what is offered by your provider. When the **Unsubscribed channels** function is switched off, unsubscribed channels will be hidden.

SiriusXM subscription status*

This option is available when your subscription is about to expire or has already expired. The expiration date for your license is displayed.

Call SiriusXM*: the contact information for your satellite radio provider is displayed. To call your satellite radio provider using the MMI, press **Call SiriusXM***.

Online additional data

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 173*.

If available, various information about the song currently playing (such as station logos, cover, artist) will be loaded from the Internet when this function is switched on.

Preferred online radio data rate

Applies to: MMI with Audi connect (Infotainment) and online radio

You can set the data rate for online radio ⇨ *page 200*.

To attain optimal sound playback, press **High**. To reduce data usage, press **Low**.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
A station is no longer displayed in the station list.	Store the station as a preset in advance. Access the presets using the presets list ⇨ *page 199*.
Online radio: no playback from online radio.	Check if a suitable data plan was purchased ⇨ *page 177*.

Media

General information

There are various media drives and connections available in the MMI. For example, you can play audio/video files using the SD card reader or connect your mobile devices to the Audi music interface and operate it on the MMI.

Media and format restrictions: the MMI (including the SD card reader and the USB storage device connection*) was tested with a variety of products and media available in the market. However, there may be cases where individual devices or media and audio/video files may not be recognized, may play only with restrictions, or may not play at all.

Restricted functionality: reset the **Media** to the factory default settings if functionality is restricted.

Digital Rights Management: please note that the audio/video files are subject to copyright protection.

The media drives do not play files that are protected by DRM and are identified with the symbol 🔒.

Data security: never store important data on SD cards, CDs/DVDs, or mobile devices. Audi AG is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.

Loading times: the more files/folders/playlists there are on a storage medium, the longer it will take to load. To reduce the amount of time it takes the audio/video files to load, use a storage medium that only contains audio/video files, and create subfolders (for example, for each artist or album).

Additional information: when playing, audio files are automatically displayed with any additional information that is stored (such as the artist, track and album cover). If this information is not available on the storage medium, the MMI will check the Gracenote metadata database. However, in some cases, the additional information may not be displayed.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

SD card reader

The SD card reader is in the storage compartment under the front center armrest.

Inserting the SD card

- The angled corner of the SD card must point toward the right front side.
- Slide the SD card into the card reader slot until the SD card clicks into place.

The SD card reader is accessed and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 208*.

Note

– Only use one-piece SD cards. If adapter cards (SD cards with more than one piece) are used, the card could fall out of the adapter when driving because of vibrations. Individual pieces could then become stuck in the drive and impair the functionality.
– To reduce the risk of damaging drives and data carriers, always keep data carriers in a sleeve and never expose them to direct sunlight.

DVD drive

General information

The functionality of individual storage mediums may be limited due to the variety of blank CDs/DVDs available and the various capacities. Audio CDs or video DVDs with copy protection, CDs/DVDs that do not conform to the standard, and multisession CDs may have limited playback or may not play at all. AUDI AG recommends finalizing the recording process when creating multisession CDs. Multisession DVDs are not supported. ▶

WARNING

The installed optical readers contain a class 1 laser (IEC 60825-1:2014 Ed. 3.0). When used according to regulations, the laser is not dangerous. Opening the drive is not permitted and could cause permanent injuries to the eyes.

Note

To reduce the risk of damaging the drive and data carriers:

– Always store data carriers in a protective sleeve and do not expose them to direct sunlight
– Do not use damaged, dirty, or laminated data carriers
– Do not use single CDs/DVDs with an 8 cm diameter, non-circular CDs/DVDs (shaped CDs), cleaning CDs, and protective rings
– Never force CDs/DVDs into the drive. Discs are pulled in automatically.

Tips

The thermal protection switch stops playback temporarily when outside temperatures are too high or too low.

DVD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a DVD drive

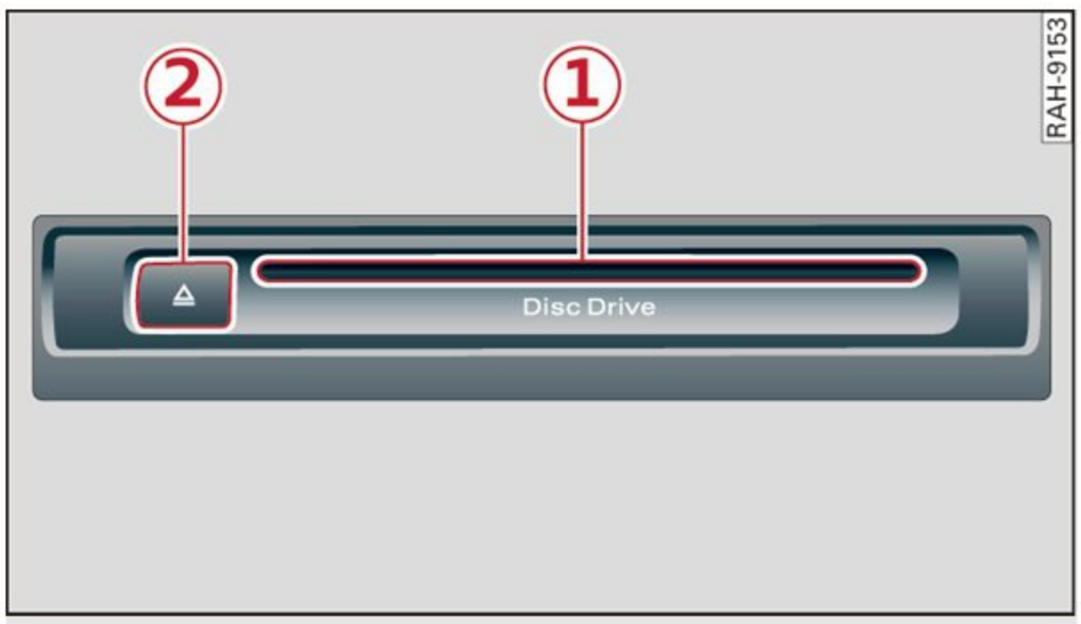


Fig. 140 Glove compartment: DVD drive

Loading a CD/DVD

▸ Slide the CD/DVD straight into the DVD slot ① with the label facing up. The CD/DVD will be automatically pulled in.

Ejecting a CD/DVD

▸ Press the button ②.

The CD/DVD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the DVD slot within approximately ten seconds after ejecting it.

The DVD drive is accessed and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 208*.

Tips

– Audio/video files with a high data rate may not play.
– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 204, General information*.

Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth audio player

With the Bluetooth audio player, you can play music wirelessly through the MMI from your Bluetooth-capable mobile device (such as a cell phone).

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings will open on your mobile device during the connection setup. The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 219* and mobile device must be switched on.

Connecting a mobile device

▸ Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > **Connect external device** > **New connection**. The available Bluetooth devices will be displayed after several seconds.
▸ Press on the desired mobile device in the list of displayed Bluetooth devices.
▸ To update the list, press ↻.
▸ A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be generated.
▸ Confirm the PIN on your mobile device. **Or**: enter the PIN for the connection setup on your mobile device. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.

After connecting successfully, the mobile device will be displayed in the **Connected devices** menu as a Bluetooth audio player.

▸ Playing media: see ⇨ *page 208*.

Tips

– Check for any connection requests on your Bluetooth device.
– Multiple Bluetooth audio players can be connected to the MMI, but only one at a time can be active as a Bluetooth audio player. See ⇨ *page 219*.
– The supported media functions (such as shuffle, list view, categories, search, options) depend on the Bluetooth device being used.
– Note the volume setting on your Bluetooth device. AUDI AG recommends setting your mobile device to the maximum volume when using it as a Bluetooth audio player.
– For more information on supported devices, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Online media

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment) and online media

You can play and operate various online media services, such as music streaming services, using the MMI.

Requirement: a supported online media service must be available in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

Connecting online media:

- ▸ Connect the MMI to the Internet ⇨ *page 173, Audi connect*.
- ▸ Switch on the Wi-Fi hotspot in the MMI ⇨ *page 176, Wi-Fi settings*.
- ▸ Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > **Connect online media**.
- ▸ Switch the Wi-Fi function on in your mobile device and connect it to the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot.
- ▸ Install and start the myAudi app on your mobile device.
- ▸ Log in to your myAudi account in the myAudi app and select your vehicle.

Your mobile device must be connected to the MMI and must be highlighted. When you press the highlighted device, it will be disconnected.

Starting online media:

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source**. All online media services supported in your country will be displayed.
- ▸ Press on the desired online media service and follow the system instructions.

WARNING

– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read and follow the warnings in ⇨ *page 67, Airbag system*.

Note

– Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.
– There generally are additional costs when using an online media service account, especially when it is used internationally.

Tips

– Depending on the Internet connection and network traffic, the connection may disconnected when online media sources are playing.
– Online media usage depends on the service availability of the third party provider.
– Audi AG simply makes the access to online media services possible through the MMI and does not take any responsibility for the contents of the online media services.
– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 173*.
– Depending on the mobile device being used, there may be interruptions during media playback and when using the myAudi app. To avoid interruptions when using a mobile device, do not lock the screen on your mobile device and keep the myAudi app in the foreground.

Multimedia connections

USB adapter cable

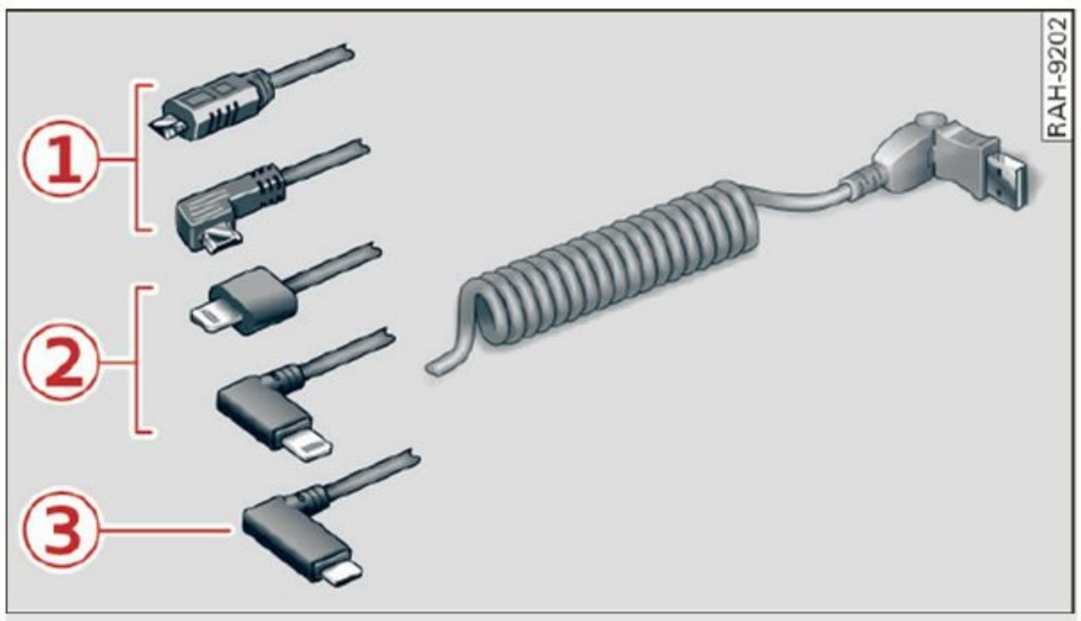


Fig. 141 Audi Genuine Accessories: USB adapter

You can connect your mobile devices through the Audi music interface to the MMI using the USB adapter and charge the battery at the same time.

You can purchase the USB adapter cable from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores:

① USB adapter for devices with a micro USB connection

② USB adapter for devices with an Apple Lightning connection

③ USB adapter for devices with USB type C connection

Note

Handle the USB adapter carefully. Do not allow it to be pinched.

Tips

Mobile devices with an Apple Dock connector can only be charged using a USB adapter designed for devices with an Apple Dock connector. Data cannot be transmitted.

Audi music interface

Connect your mobile devices to the Audi music interface in order to operate them through the MMI and charge the batteries.

The Audi music interface USB ports are located in the storage compartment under the front and rear* center armrest and are labeled with the ⇠ symbol.

Connecting or charging mobile devices using a USB adapter

► Connect the matching USB adapter to the Audi music interface USB port and connect it to the mobile device, such as a smartphone.

The battery will charge automatically.

Disconnecting a mobile device from the Audi music interface

► Remove the USB adapter cable from the Audi music interface.

Mobile devices connected to the Audi music interface can be started and operated using the MMI ⇨ *page 208*.

Connecting multiple mobile devices: if a mobile device (such as a smartphone) is connected at the respective USB port on the Audi music interface, then all devices can be used as a playback source.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Pull the cable out of the Audi music interface carefully so that the USB ports are not damaged.
– Use a USB extension cable to connect devices that have an integrated USB connector (such as a USB stick) to reduce the risk of damage to your USB device and the Audi music interface.
– Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles can damage mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Never leave mobile devices in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

Tips

– Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 78*.

– When you switch the ignition off, the USB ports are still supplied with power until the energy management intervenes.
– Do not use an additional adapter cable or USB extension cable to connect mobile devices to the Audi music interface that already have a cable or that must be connected with a USB adapter cable (⇨ *page 207, fig. 141*). Using an additional adapter or US extension cable may impair functionality.
– Functionality is not guaranteed for mobile devices that do not conform to the USB 2.0 specification.
– USB hubs are not supported.
– Video playback through the Audi music interface is not supported on Apple and MTP devices (such as smartphones).
– iPod or iPhone malfunctions also affect the operation of the MMI. Reset your mobile device in these situations.
– Audi recommends updating the iPod or iPhone software to the latest version. Refer to your mobile device owner's manual for more information.
– The USB adapter on the Audi music interface will support iPod touch or iPhone devices from the 5th generation or newer with the lightning connector.
– For more information about the Audi music interface and supported devices, check the Audi database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/mp3 or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Playing media

Media sources

The following sources can be selected depending on the vehicle equipment:
– **SD card** ⇨ *page 204*
– **USB** ⇨ *page 207*
– **DVD drive** ⇨ *page 205*
– **Connect external device**: you can connect external devices via Bluetooth and use the Bluetooth audio player ⇨ *page 205*. Or you can connect an external device directly to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 207*.
– **Connect online media** ⇨ *page 206*

Accessing media

Playing audio/video files using the MMI

▸ Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *select a source*. Depending on the connected device or online media service*, the symbol for a source may change. The device name may be displayed (for example: myPhone).
▸ Select a track from the categories in the media center ⇨ *page 209*.

Playing audio/video files using the multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: a media drive must contain audio/video files ⇨ *page 208*.

▸ Select the Radio/Media tab using the multifunction steering wheel.
▸ Turn the left thumbwheel to display the playlist.
▸ To switch to a different source, press the ☰ button.
▸ To select an audio/video file or a source, turn and press the left thumbwheel.
▸ To switch between radio and media, select the ☰ > **Switch to radio**/**Switch to media**.

Tips

– For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.
– Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Depending on the selected function, operation through the MMI may be required.

Media center

Various categories for selecting audio/video files are available in the media center or to search through media sources.

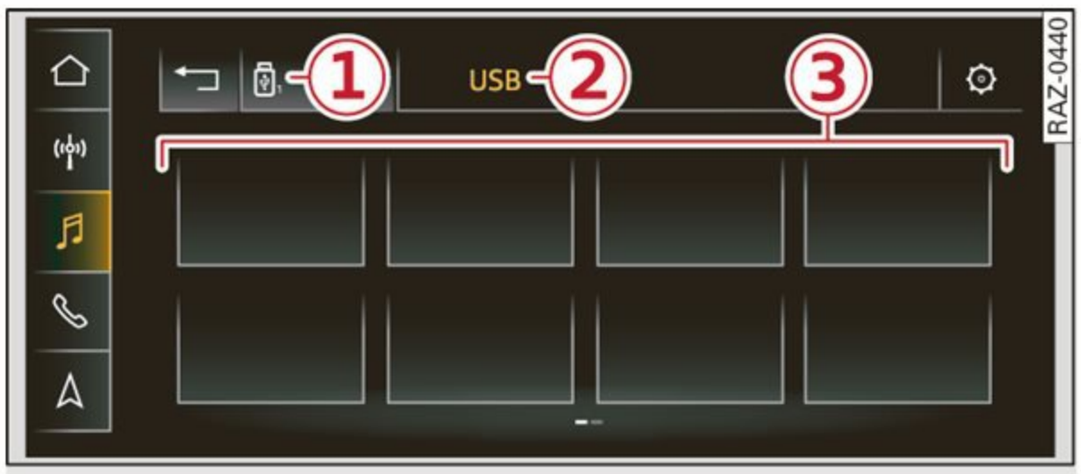


Fig. 142 Upper display: media center view

You can browse through your music collection using the categories in the media center, such as albums. You can browse either through any available source (for example, the SD card) or the active source. While browsing through the media center, the music from the active source will continue to play.

Opening the media center

- Browsing through any source: select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *select a source* > *select a category*.
- Searching through the active source: select in the playlist view or playlist ⇨ *page 210* > ⊞ > *a category*.

① Source symbol

Symbol for the source you are currently browsing. Depending on the connected device or online media service*, the symbol for a source may change. As an example, a USB stick is shown ⇨ *fig. 142* that is connected to the Audi music interface.

② Source device name

Device name of the source you are currently browsing.

③ Categories

The categories in the media center depend on the source, the mobile device, and the connection type. Only search results within the active source are shown.

Search

If a source supports the search, the category will be displayed. See ⇨ *page 212*.

Last played track

The last music/video file that was played will play.

Artists

All available artists are displayed. Select: *an artist* > *an album* > *a song*.

Playlists

All playlists and smart playlists in the source are displayed. Select: *a playlist* > *a song*.

Smart playlists

- **Last played tracks**: the tracks that were displayed last are displayed.
- **Most played tracks**: the tracks that are played most frequently are displayed.

Directories

The folder structure or track/chapter list is displayed. Select: *a folder* > *a song*.

Compilations

You can control your playlists through the MMI. Select: *a playlist* > *a song*.

Composers

All available composers are displayed. Select: *a composer* > *an album* > *a song*.

Radio

Press on a radio station.

Audio books

You can control your audio books on the MMI. Press on an audio book.

Podcasts

You can control your podcasts through the MMI. Select: *a podcast* > *a podcast episode*.

Genres

All available genres are displayed. Select: *a genre* > *an artist* > *an album* > *a song*. ▶

Videos

All available video files are displayed. Press on a video.

Tracks

All available tracks are displayed. Press on a track.

Albums

All available albums are displayed. Select: *an album > a track*.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

– Cloud services and category radio always require an Internet connection.
– Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

– Only the categories supported by the medium are available.
– For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.
– When synchronizing a portable device with "Cloud" services, playlists may display incorrectly in the MMI. Use the media center in the device.

Tips

Applies to: iPod/iPhone

– Also read the information on the Audi music interface and the supported devices ⇨ *page 207*.
– Depending on the Internet connection and network traffic, the connection may disconnected when online media sources are playing.
– The use of online media services depends on the service availability of the third party provider.
– Audi AG simply makes the access to online media services possible through the MMI and does not take any responsibility for the contents of the online media services.

Media functions

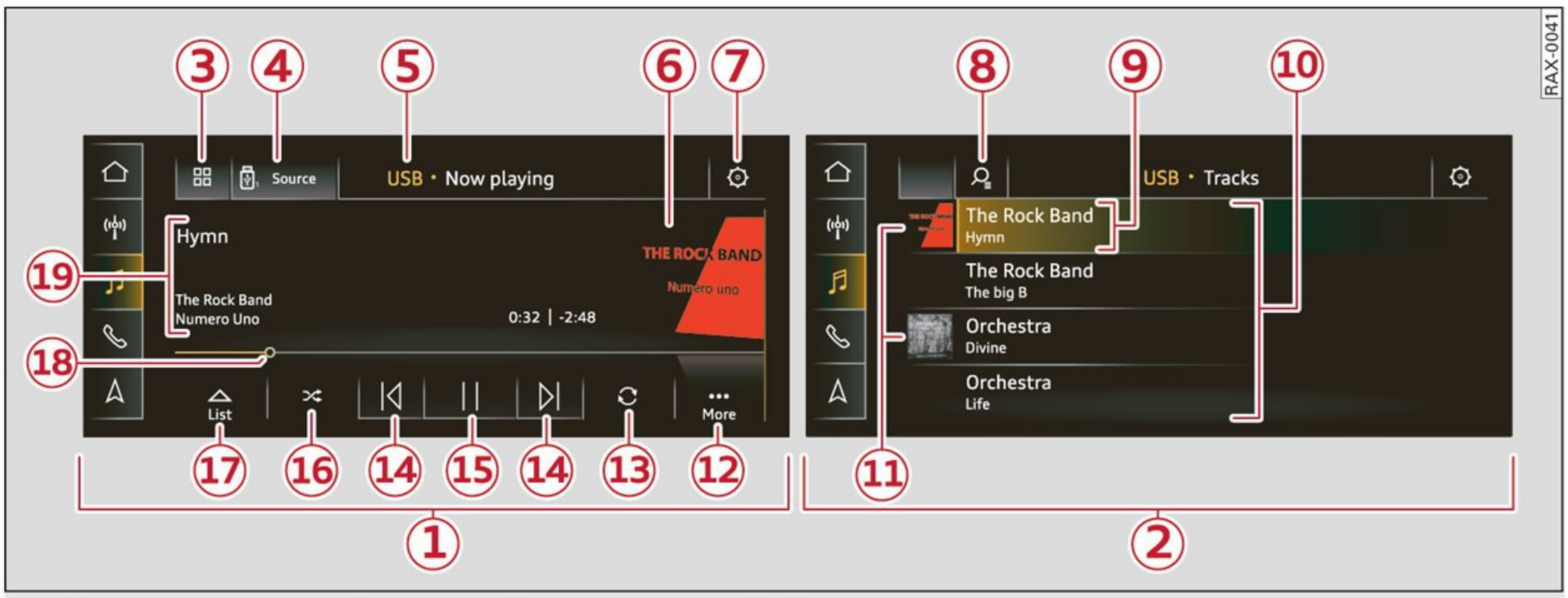


Fig. 143 Upper display: left side: playback view, right side: playlist

▸ **Opening playback view** (1): select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source* > *select a category* (for example, artists > *album*) > *select a track*.

▸ **Opening a playlist** (2): select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source* > *a category* (for example, artists > *album*) > *select a track* > **List**. **Or**:

► Requirement: the playback view must be open. Press **List** (17).

The following table gives an overview of the symbols and media functions.

	Symbol/Description	Description
①	**Playback view**	You can control the central media functions in the playback view.
②	**Playlist**	Displays the playlist. Highlights the track that is currently playing.
③	**Categories** menu	The media center categories will be displayed based on the active source. See ⇨ *page 209*.
④	**Source** button	Displays sources in the Media menu.
⑤	**Source/device name**	Applies to: playback view: Device name of the source that is currently playing.
		Applies to: media center view: Source that you are currently browsing. See ⇨ *page 209*.
⑥	**Album cover** in the playback view	Requirement: a media source with album covers must be selected. **Or**: the covers must be available online ⇨ *page 213,* **Online additional data**. Displays the current album cover. **Displaying playlists**: press on the cover.
⑦	**Settings**	See ⇨ *page 213*
⑧	**Filter**	You can filter the current playlist.
⑨	**Current track information**	Display in descending order: **Track**, **Artist** Highlights the track that is currently playing.
⑩	**List**	**Browsing in the list**: drag your finger upward or downward.
⑪	**Album cover** in the playlist	Requirement: a media source with album covers must be selected. **Or**: the covers must be available online. ⇨ *page 213,* **Online additional data**. Displays the current album cover. For tracks belonging to one album, the album cover is displayed one time.
⑫	**More**	Accessing options ⇨ *page 212*
⑬	**Off**	**Switching between off/playlist/track**: press (13).
	Playlist	The tracks in the current playlist will repeat continuously in a loop.
	Tracks	The current track will repeat.
⑭	⏮/⏭	**Selecting the previous/next track (or station/chapter*)**: press ⏮ or ⏭. **Jumping to the beginning of a track**: press on ⏮ after the first ten seconds of play time.
⑮	▷/II	Start or stop playback
⑯	**Shuffle**	When this function is switched on, all files in the playlist will play in random order.
⑰	**List**	The playlist (2) is displayed.
⑱	**Playback position**	You can adjust the playback position using the knob.
⑲	**Info section**	Display in descending order: **Track**, **Artist**, **Album**

DVD functions

Applies to: DVD video

The following functions are available in the playback view:

– Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and a DVD* must be playing.
– **Display the DVD main menu**: press on the upper display. Press **DVD menu**.
– **Using the DVD main menu**: press the desired function.
– **Switching to the media functions**: press on the upper display. Select: ⮌ > *select a chapter*. **Or**: start the movie in the DVD main menu and press on the upper display.
– **Adjusting the aspect ratio**: Select: **Aspect ratio** > *an aspect ratio* > **OK**. See ⇨ *table on page 213*.

Tips

– Not all functions are available in every source and on every touch display.
– Applies to: MMI: To select the previous or next track, drag your finger to the left or right in the playback view in the center of the display.

Opening the search

Applies to: vehicles with free text search

You can search in all active sources, for example for tracks and video files.

Opening the search

Requirement: the selected source must support the search function. The media center ⇨ *page 209* is displayed.

▸ Press **Search**.

Entries that contain the entered search term are listed in the results list. Each result is marked with the symbol for a category in the media center ⇨ *page 209*.

You can search for the following categories:

– Artists
– Albums
– Tracks
– Genres
– Videos

Tips

Only files in the active source will be searched.

Options and settings

Options

Context-depending functions and settings may be available depending on the selected source, the connected mobile device, and the connection type.

Requirement: the playback view must be displayed. See ① ⇨ *page 210, fig. 143*.

▸ Press **More**. **Or**:

Requirement: a list (for example, a playlist ② ⇨ *page 210, fig. 143*) must be displayed.

▸ Press on an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.

Play more like this

The track currently playing is quickly analyzed for features such as artist, genres, mood, and beat, and a smart playlist with similar tracks will be shown.

More from this album

Based on the track that is currently playing, an intelligent playlist with other tracks from this album will be displayed.

More from this artist

Based on the track that is currently playing, an intelligent playlist with other tracks from this artist will be displayed. The system will search for artists in the source that is currently playing.

More from this genre

Based on the track that currently playing, an intelligent playlist with other tracks from this genre will be displayed.

Save as a shortcut

See ⇨ *page 21, Shortcuts*.

Play

The selected track or all tracks in the folder will be displayed.

Language[1)]

You can set the language manually. The language and audio format options depend on the video DVD.

Subtitles[1)]

You can manually select subtitles for playback. The languages available depend on the DVD.

Aspect ratio

The **Auto** aspect ratio setting is recommended. If you press on an aspect ratio, you will see a preview of the setting on the screen. Press **OK** to apply the selected aspect ratio.

The following table gives an overview of the aspect ratios. The possible aspect ratios depend on the source or video file being played.

Aspect ratio	Description
Auto	The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the image in the optimum ratio.
4:3, **16:9**, **Cinema**	The image is fixed in the corresponding ratio. Select one of these options if the image is distorted or a section of the image is cut off or blurry when **Auto** is selected.
Zoom	The image is enlarged to fill the entire display.
Original	The image is displayed in the ratio of the source format. Select this option if the image is distorted or a section of the image is cut off or blurry when **Auto** is selected.

Settings

► Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > ⚙.

Online additional data

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 173*.

If available, various information about the track currently playing (such as the cover) will be loaded from the Internet when this function is switched on.

DVD playback parental control*

Playback of video DVDs can be restricted based on age restrictions using parental control.

Displaying the parental control menu

– Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > ⚙ > **DVD playback parental control**.
– Enter the PIN for parental control. The PIN set at the factory is **1234**.
– Press **OK**.

Switching the rating level on and off

– Requirement: the parental control menu must be displayed.
– Select: **Set rating level** > *select a rating level (for example, level 5)* > ⮌. **Or**: to remove all restrictions, select **Off**.
– Eight different protection levels can be set for parental control. If you set the parental control level at Level 5, all DVDs from levels 1-5 can be played. Video DVDs with a higher level will not play.

Changing the PIN

– Requirement: the parental control menu must be displayed.
– Select: **Change PIN** > *enter a new PIN for parental control* > **OK**.
– Repeat the entry and press **OK**.

Tips

– Not all video DVDs have parental control.
– The protection levels for the parental control are based on the US standards from the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA). Note that the age levels for video DVDs in European countries may differ. ▶

1) Depending on the DVD, this may not be possible during playback.

– PIN entry for parental control will be locked for approximately one minute if you enter the incorrect PIN three times in a row. The PIN can only be reset by an authorized Audi dealer.

Supported media and file formats

Overview

The DVD drive, SD card reader, and the USB storage device connection support the following audio/video file properties:*

	Audio files						Video files		
Supported media	**SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC memory cards**: with a capacity of up to 256 GB **DVD drive**: audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, song)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB; DVD±R/RW; DVD video; DVD audio with audio tracks that are compatible with a DVD video player; **Audi music interface**: mobile devices (such as an iPod ⇨ *page 207*, MTP player, USB storage device in "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6" that conforms to USB 2.0: USB sticks, USB MP3 players (Plug-and-Play-capable), external USB flash drives and hard drives								
File system	**Memory cards**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB storage device**: FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB storage device partitions (primary/logical***: 2 per USB-connection **CD/DVD file system:** ISO9660, Joliet, UDF								
Metadata	**Album cover**: GIF, JPG, PNG with max. 800x800 px. The album cover from the medium or from Gracenote* is displayed, depending on availability.								
Format	MPEG 1/2 Layer 3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG 2/4	Opus	FLAC	ALAC	MPEG 1/2	MPEG4 AVC (H.264)	Windows Media Video 9
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.opus .ogg .oga	.flac	.m4a	.mpg; .mpeg	.mp4; .m4v; .mov; .avi	.wmv; .asf
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX								
Characteristics	up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies				48 kHz sampling frequency		up to maximum 10 Mbit/s and 1920x1080 px at maximum 30 fps		
Number of files	**DVD drive***: maximum 1,000 files per media source **USB storage device and memory cards**: maximum 50,000 files per medium; maximum 1,000 files per playlist/directory								

Tips

– The media drives do not support the Windows Media Audio 9 Voice format.
– For compressing MP3 files, AUDI AG recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for audio files with variable bit rate.
– Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) may display differently or may ▶

not always display, depending on the system language.
– The manufacturer of the storage device can provide information about its “USB Device Subclass”.
– Some MTP player functions are not supported, such as rating music tracks and video playback.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
Audi music interface/Bluetooth audio player: the mobile device is not supported.	Read the instructions in the chapter ⇨ *page 207, Multimedia connections/*⇨ *page 205, Bluetooth audio player*. You can learn about supported mobile devices in the Audi database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth.
Audi music interface: the mobile device is not recognized as a source.	For many mobile phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible when the battery level is too low (less than 5% charge level). The mobile device will only be recognized as a media source in the MMI after connecting if the battery charge level is sufficient.
Audi music interface: malfunctions during audio playback through an iPod/iPhone.	The **Bluetooth audio player** function is switched on. Switch this function off ⇨ *page 219* when you are not using the **Bluetooth audio player**.
Audi music interface: audio playback through the connected mobile device is not possible.	Make sure the USB mode *MTP* is selected in the settings on your mobile device.
Bluetooth audio player: interference with track display and audio playback.	Playback interference can occur when using the **Bluetooth audio player** if a music player app from a third party provider is open. AUDI AG recommends using the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (such as a smartphone).
Online media*: connection failed between the MMI and the myAudi app.	To establish a connection to the MMI, the MMI connection switch must be switched on in the myAudi app status screen.
Online media: no playback of online media.	Check if a suitable data plan was purchased.
Wi-Fi hotspot*: your Wi-Fi device is disconnected from the Wi-Fi hotspot.	Make sure the network optimization functions are switched off in the Wi-Fi settings or in the network settings for your Wi-Fi device. For additional information, refer to the user guide for your Wi-Fi device.

Audi smartphone interface

Setup

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI with a cable or wirelessly using the Audi smartphone interface. Certain content on your smartphone is adapted in the MMI while driving and can be operated through the MMI.*

Requirement

The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

An iPhone generation 5 or newer with Lightning connector and iOS 7.1.2 operating system or higher is required. **Or**:

A smartphone with the Android Auto app and Android 5.0 Lollipop operating system or higher is required.

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Audi smartphone interface**.
- ▸ Press **New connection**.
- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 207* using a USB adapter ⇨ *page 207, fig. 141*. **Or**:
- ▸ To connect your iPhone wireless, switch on the Bluetooth function and Wi-Fi on your iPhone. Open the CarPlay settings in your iPhone. In the MMI, press on your smartphone in the list of displayed devices.
- ▸ To update the list, press ⟳.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.
- ▸ Pay attention to any additional system prompts on your smartphone, if applicable.

If you declined use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto the first time you connected your smartphone, then select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Audi smartphone interface** > *a smartphone*.

- ▸ Follow the system instructions.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

– The functions that can be used depend on the following factors, among others:
  – The brand of your smartphone
  – The version of the operating system in your smartphone
  – The software version of the app used
  – The USB adapter cable and correct connection
  – Your cell phone service provider
  – The customized settings on your smartphone
– One of the factors above or a combination of any of them could cause your smartphone to be incompatible with the Audi smartphone interface. Compatibility cannot be guaranteed for all types of smartphones. For more information and assistance, refer to the user guide and the manufacturer of your smartphone.
– Please note that you can only connect your smartphone via the front Audi music interface in order to use the Audi smartphone interface.
– Wireless CarPlay is not available in all countries.
– If the connected smartphone has voice control, you can operate your smartphone using the external voice recognition system ⇨ *page 26*.
– The menu language shown in the MMI is based on the settings in your smartphone.
– Some MMI functions are not available when there is an active Audi smartphone interface connection.
– You cannot connect any mobile devices via Bluetooth when an Apple CarPlay connection is active. ▸

– Usage of the Audi smartphone interface depends on the availability of services through third party providers.
– AUDI AG merely provides access to third party services through the MMI and does not assume any responsibility for the content of these services.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Problem	Solution
Audi smartphone interface cannot be opened.	Check the battery charge level on your smartphone. Check the USB cable and use a different one if necessary. Check if Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
	Android Auto: check if the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone.
Connecting the smartphone to the MMI failed.	Make sure that you are using the correct USB adapter and check if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 207*.
	Apple CarPlay: check if Apple CarPlay is activated on your smartphone.
	Android Auto: check in the Android Auto app if Android Auto permits new vehicles.
	Wireless connection: open the settings for Bluetooth and CarPlay on your smartphone. Remove your vehicle. Open the connection manager in the MMI ⇨ *page 219*. Delete your smartphone in the Telephone 1 and Audi smartphone interface submenus. Repeat the connection process. Restart the MMI ⇨ *page 18*. Restart your smartphone.
The smartphone is not automatically detected.	Make sure that you are using the correct USB adapter and check if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 207*. Check if the requirements needed to connect a smartphone have been met.

4K8012721BA

Additional settings
System settings

Introduction

General settings are described in this chapter. You can find specific settings in the chapters about those settings.

Date and time

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Date & time**.

Possible settings:

– **Set date and time automatically**
– **Date**
– **Time**
– **Date format**
– **Use 24h time format**
– **Automatic time zone***
– **Time zone**
– **Automatic daylight saving time***
– **Manual daylight saving time***

Measurement units

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Measurement units**.

Possible settings:

– **Speed**
– **Distance**
– **Temperature**
– **Pressure**
– **Consumption (engine)**
– **Volume**

Language and keyboard

► Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Language & keyboard**.

Language

You can change the languages for the display, navigation announcements*, and the voice recognition system*.

Keyboard

See ⇨ *page 22*.

Sound

Requirement: an audio source must be selected.

► Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Sound**.

Possible settings:

– **Treble**
– **Bass**
– **Balance/fader**
– **Focus**
– **Speed-dependent volume control***
– **3D effect**
– **Subwoofer***
– **Surround Level***

Focus

You can optimize the sound distribution for various locations in the vehicle.

3D effect*

You can adjust the intensity of the 3D effect. With the **Medium** setting, you will hear an optimal 3D effect for all sources.

Announcements and tones

► Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Announcements & tone**.

Possible settings:

– **Volume of announcements**
– **Welcome sound**

WARNING

Adjust the volume of the audio system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times. ▶

Tips

The volume is automatically adjusted to a preset level when the MMI is switched on.

Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Bluetooth**

Bluetooth

Applies to: MMI: You can select a setting for visibility of the Infotainment system for other Bluetooth devices. To connect a new Bluetooth device, the **Visible** setting must be selected. If **Invisible** is selected, a Bluetooth connection will only be possible with paired devices.

Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: MMI: When this function is switched on, the profile will load automatically when your Bluetooth audio player is within range.

Bluetooth name

Applies to: MMI: The MMI's Bluetooth name is displayed and can be changed.

Software update

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **System maintenance** > **Software update**.
▸ If necessary, insert a storage medium with the update data into the corresponding drive ⇨ *page 204*.
▸ Press **Search for updates**.
▸ Select the corresponding update.
▸ Press **Next**.
▸ Follow the instructions in the display.

WARNING

– Perform the installation only when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident
– If the installation fails, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Note

The connection costs for the software update are included in the Audi connect pricing. Using a personal SIM card for the Internet connection may result in additional cost. Always follow the information found in ⇨ ! *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Tips

The length of the process depends on the size of the update.

Factory default settings

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **System maintenance** > **Restore factory settings**.
▸ Select the desired functions individually, or
▸ Select the option **Select all**.
▸ Press **Apply**. The settings will be reset. The key user will remain stored.
▸ To also delete the key user, select **Remove key user**.
▸ To completely delete a smartphone that is paired with the Audi smartphone interface*, reset **Audi smartphone interface** and **Bluetooth**.

Tips

– Make sure that not only the settings were deleted but also the stored data, if necessary.
– The system may restart when the settings are reset. This may take a few minutes.

Connected devices

Connection manager

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices**.

Possible submenus:

– **Telephone 1**
– **Telephone 2**
– **Data connection** ▶

– **Audi smartphone interface**
– **Audio player**
– **Contacts**
– **WLAN hotspot**
– **myAudi app**
– **Headset**

myAudi app

This function is available if the myAudi app is installed on your mobile device and started, and if the mobile device is connected with the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot.

Contacts

This function is available if your own mini SIM card[1)] is inserted in the SIM card reader* to use the telephone.

Audi smartphone interface

You can connect your cell phone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 207* using a USB adapter ⇨ *page 207, fig. 141*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may be able to connect your smartphone (such as an iPhone) wirelessly via Apple CarPlay. ⇨ *page 216*

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ *in Wi-Fi settings on page 177*.

Connection options

Connecting a device

Requirement: visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 219* and mobile device must be activated.

▸ Applies to: MMI/Bluetooth device: Select a submenu, such as **Telephone 1**.
▸ To search for and connect your mobile device, press the **New connection** button ⇨ *page 158*.
▸ Applies to: MMI/SIM card reader: Insert you personal SIM card into the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 160*.

Selecting a connected device

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select a submenu, such as **Telephone 1**.
▸ Select your mobile device from the list of connected devices. The connection will be made.

Disconnecting a connected device

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select a submenu, such as **Telephone 1**.
▸ Press on the connected mobile device. The selected device will be disconnected from the MMI.

Additional options

Depending on the selected function, additional options may be available.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Press and hold a Bluetooth device until the **Options** menu is displayed.
▸ Select one of the items in the menu.

Bluetooth profiles

You can switch desired profiles on or off.

Delete

The mobile device will be disconnected from the MMI and removed from the list of paired devices.

Favorite*

To set a paired mobile device as the default phone, activate this function.

When the mobile device is in range and the Bluetooth function on the mobile device and in the MMI is switched on, the default phone will be given priority over the other Bluetooth devices and will be connected directly to the MMI.

Legal information

General information

Information on the software licenses can be found online at www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

1) Not available in every market. In conjunction with Audi connect (Infotainment)* and Audi phone box*.

MMI

► Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General**.

License subscription

Possible settings:

You can find information here about subscriptions, for example: Audi connect Infotainment: your subscription is valid through 11/22/2020.

– **Audi connect vehicle control**
– **Audi connect Infotainment**

Version information

Information on the software version of the MMI and the navigation database* will be displayed.

Legal information

Possible settings:

– **Software information**
– **About Audi connect***
– **About Audi AI***

Audi smartphone interface

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Requirement: a smartphone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 216*.

► Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Audi smartphone interface**.
► Press and hold an item until the associated options are displayed.
► Press **Legal notes**.

Instrument cluster

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary.

► Select in the instrument cluster: vehicle functions tab. ⇨ *page 12*
► Press the ☰ button on the multifunction steering wheel until the display appears.

Possible settings:

– **Engine code**
– **Software information**
– **Version information**

Head-up display

Applies to: vehicles with head-up display

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS Display & brightness** > **Head-up display*** > **Display contents** > **Show the license text in the head-up display**. Information on your licenses will be displayed.

4K8012721BA

Checking and Filling

Fuel

Types of gasoline

The correct gasoline grade is stated on the inside of the fuel filler door.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be driven with **unleaded gasoline**.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

The individual gasoline grades are differentiated by **octane ratings**. This value is given with (R +M)/2 equating to AKI or in RON.

The headings below match the sticker in the fuel filler door.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY MIN. (R+M)/2 87 Regular / MIN. RON 91 Regular

Use regular gasoline with minimum 87 AKI / 91 RON ⇨ (!).

The maximum engine power is only reached if premium gasoline 91 AKI / 95 RON is used.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY PREMIUM MIN. (R +M)/2 91 / SUPER MIN. RON 95

Using premium gasoline with minimum 91 AKI / 95 RON is recommended.

If premium gasoline is not available, you can also use regular gasoline 87 AKI / 91 RON. However this does reduce the engine power slightly.

Note

– Filling the tank just one time with leaded fuel or other metallic additives will cause permanent deterioration to the catalytic converter function.
– When gasoline with an octane rating that is too low is used, high speeds or heavy engine load can lead to engine damage.

Tips

The vehicle may be filled with fuel that has a higher octane rating than what is required by the engine.

Gasoline mixture

Gasoline with alcohol or MTBE (Methyl-Tert-Butyl-Ether)

You can use unleaded gasoline mixed with alcohol or MTBE (generally labeled as oxygenated compounds) as long as the fuel meets the following conditions:

Gasoline with methanol content (methyl alcohol or methanol)

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 3% methanol
– More than 2% solvent

Gasoline with ethanol content (ethyl alcohol or ethanol)

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 15% ethanol

Gasoline with MTBE content

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 15% MTBE

Gasoline adapted to the season

Many gasoline fuels are adapted to the seasons. When the season changes, we recommend refueling at high-traffic gas stations. It is more likely that the gasoline will be suitable for the season there.

Note

– Gasoline with methanol content that does not meet the specified conditions may cause corrosion damage and damage to plastic or rubber components in the fuel system.
– Do not use gasoline that does not meet the specifications.
– If you are unable to find out if a specific gasoline mixture meets the specifications, ask the gas station operator or their fuel supplier.

– Do not use any gasoline mixture whose composition cannot be identified.
– Audi does not assume any responsibility for damage to the fuel system or for performance problems caused by using gasoline mixtures different from those specified. This type of damage also does not fall under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty or under the emissions control system warranty.
– If you notice a higher fuel consumption or poor handling or performance problems due to such gasoline mixtures, we recommend fueling with unblended gasoline.

Gasoline additives

An important issue for many automobile manufacturers is combustion residue in the engine that results from the use of certain fuels.

Although types of gasoline differ depending on the manufacturer, there are similarities. Certain substances in the gasoline may cause deposits in the engine. Additives in the gasoline that should keep the engine and fuel system clean do not all function equally.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

If you use incorrect fuels over a long period of time, the maximum engine performance may be impaired by combustion residue.

Note

Damage or malfunctions caused by the use of incorrect types of gasoline are not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refueling

Fueling procedure

Your vehicle is equipped with a capless fuel filler system.

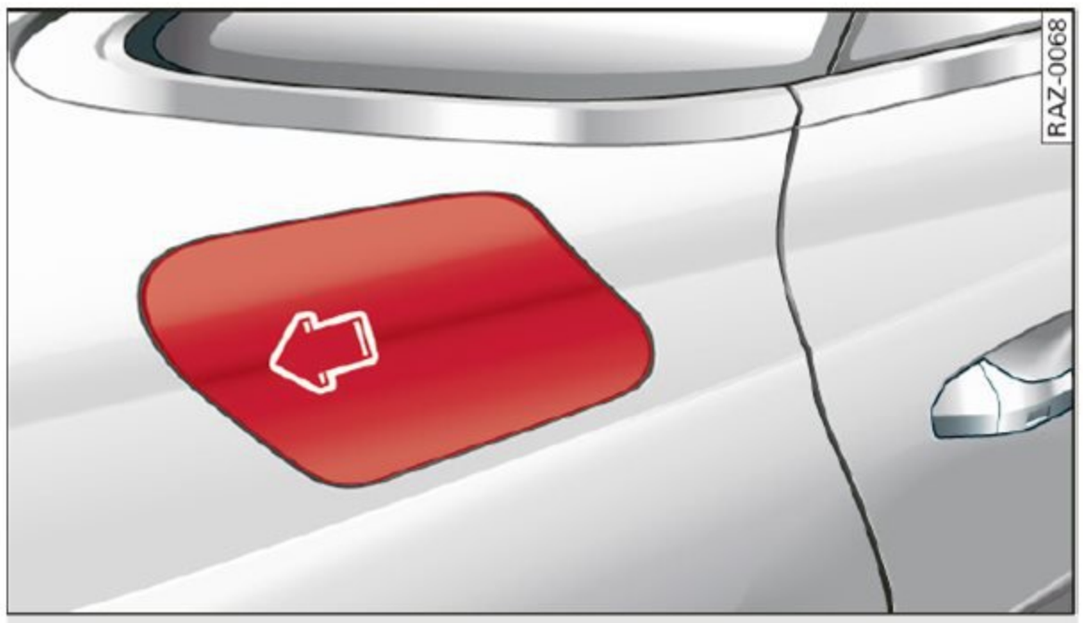


Fig. 144 Right rear side of the vehicle: opening the fuel filler door

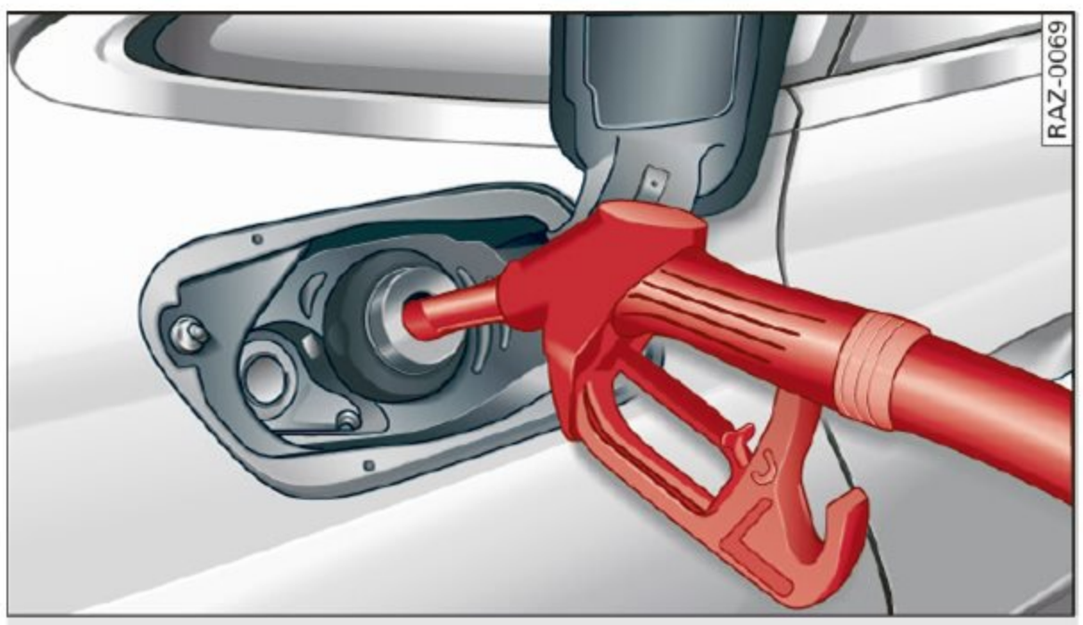


Fig. 145 Right rear side of the vehicle: fuel pump nozzle inserted

The fuel filler door is unlocked or locked by the central locking system.

- ▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *fig. 144*.
- ▸ Insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the fuel filler neck. Make sure it is seated correctly.
- ▸ Begin fueling. Once the fuel pump nozzle turns off the first time, the fuel tank is full. Do not continue fueling, or else the expansion space in the tank will be filled with fuel.
- ▸ After the fuel pump has switched off, wait five seconds before removing the nozzle to allow the rest of the fuel to finish dripping into the fuel tank.
- ▸ Close the fuel filler door and then press on the left side until it latches.

The correct fuel type for your vehicle can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel ▶

filler door. For additional information on fuel, see ⇨ *page 222*.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 291*.

If the central locking system malfunctions, there is a fuel filler door emergency release ⇨ *page 225*.

Messages

Please refuel

If the indicator light turns on for the first time and the message appears, there are about 2.1 gallons (8 liters) of fuel left in the tank.

Please refuel immediately

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, the fuel tank is almost empty. Refuel the vehicle immediately.

Tank system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the fuel tank system. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Improper fueling procedures and improper handling of fuel can lead to explosions, fires, severe burns, and other injuries.

- Do not smoke. Keep away from open flames.
- The ignition must be switched off when refueling.
- Mobile devices, radio devices, and other radio equipment should always be switched off when refueling. Electromagnetic rays could cause sparks and start a fire.
- If you do not insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the filler tube, then fuel can leak out. Spilled fuel can ignite and start a fire.
- Never get into the vehicle when refueling. If there is an exceptional situation where you must enter the vehicle, close the door and touch a metal surface before touching the fuel pump nozzle again. This will reduce the risk of electrostatic discharge that can cause flying sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refueling.

WARNING

Transporting fuel containers inside the vehicle is not recommended. Fuel could leak out of the container and ignite, especially during an accident. This can cause explosions, fires, and injuries.

- If you must transport fuel in a fuel container, note the following:
  - Always place the fuel container on the ground before filling. Never fill the fuel container with fuel while it is inside or on the vehicle. Electrostatic discharge can occur while refueling and the fuel vapors could ignite.
  - When using fuel containers made of metal, the fuel pump nozzle must always remain in contact with the container to reduce the risk of static charge.
  - Insert the fuel pump nozzle as far as possible into the filler opening while refueling.
  - Follow the applicable legal regulations in the country where you are driving when using, storing and transporting fuel containers.
  - Make sure that the fuel container meets the industry standards, for example ANSI or ASTM F852-86.

Note

- Remove fuel that has overflowed onto any vehicle components immediately to reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel may enter the exhaust system and increase the risk of damage to the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

Do not overfill the fuel tank, or fuel could leak out when the vehicle is warming up. ▶

Tips

The fuel filler door on your vehicle does not lock if you lock the vehicle from the inside using the central locking switch.

Tips

Your vehicle is equipped with a misfueling guard. It allows the vehicle to be fueled only with the correct fuel pump nozzle.

– A worn or damaged nozzle or a nozzle that is too small may not be able to open the diesel misfueling guard. If this is the case, try turning the nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different fuel pump, or see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

– The misfueling guard does not open when adding fuel from a fuel container. When refueling with a reserve canister, you must use the funnel stored in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 225*.

Fueling with reserve canister (emergency fueling)

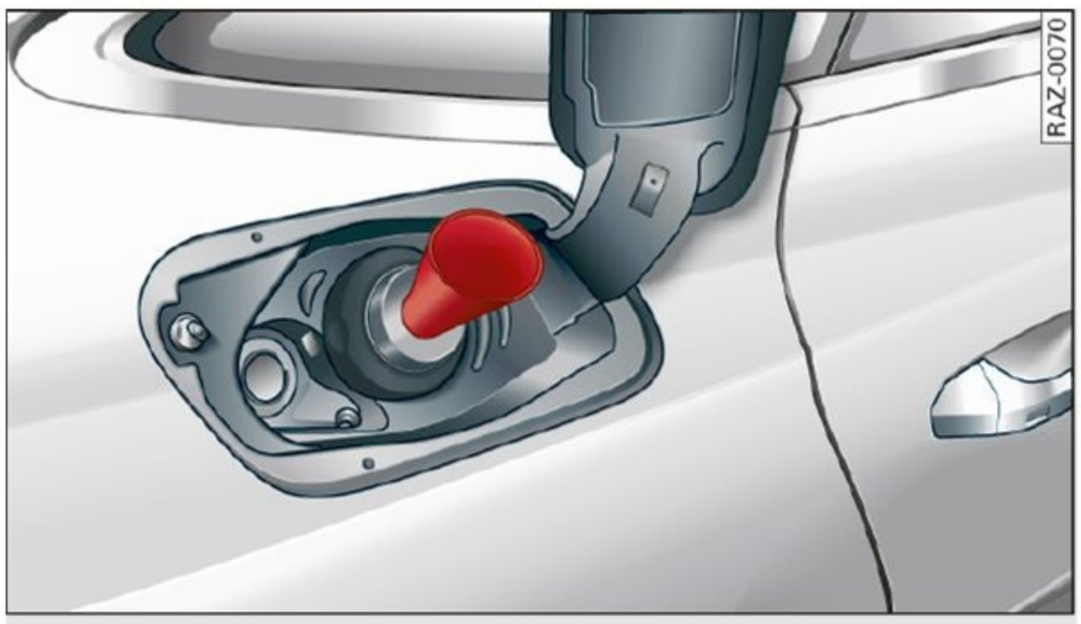


Fig. 146 Fuel tank filler neck with the mounted funnel

Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Fueling procedure on page 224*.

The funnel used for emergency fueling is contained in the vehicle tool kit, which is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor ⇨ *page 266*.

- ▸ Fold up the cargo floor in the luggage compartment.
- ▸ Remove the funnel from the vehicle tool kit.
- ▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *page 223, fig. 144*.
- ▸ Insert the funnel into the fuel filler neck all the way until it stops ⇨ *fig. 146*. Make sure that the ring on the funnel goes into the fuel tank filler neck.
- ▸ Guide the reserve canister filler tube into the funnel and start the emergency fueling.
- ▸ Remove and clean the funnel after the fueling process. Then close the fuel filler door and press on it until it latches.

Note

Remove fuel that has overflowed onto any vehicle components immediately to reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle.

Fuel filler door emergency release

If the central locking system malfunctions, the fuel filler door can be unlocked manually.

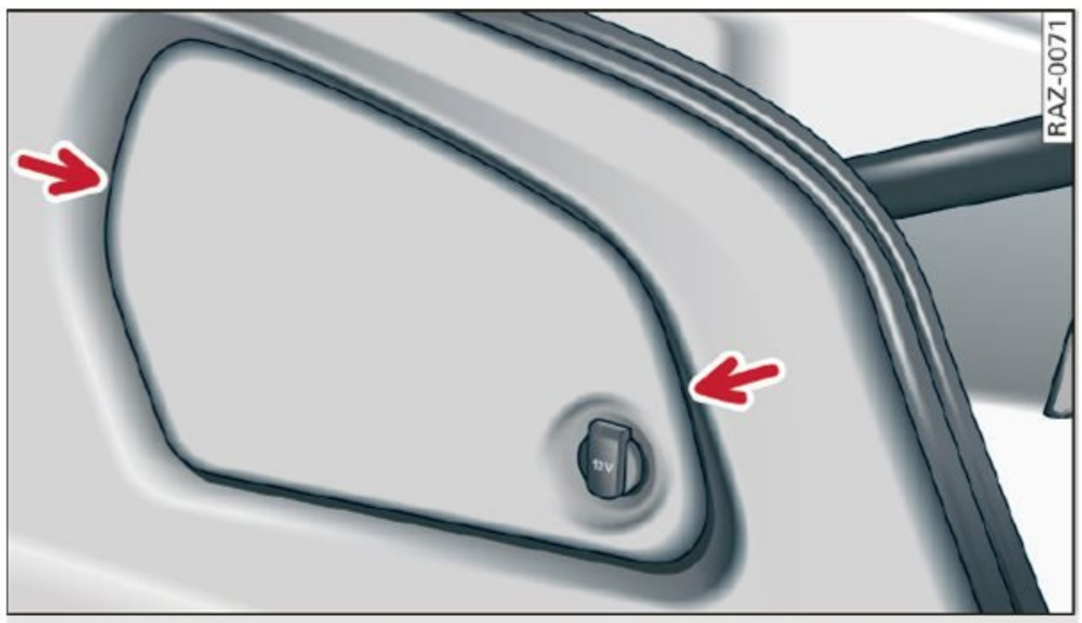


Fig. 147 Right cover in the luggage compartment: removing the cover

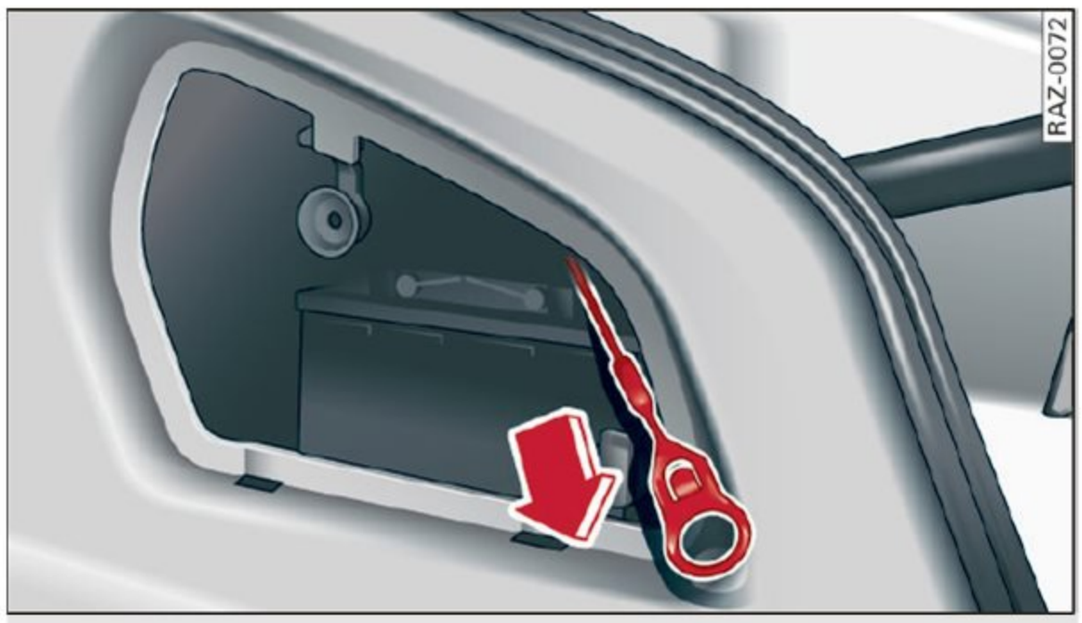


Fig. 148 Luggage compartment: fuel filler door emergency release

The emergency opening mechanism is located behind the right cover in the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Remove the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 266*.

- ▸ Insert the flat side of the screwdriver carefully into the slot between the side trim panel and the cover ⇨ *fig. 147* -arrows- and pry out the cover. Keep in mind that a power cable for the socket is located on the rear side.
- ▸ To unlock the fuel filler door, loosen the red loop from the retainer and then pull on the loop carefully ⇨ *fig. 148* ⇨ (!).
- ▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *page 223, fig. 144*.

(!) Note

Only pull on the loop until you feel resistance. You will not hear it release. If you continue to pull, you could damage the emergency release mechanism.

Catalytic converter

The vehicle may only be driven with unleaded gasoline, or the catalytic converter will be destroyed.

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel could enter the exhaust system, which could cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

If the indicator light blinks or turns on, there is a malfunction that is causing poor emissions quality and that could damage the catalytic converter. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.

– Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
– Do not park your vehicle over flammable materials such as grass or leaves because the high temperature of the emissions system could start a fire.
– Do not apply underbody protectant in the exhaust system area, because this increases the risk of fire.

Engine compartment

Active hood (pedestrian protection system)

Applies to: vehicles with active hood

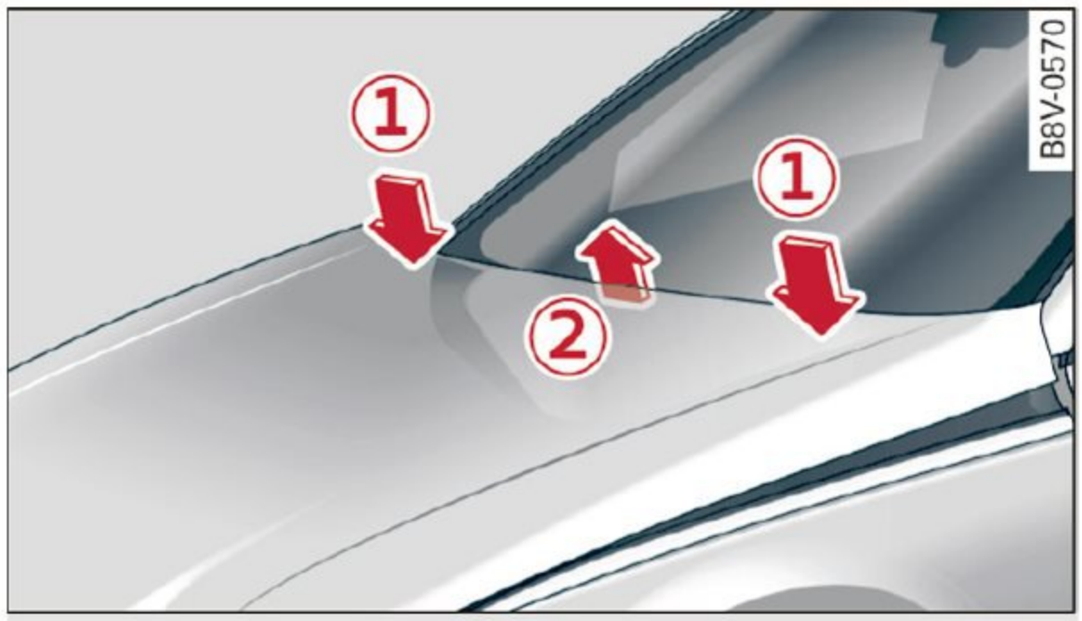


Fig. 149 Pushing the hood back into place and checking it after it has been triggered

The pedestrian protection system may be triggered if the front of the vehicle collides with a pedestrian. To hood will raise slightly to create an additional crumple zone in this situation.

If the pedestrian protection system has been triggered, the indicator light will turn on along with a message.

- ▸ To latch the hood, place both hands in area (1) on the left side of the hood and press downward ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ To check if the hood is latch correctly, pull the hood upward at the rear edge (2). If you are able to lift the hood, press it down again.
- ▸ Once the hood has latched correctly, repeat the procedure on the right side of the vehicle (1).
- ▸ Immediately drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the pedestrian protection system serviced ⇨ (!).

If there is a malfunction in the pedestrian protection system, the indicator light will turn on with a message. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

The pedestrian protection system sensors are located in the front bumper. In rare cases, the ▶

system may be triggered in situations where it cannot rule out the possibility of a collision with a pedestrian. These situations may include:

– If the vehicle collides with a post
– If the vehicle collides with an animal
– If the vehicle drives into a snow bank
– If the vehicle bottoms out when driving on roads in very poor condition

WARNING

– Do not install additional license plate brackets in the front of the vehicle or brackets that are different from the ones installed at the factory.
– Never modify or replace the bumper or hood to make tuning modifications. This can impair the pedestrian protection function and may affect the vehicle's operating license.
– The system can only provide protection during one collision. If the pedestrian protection system has been triggered, have it replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Only press the hood back in place with both hands positioned completely on the hood. This will reduce the risk of pinching your fingers between the hood and the vehicle body. To reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others, always pay attention when pressing the hood down.

Note

All repair procedures on the bumper and on the pedestrian protection system must be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility that will perform the work according to Audi factory specifications. Incorrect repairs may impair the functionality and may void the vehicle's operating license.

Working in the engine compartment

Special care is required if you are working in the engine compartment

For work in the engine compartment, such as checking and filling fluids, there is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns. For this reason, follow all the warnings and general safety precautions provided in the following information. The engine compartment is a dangerous area in the vehicle. ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Turn the engine off.
– Switch the ignition off.
– Set the parking brake.
– Select the “P” (Park) selector lever position.
– Allow the engine to cool.
– Keep children away from the engine compartment.
– Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids (such as the freeze protection contained in the coolant) can catch fire.
– Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.
– Never reach into the radiator fan. The fan is temperature-controlled and can turn on suddenly, even when the ignition is switched off.
– Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
– Never open the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is warm. The cooling system is under pressure.
– To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam or coolant, cover the cap with a thick cloth when opening.
– Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
– Due to the risk of electric shock, never touch the ignition cable or other components in the electronic high-voltage ignition system when the engine is running or is starting.
– If a gear is engaged while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently. Pressing the accelerator pedal will cause the vehicle to move, and this could result in an accident.
– If inspections or repairs must be performed while the engine is running, moving ▶

4K8012721BA

components (such as the ribbed belt, generator, and radiator fan) pose an additional risk.

– Set the parking brake first and select the "P" (Park) selector lever position.
– Always make sure that no parts of the body, jewelry, ties, loose clothing, and long hair can be caught in moving engine components. Before any work, always remove any jewelry and ties, tie back long hair, and make sure all clothing fits close to the body to to reduce the risk of anything becoming caught in engine components.
– Pay attention to the following warnings listed when work on the fuel system or on the electrical equipment is required.
  – Do not smoke.
  – Never work near open flames.
  – Always have a working fire extinguisher nearby.
– All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents, or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Limit your exposure to exhaust and chemicals to as short a time as possible.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

– Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

When filling fluids, be sure not to add any fluids to the wrong reservoirs. Otherwise severe malfunctions and engine damage will occur.

For the sake of the environment

You should regularly check the ground under your vehicle in order to detect leaks quickly. If there are visible spots from oil or other fluids, bring your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to be checked.

Opening and closing the hood

The hood is released from inside the vehicle.

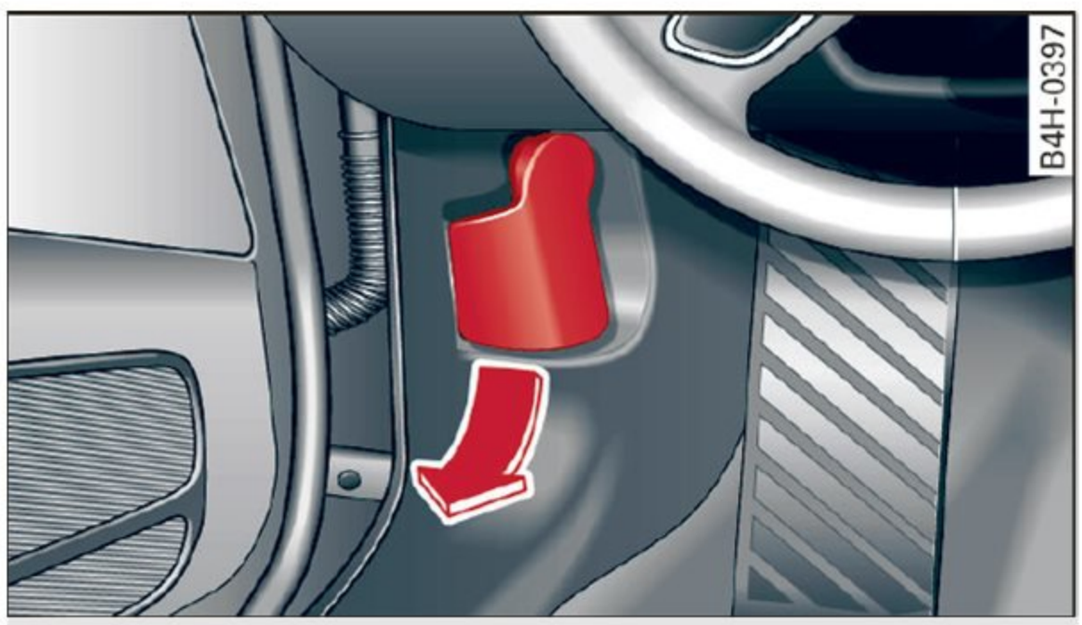


Fig. 150 Footwell: release lever



Fig. 151 Unlocked hood: lever

Make sure the wiper arms are not raised up from the windshield. Otherwise the paint could be damaged.

Opening the hood

▸ With the door open, pull the lever below the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 150*.
▸ Raise the hood slightly ⇨ ⚠.

- ▸ Press the lever ⇨ *fig. 151* in the direction of the arrow. This releases the hooks.
- ▸ Open the hood.

Closing the hood

- ▸ Push the hood down until you override the force of the strut.
- ▸ Let the hood fall lightly into the latch. *Do not press it in.* ⇨ ⚠.

Message

Warning! Hood is not locked. Stop vehicle and check the lock

The hood latch is not locked correctly. Stop immediately and close the hood.

⚠ WARNING

- Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
- For safety reasons, the hood must always be closed securely while driving. Because of this, always check the hood after closing it to make sure it is latched correctly. The hood is latched if the front corners cannot be lifted.
- If you notice that the hood is not latched while you are driving, stop immediately and close it, because driving when the hood is not latched increases the risk of an accident.

Engine compartment overview

The most important check points.

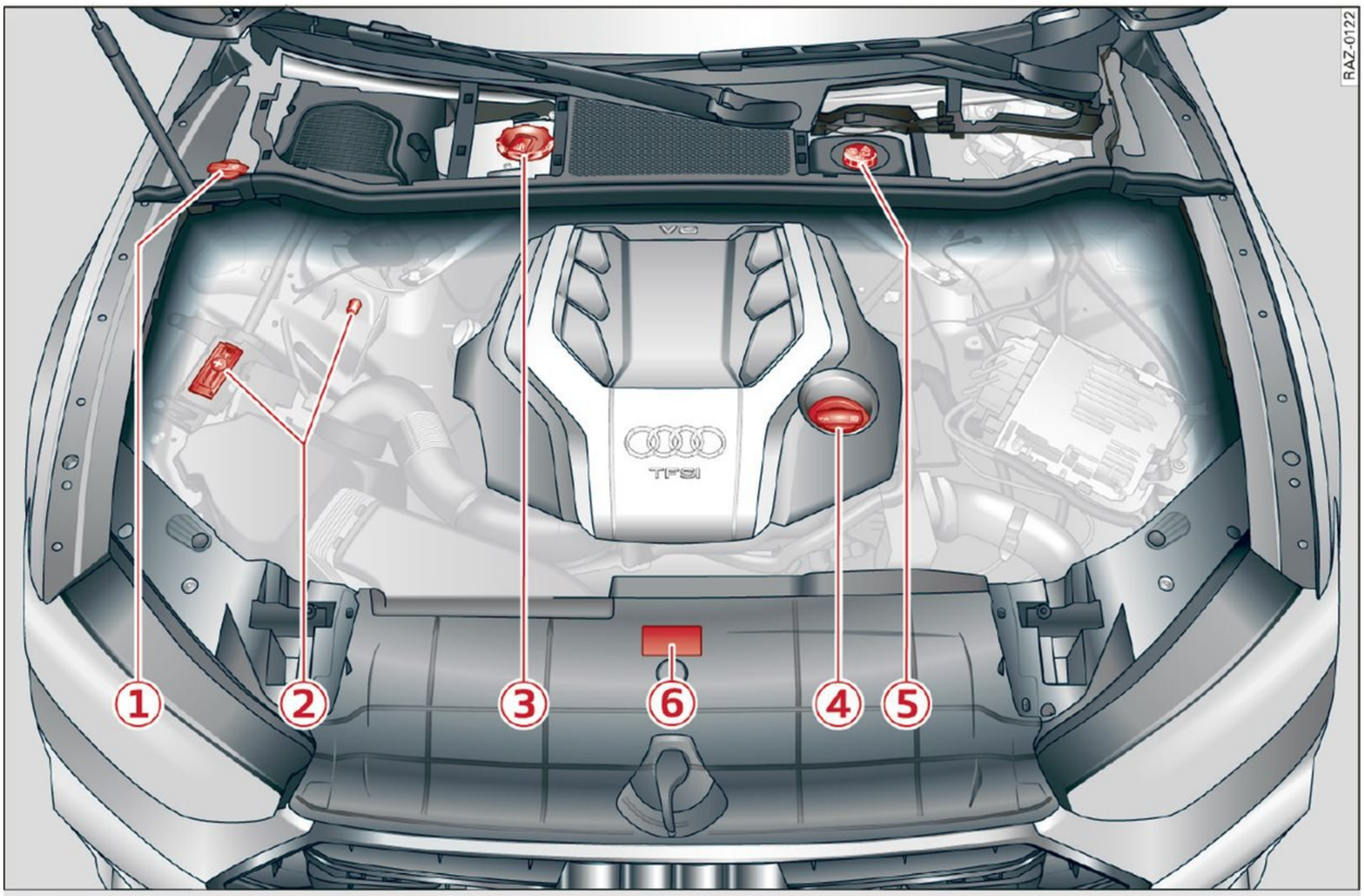


Fig. 152 Typical location of the reservoir and the engine oil filler opening

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 227*.

① Washer fluid reservoir (⛲) ⇨ *page 238*

② Jump start point (+) under a cover, (-) with hex head screw ⇨ *page 238, Charging the battery*, ⇨ *page 272, Jump starting* ▶

③ Coolant reservoir (🌡) under a cover ⇨ *page 234*

④ Engine oil filler opening (🛢) ⇨ *page 232*

⑤ Brake fluid reservoir (⭘) under a cover ⇨ *page 235*

⑥ Engine oil label* with VW standard ⇨ *page 230*

The coolant expansion tank and the engine oil filling opening may be located in different places within the engine compartment, depending on the engine version.

Engine oil

If the engine oil level is too low

If you need to add engine oil, use an oil that is listed on the sticker. The sticker is located at the front of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 229, fig. 152*.

If the recommended engine oil is not available, **in an emergency** you may add a maximum of 1 quart (1 liter) of ACEA C3 or API SN engine oil **one time** until the next oil change.

For more information on the correct engine oil for your vehicle, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have the oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility.

Audi recommends
Castrol EDGE Professional
Audi recommends using the LongLife high-performance engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts.

Messages

Engine oil pressure

Turn off engine. Oil pressure too low

Stop driving and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 231*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 232*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Engine oil level

Please add oil immediately.

Stop driving and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 231* and add engine oil immediately ⇨ *page 232*.

Please add max. x qt (x l) oil. You can continue driving

Add the amount of oil shown immediately ⇨ *page 232*.

Reducing the oil level

Please reduce oil level

There is too much oil in the engine and there is a risk of damaging the catalytic converter or engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have engine oil extracted if necessary. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration, and heavy engine loads.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level sensor: oil change necessary. Please contact Service

Fuel has entered the engine oil. This will cause the engine oil level to rise slowly and the engine oil quality to decrease. Do not extract engine oil to reduce the level, because this will increase the risk of engine damage. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have engine oil extracted.

Oil level system: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor that checks the engine oil level has malfunctioned. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Oil pressure sensor: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor that checks the engine oil pressure has malfunctioned. Drive to an authorized Audi ▶

dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine warm-up request

Please drive to warm up engine

Fuel has entered the engine oil, either due to low outside temperatures or frequent short drives. Drive until the engine is warm so that the fuel in the engine oil will evaporate. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating, and heavy engine loads when doing this.

Tips

The oil pressure warning is not an oil level indicator. Always check the oil level regularly.

Checking the engine oil level

The engine oil level can be checked in the MMI.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 227*.

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Shut the engine off when it is warm.
- ▸ Switch only the ignition back on.
- ▸ Wait approximately two minutes.
- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Oil level**.
- ▸ Read the oil level in the display. Add engine oil if the bar in the oil level indicator is just below "min" ⇨ *page 232*.

Note

If the engine oil level is too low or too high, there is a risk of engine damage.

Tips

The oil level indicator in the display is only an informational display. If the oil level is too low, a minimum oil warning appears in the instrument cluster. Add oil and close the hood. The current oil level will be displayed on the MMI the next time the ignition is switched on.

Tips

The engine oil consumption may be up to 0.5 quart/600 miles (0.5 liter/1,000 km), depending on driving style and operating conditions. Consumption may be higher during the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km). The engine oil level must be checked regularly. It is best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.

– Because of the lubrication and cooling of the engine, combustion engines consume oil. The oil consumption varies depending on the engine and may change during the service life of the engine. Engines generally consume more oil at the beginning during the break-in period. Then oil consumption stabilizes after the break-in period.
– Under normal conditions, oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the engine RPM, the climate conditions, and the road conditions. The dilution of oil from condensation or fuel residue as well as the age of the oil also play a role. Because engine wear increases with mileage, oil consumption will increase again over time until it may be necessary to replace worn components.
– Because all these variables play a role, it is not possible to define an oil consumption standard. Therefore, the oil level must be checked regularly.
– If you believe that your engine has increased its oil consumption, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to determine the cause. Please note that an exact oil consumption measurement must be done with the necessary care and accuracy and may take time. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility is trained in accurately measuring the oil consumption.
– You can find information on engine oil and engine oil capacities for the USA at www.audiusa.com/help/maintenance, or for Canada at www.audi.ca/ca/web/en/customer-area/care-and-maintenance/audi-service-schedules.html, or call 800-822-2834.

Adding engine oil

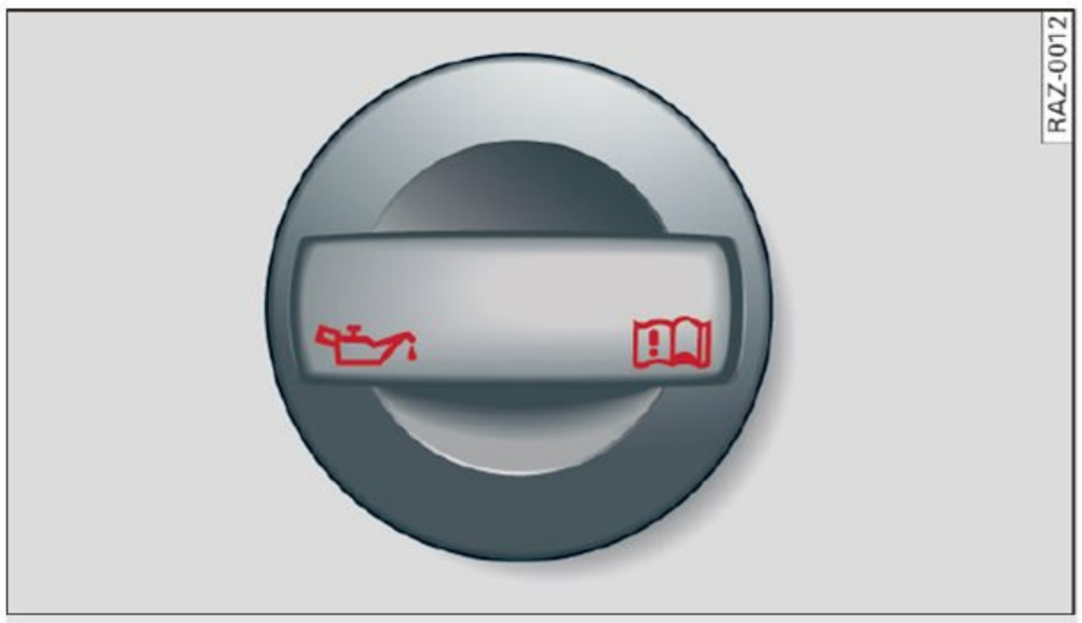


Fig. 153 Engine compartment: engine oil filler opening cover

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 227, Working in the engine compartment*.

- ▸ Turn the engine off.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 228*.
- ▸ Unscrew the cap for the engine oil filler opening ⇨ *fig. 153*.
- ▸ Carefully add 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) of the correct oil ⇨ *page 230*.
- ▸ Close the engine oil filler opening cap.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 228*.
- ▸ Restart the ignition after two minutes and read the current oil level in the MMI ⇨ *page 231, Checking the engine oil level*.
- ▸ Add more oil if necessary.

WARNING

- When adding oil, do not let oil drip onto hot engine components. This increases the risk of a fire.
- You must close the cap on the oil filler opening correctly so that oil does not leak out onto the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running, because this is a fire hazard.
- Always clean skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of reach of children.
- Store the engine oil securely in the original container.

Note

- The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions if the recommended intended use of the vehicle and maintenance measures listed in the Audi Owner's Manual and the Warranty & Maintenance Booklet were not followed.
- Only use high-grade engine oil that explicitly meets the Audi oil quality standard for your vehicle. Using another oil may cause severe vehicle damage.
- Do not mix any additional lubricants into the engine oil. Damage caused by such additives is not covered by the warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- Oil should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.
- Follow the legal regulations in the country where you are located when disposing of empty oil containers.

Changing engine oil

We recommend having the oil changed at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 227, Working in the engine compartment*.

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals specified in the Warranty & Maintenance Booklet. This is very important because the lubrication function of the oil gradually declines during regular vehicle operation.

The engine oil should be changed more frequently under certain circumstances. Have the oil changed more frequently if you often drive short distances, your vehicle is predominantly in stop-and-go traffic situations, is in very dusty environments, or is operated for long periods of time in temperatures below zero.

Cleansing additives in the oil make fresh oil appear darker after the engine has run briefly. This is normal and no reason to change the engine oil more frequently than recommended.

Because correctly disposing of engine oil is difficult and special tools and technical knowledge are needed for an oil change, having your engine ▸

oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility is recommended.

If you change the engine oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

If you change the engine oil on the vehicle yourself, the following precautions must be followed:

- Wear protective eyewear.
- Due to the risk of scalding, allow the engine to cool down sufficiently.
- Maintain enough distance when you are removing the oil drain plug. While doing this, keep your forearm parallel to the ground to reduce the risk of hot oil dripping down your arm.
- Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose that is large enough to hold the full amount of oil in your engine.
- Engine oil is poisonous. Always store out of reach of children.
- Prolonged contact of used engine oil with the skin may cause skin damage. Always wash oil off immediately with soap and water to protect your skin.

Note

Do not mix any additives with the engine oil. Additives may cause engine damage that is not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- Before changing the engine oil, make sure you can dispose of the used engine oil correctly.
- Engine oil must always be disposed of correctly. Do not dump it in the yard, in the forest, or in open water, river channels, or sewers.
- Have your used engine oil recycled by bringing it to a used oil collection site or contact a gas station.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled with a mixture of purified water and coolant additive at the factory. This coolant must not be not changed.

The coolant level is monitored using the indicator light. However, occasionally checking the coolant level manually is recommended.

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended.

Messages

Turn off engine and check coolant level. See owner's manual

The coolant level is too low.

Stop driving and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 234*.

- If the coolant level is too low, add coolant ⇨ *page 234*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

Coolant temperature: too high. Let engine run while vehicle is stationary

Let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool off, until the indicator light turns off.

- If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive is made of anti-freezing and corrosion protection agents. Only use the following coolant additives. These additives may be mixed with each other.

Coolant additive	Specification
G12++	TL 774 G
G13	TL 774 J

The amount of coolant additive that needs to be mixed with water depends on the climate where ▶

the vehicle will be operated. If the coolant additive percentage is too low, the coolant can freeze and damage the engine.

	Coolant additive	Freeze protection
Warm regions	min. 40% max. 45%	min. -13 °F (-25 °C)
Cold regions	min. 50% max. 55%	max. -40 °F (-40 °C)

Note

– Before the start of winter, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check if the coolant additive in your vehicle matches the percentage appropriate for the climate. This is especially important when driving in colder climates.
– If the appropriate coolant additive is not available in an emergency, do not add any other additive. You could damage the engine. If this happens, only use water and restore the correct mixture ratio with the specified coolant additive as soon as possible.
– Only refill with new coolant.
– Radiator sealant must not be mixed with the coolant.

Adding coolant



Fig. 154 Engine compartment: release button on coolant expansion tank

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 227, Working in the engine compartment*.

Checking the engine coolant level

► Park the vehicle on a level surface.
► Switch the ignition off.

The coolant expansion tank for some engines is located in the water drip tray under a cover. Slide the cover that is located below the windshield wiper on the front passenger's side toward the windshield and remove the cover.

► Read the coolant level on the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 229*. The coolant level must be between the MIN and MAX markings when the engine in cold. When the engine is warm, the coolant level can be slightly above the MAX marking.

Adding coolant

Requirement: there must be a residual amount of coolant in the expansion tank ⇨ (!).

► Allow the engine to cool.
► Place a large, thick towel on the coolant expansion tank cover.
► Push the release button ⇨ *fig. 154* and carefully unscrew the cap to the left until you feel resistance ⇨ ⚠.
► Push the release button again and remove the cap completely.
► Add coolant mixed in the correct ratio ⇨ *page 233* up to the MAX marking.
► Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
► Turn the cap to the right to tighten it until you feel resistance a second time.

Coolant loss usually indicates that there is a leak. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the cooling system inspected. If the cooling system is not leaking, coolant loss can result from the coolant boiling due overheating and then being forced out of the cooling system.

WARNING

– The engine compartment in any vehicle can be a dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 227, Working in the engine compartment*.
– Never open the hood if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine ▶

compartment. This increases the risk of burns. The cooling system is under pressure. When you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping, you may open the engine compartment with caution.
– When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of injury.
– Coolant additive and coolant can be dangerous to your health. For this reason, store the coolant in the original container and away from children. There is a risk of poisoning.

Note

Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. If this is the case, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Brake fluid

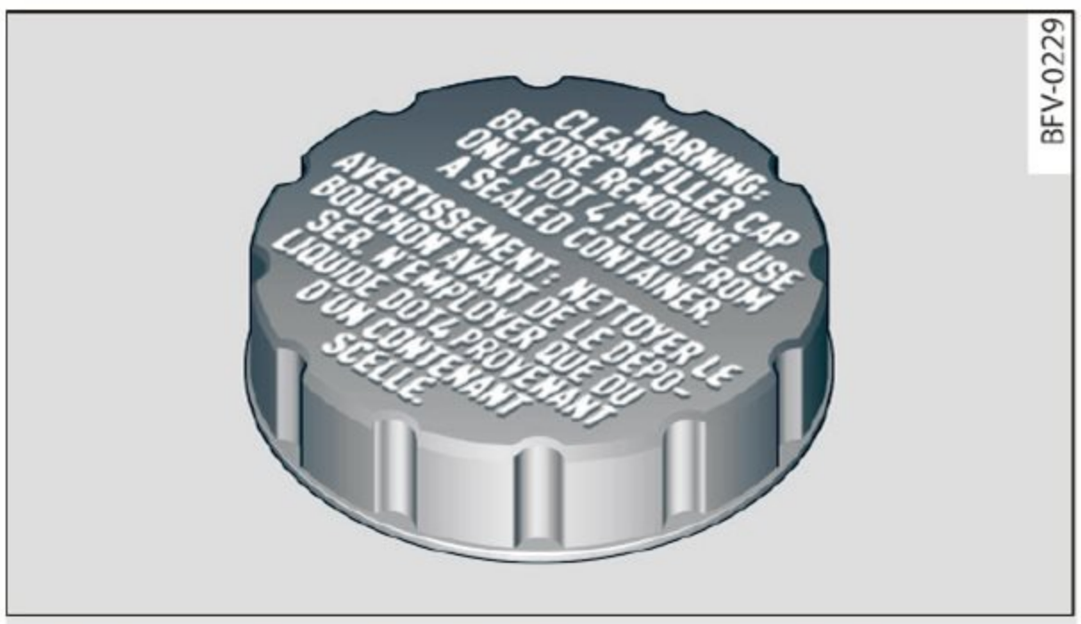


Fig. 155 Engine compartment: cap on brake fluid reservoir

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 227, Working in the engine compartment*.

Checking the brake fluid level

- ▸ Slide the cover that is located below the windshield wipers on the driver's side toward the windshield and remove the cover.
- ▸ Read the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 229, fig. 152*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX markings ⇨ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is monitored automatically.

Message

Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Changing the brake fluid

Brake fluid should be changed at regular intervals. Have the brake fluid changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. The authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will inform you of the replacement intervals.

WARNING

– If the brake fluid level is below the MIN marking, it can impair the braking effect and driving safety, which increase the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If the brake fluid is old, bubbles may form in the brake system during heavy braking. This could impair braking performance and driving safety, which increases the risk of an accident.
– The brake fluid in your vehicle must meet the standard VW 501 14 and is available at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If this brake fluid is not available, another high-grade brake fluid of equivalent quality may be used, and it must meet the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6.

Note

– If the brake fluid level is above the MAX marking, brake fluid may leak out over the edge of the reservoir and result in damage to the vehicle.
– Do not allow any brake fluid to come into contact with the vehicle paint, because it will corrode the paint.

Electrical system

If the or indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the generator, the battery, or the vehicle electrical system.

Electrical system: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

Do not continue driving and switch the engine off ⇨ ⚠. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Electrical system: malfunction! Restart not possible. Please contact Service

It will not be possible to restart the engine once you turn it off. Vehicle functions/driving stability may be limited. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately.

Electrical system: malfunction! Please contact Service

Switch off all electrical equipment that is not needed. Vehicle functions/driving stability may be limited. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

The starting ability may be impaired.

If this message turns off after a little while, the vehicle battery has charged enough while driving.

If this message does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

WARNING

When there is an electrical system malfunction, vehicle functions may not work and driving stability may be limited, which increases the risk of an accident. Stop driving and switch the engine off. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Battery

Battery general information

Because of the complex power supply, all work on batteries such as disconnecting, replacing, etc., should **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ ⚠.

Multiple batteries with different technologies may be installed in your vehicle:

– Vehicle battery (for example, for starting the engine, basic power supply) ⇨ *page 237, Lead battery* or ⇨ *page 237, Other battery types*
– Auxiliary battery (for example, for recuperation or optional equipment) ⇨ *page 237, Other battery types*

Not running the vehicle for long periods of time

The battery will gradually drain if the vehicle does not run for long periods of time. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be limited or switched off. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Even when electrical equipment is switched off, the equipment can still drain the battery if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time. Deep draining results in a chemical reaction that destroys the inside of the battery. The battery must be charged every month to prevent this ⇨ *page 238*. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Winter operation

Cold weather places higher demands on the battery. This results in reduced starting ability. Have the battery checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before cold weather begins. ▶

WARNING

– All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents, or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Never connect the charging cable or jump start cable directly to your vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 238*.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

– If the vehicle will be parked for long periods of time, protect the battery against the cold so that it will not be destroyed by “freezing” ⇨ *page 238, Charging the battery*.
– There are electrical components under the cargo floor behind a trim panel that warm up during operation. To reduce the risk of the components overheating, do not store objects such as blankets under the cargo floor. If the components overheat, they will switch off temporarily. This will be indicated by a message that will be displayed in the instrument cluster until the temperature returns to normal.

Lead battery

Explanation of warnings:

	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is highly corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection.
	Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are forbidden.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries.
	Always keep children away from battery acid and the battery.
/	Always follow the instructions in the operating manual.

For the sake of the environment

Do not dispose of lead batteries in household trash. They contain harmful substances, such as sulfuric acid and lead, and also recyclable raw materials. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Other battery types

Explanation of warnings:

	Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are forbidden.
	Always keep children away from battery acid and the battery.
/	Always follow the instructions in the operating manual.

WARNING

All work on the batteries must **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Gases that escape from these different battery types can be poisonous or flammable.
– The contents of these battery types can be corrosive. If any battery contents come into contact with the skin, flush the affected area for at least 15 minutes with clean water. Then wash the affected area with soap. Have the affected area examined by a medical professional.

Note

Components must not be connected to the battery terminals and wires on these battery types because this increases the risk of damage, for example due to overvoltage. ▶

For the sake of the environment

Do not dispose of these types of batteries in household trash. They contain harmful substances and recyclable raw materials. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Charging the battery

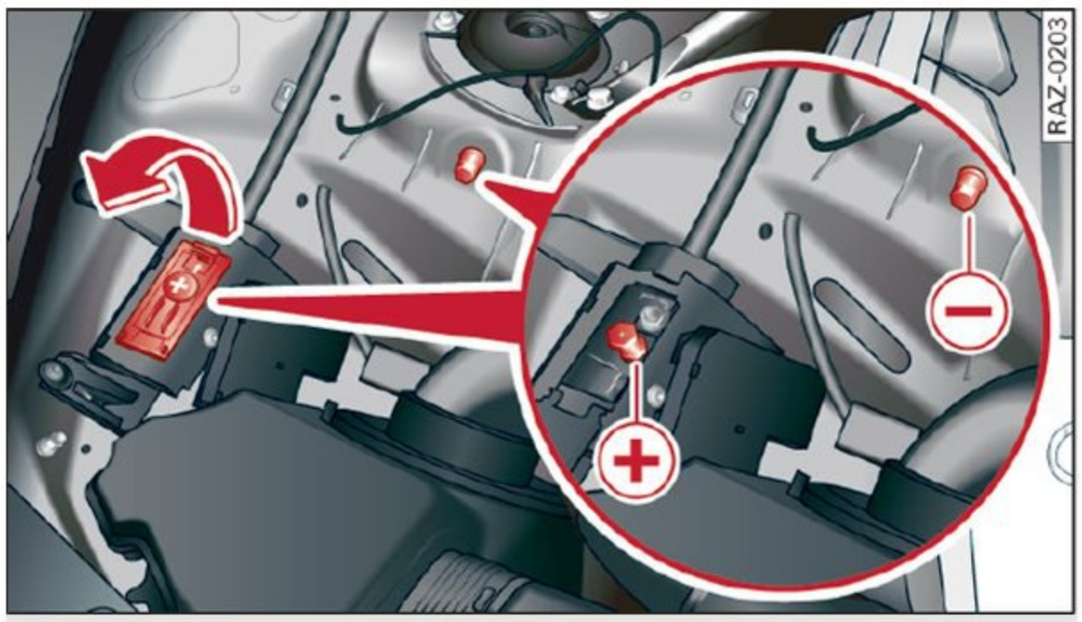


Fig. 156 Engine compartment: connectors for a charger or jump start cables

Note the safety precautions ⇨ *page 227, Working in the engine compartment*, ⇨ ⚠ *in Battery general information on page 237* and ⇨ ⚠.

Requirement: only use chargers with a **maximum charging current of 14.8 volts**. The battery cables remain connected.

- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 228*.
- ▸ Open the red cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 156*.
- ▸ Clamp the charger terminal clamps to the jump start pins according to the instructions. (pin under the cover = “positive”, pin with hexagonal head = “negative”).
- ▸ Insert the power cable for the charging device into the socket and switch the device on.
- ▸ At the end of the charging process, switch the charger off and pull the power cable out of the socket.
- ▸ Remove the charging device terminal clamps.
- ▸ Close the red cover on the positive terminal.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 228*.

WARNING

- Never connect the charging cable directly to your vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 238*.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries. Only charge the battery in well-ventilated areas.
- A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 ºF (0 ºC). Do not charge or use a frozen or thawed battery. If ice forms, the battery housing can crack and battery electrolyte can leak out, which increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
- Do not connect or disconnect the charging cable while charging because this increases the risk of an explosion.

Tips

Read all of the manufacturer's instructions for the charger before charging the battery.

Windshield washer system



Fig. 157 Engine compartment: washer fluid reservoir cap

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 227, Working in the engine compartment*.

The windshield washer fluid reservoir contains the cleaning solution for the windshield and the headlight washer system ⇨ *fig. 157*, ⇨ *page 229*. The reservoir capacity can be found in ⇨ *page 291*. ▶

To reduce the risk of lime scale deposits on the spray nozzles, use clean water with low amounts of calcium. Always add window cleaner to the water. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freezing agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze.

Messages

Please refill washer fluid

Fill the washer fluid for the windshield washer system and the headlight washer system* when the ignition is switched off.

Note

- The concentration of anti-freezing agent must be adjusted to the vehicle operating conditions and the climate. A concentration that is too high can lead to vehicle damage.
- Never add radiator anti-freeze or other additives to the washer fluid.
- Do not use a glass cleaner that contains paint solvents, because this could damage the paint.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.

The service interval display works in two stages:

- **Inspection or oil change reminder:** after driving a certain distance, a message appears in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on or off. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
- **Inspection or oil change due:** if your vehicle has reached an inspection or oil change interval or both intervals at the same time, the message **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** appears briefly after switching the ignition on or off.

Checking service intervals

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection in the Infotainment system.

Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Service intervals**.

Resetting the indicator

An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will reset the service interval display after performing service.

If you have changed the oil yourself, you must reset the oil change interval.

Applies to MMI: To reset the display, select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Service intervals** > **Reset oil change interval**.

Note

- Only reset the oil change indicator if the oil was changed.
- Following the service intervals is critical to maintaining the service life and value of your vehicle, especially the engine. Even if the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.

Wheels

Wheels and Tires

General information

►Check your tires regularly for damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and bulges. Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.

►If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.

►Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.

►Protect your tires from oil, grease, and fuel.

►Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.

►Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

WARNING

–Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.

–Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

Note

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends using winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances.

Tire designations

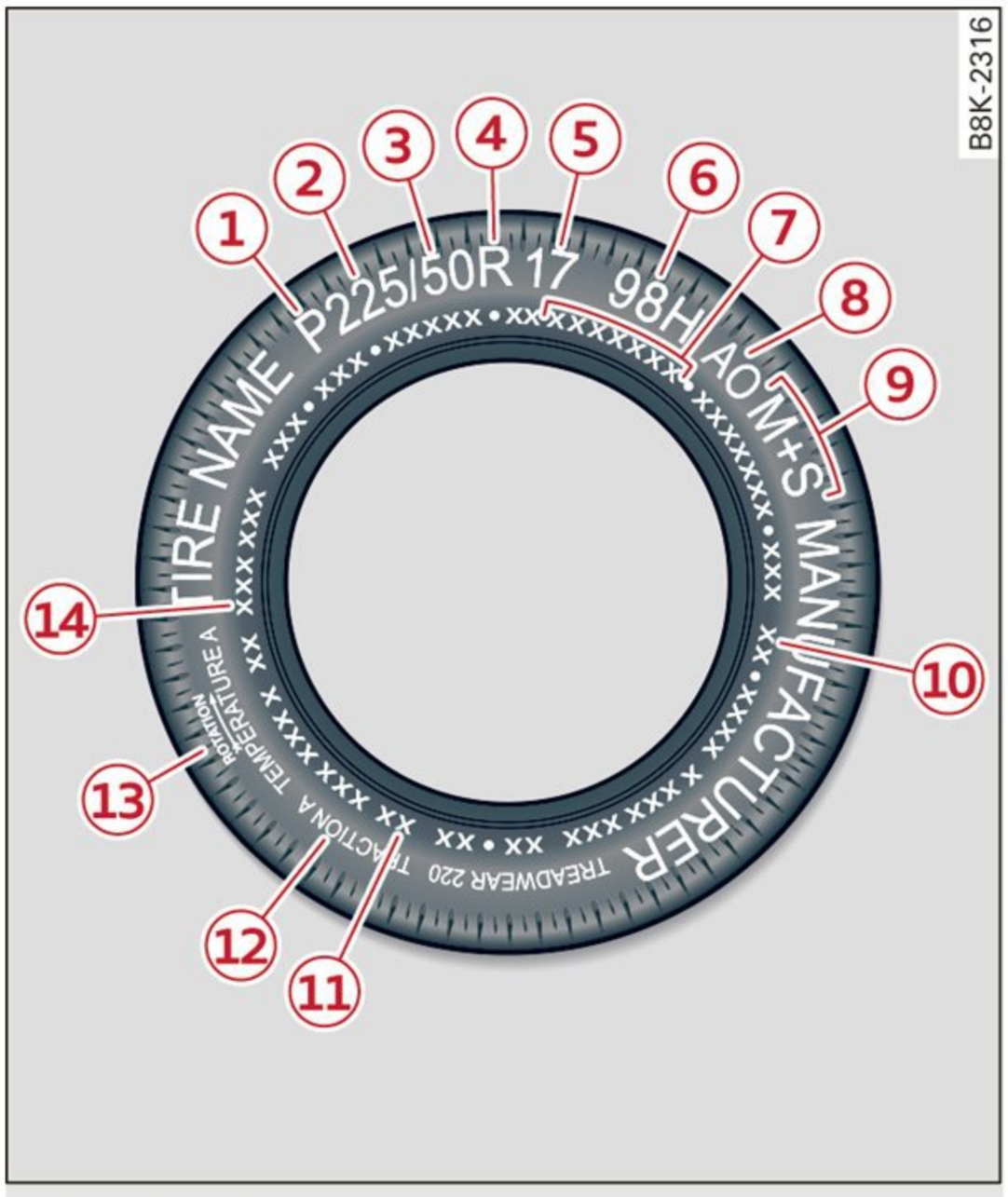


Fig. 158 Tire designations on the sidewall

① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

"P" indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. "T" indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

④ Tire construction

“R" indicates a radial tire.

⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed. Also see ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 240*.

“EXTRA LOAD”, “xl” or “RF” indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)]
Z	above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)]
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a)]
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a)]

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code “ZR”. ▶

⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

DOT ... 2218 ...

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2018.

⑧ Audi Original Tires

Audi Original equipment tires with the designation “AO” have been specially matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will be able to provide you with more information.

⑨ Mud and snow capability

“M/S” or “M+S” indicates the tire is suitable for driving on mud and snow.  indicates a winter tire.

⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction and temperature resistance

Treadwear, traction, and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 257*.

⑬ Running direction

The arrows indicate the running direction of unidirectional tires. You must always follow the specified running direction ⇨ *page 271*.

⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall. ▶

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 243*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall.

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 241*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the ▶

4K8012721BA

maximum permissible road speeds. See also ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 240*.

Tire pressure monitoring system

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 249, Treadwear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2218 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2018. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used ▸

by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 252*) and dividing by two.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label ⇨ *page 250, fig. 161* for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 252* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ►New tires do not yet have the optimum gripping properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ►Only use tires with the same design, size (rolling circumference), and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- ►Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- ►Audi recommends that you use Audi Original Tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform ▶

differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.

► If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire and rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

Because the spare tire* is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle (such as winter tires or wide tires), only use the spare tire* temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

All four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by different tire speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only use a spare tire* that is the same circumference as the regular tires.

⚠ WARNING

– Do not use steel rims that are 17 inches or larger. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
– Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
– For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles. In some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.
– Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident.
– Only use tires that are more than six years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so.
– Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when ▶

not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.
–If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

Tire wear and damage

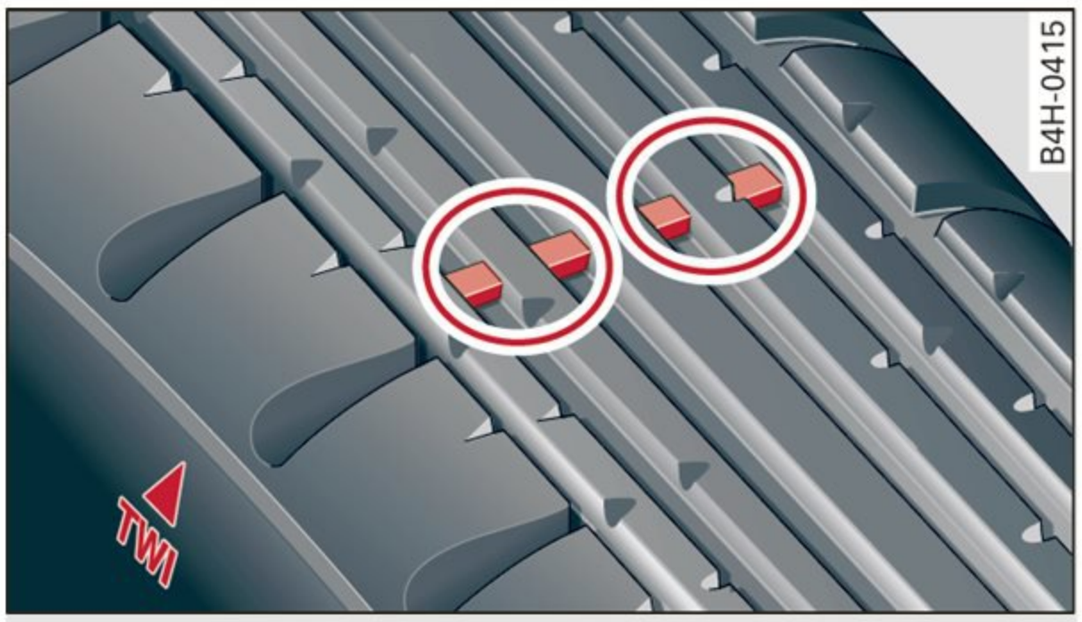


Fig. 159 Tire profile: treadwear indicator

Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

–Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.
–Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration, and heavy braking increase tire wear.
–Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear.
–Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

Treadwear indicator

Original equipment tires contain treadwear indicators in the tread pattern, which are bars that are 1/16 in (1.6 mm) high and are spaced evenly around the tire perpendicular to the running direction ⇨ *fig. 159*. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the tire sidewall indicate the location of the treadwear indicators.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1)] when they have worn down to the treadwear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Tire rotation

Rotating the tires regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate the tires, ▶

1) Obey any applicable regulations in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

install the tires from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall ⇨ *page 271*.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

WARNING

Tread that has worn too low or uneven tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can increase the risk of an accident because it has a negative effect on handling, driving through curves, and braking, and because it increases the risk of hydroplaning when driving through deep puddles.

Tire pressure

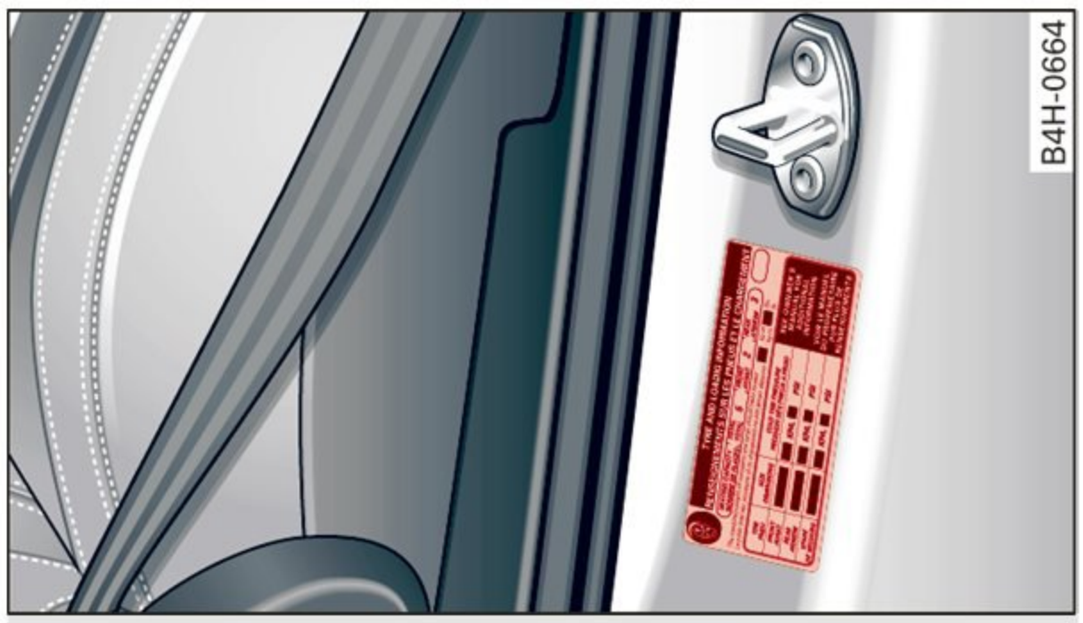


Fig. 160 Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

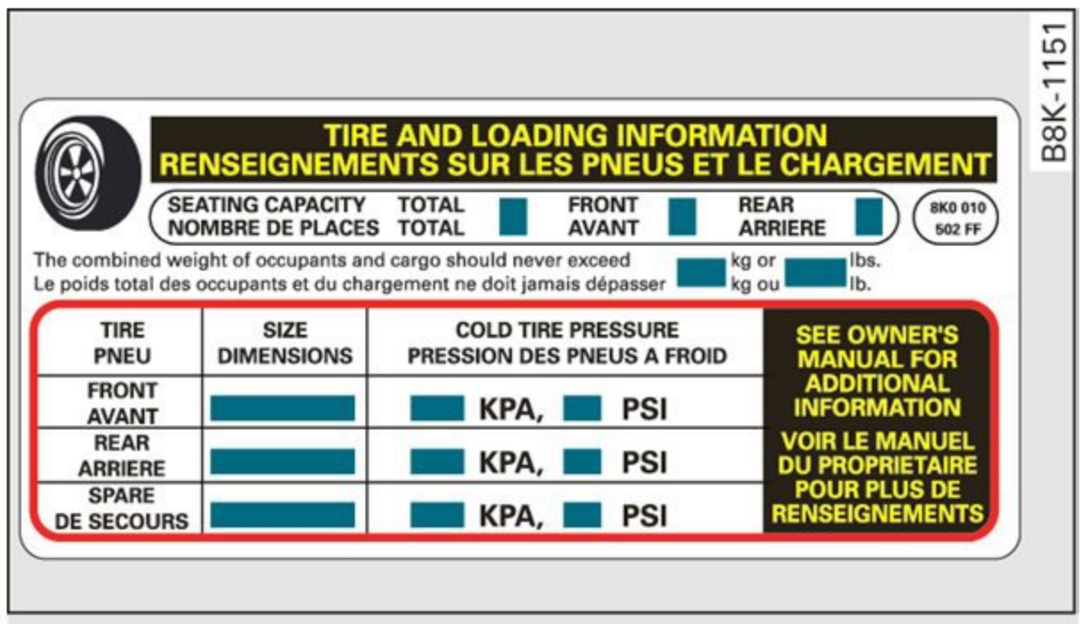


Fig. 161 Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires installed at the factory is listed on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 160*, ⇨ *fig. 161*.

Use the tire pressure specified for a normal vehicle load when the vehicle is partially loaded ⇨ *table on page 252*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Checking and correcting tire pressure

- ▶Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▶Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▶Check the label ⇨ *fig. 161* for the correct tire pressure based on vehicle load.
- ▶Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ▶Store the new tire pressure in the MMI ⇨ *page 259*.
- ▶Check the pressure in the spare tire*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire.

WARNING

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and the vehicle load.

–Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of an accident. Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 252*.

–The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.

–Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

For the sake of the environment

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are any differences, you should always follow the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 250, fig. 160*. ▶

4K8012721BA

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed.

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to three people)[a]				Maximum load			
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
A7: 3.0L 6-cylinder	245/45 R19 102H	32	220	32	220	35	240	38	260
	255/40 R20 101H	33	230	32	220	36	250	39	270
	255/35 R21 98Y	33	230	32	220	36	250	39	270
S7: 2.9L 6-cylinder	255/40 R20 101Y	36	250	33	230	39	270	42	290
	255/35 R21 98Y	41	280	38	260	44	300	46	320

a) Two people in the front, one person in the rear

WARNING

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 250* and load limits ⇨ *page 252*.

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is ▶

intended to carry (“seating capacity”) with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** (“GAWR”) is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle’s two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle’s Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver’s side B-pillar.

WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

–Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.

–The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.

–Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.

–Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle’s Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

4K8012721BA

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS” on your vehicle’s placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 250, fig. 161*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from “XXX” kilograms or “XXX” pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 250, fig. 161*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

▶ Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 241, fig. 158*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily. You will need a special adapter to loosen the anti-theft wheel bolts* ⇨ *page 269*.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠. ▶

WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, see ⇨ *page 271, Finishing*.

– Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
– Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Loose wheel warning

Applies to: vehicles with loose wheel warning

Within the limits of the system, the loose wheel warning in the instrument cluster warns you if one or more wheels are loose.

Using the ABS sensors, the loose wheel warning system compares the vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If one or more wheels are loose, it will be indicated in the instrument cluster display with the indicator light and a message. If only one wheel is affected, the location of that wheel will be indicated.

Messages

Wheel bolts loose. Please safely stop the vehicle and check all wheel bolts!

Loose wheel warning for at least one wheel ⇨ ⚠. Check the wheel bolts on all wheels with the wheel wrench (vehicle tool kit). Have the tightening specification checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Drive carefully until then. For the correct tightening specification, see ⇨ *page 271, Finishing*.

Wheel assessment active. Please continue driving carefully

After this message appears and you have checked the wheel bolts, the assessment phase begins when the vehicle is in motion. This may take several minutes.

Loose wheel warning: malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a system malfunction. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

– If a message appears, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the wheel bolts.
– Check your wheels for damage. Have the damaged wheels checked and/or replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions, or unpaved roads), the message may be delayed.
– The driver is responsible for ensuring that the wheels are attached correctly.

Tips

– The loose wheel warning system can also stop working when there is an ESC malfunction.
– Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.

Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

▸ Use winter tires on all four wheels.
▸ Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
▸ Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠ *in* ▶

General information on page 240. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.

- ▸ Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 250*.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.16 in (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

For the sake of the environment

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear, and fuel consumption.

Tips

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the ⛷ symbol may be permitted.

Snow chains

Snow chains improve both driving and braking in winter road conditions.

- ▸ Only install snow chains on the front wheels.
- ▸ Check and correct the seating of the snow chains after driving a few feet, if necessary. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
- ▸ Note the maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Observe the local regulations.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

Use **fine-mesh snow chains**. They must not add more than 0.40 inch (10.5 mm) in height, including the chain lock.

You must remove the snow chains on roads without snow. Otherwise, you could impair driving ability and damage the tires.

WARNING

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

- – Snow chains can damage the rims and wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.
- – Do not install and use snow chains if there is a malfunction in the air suspension*, because the vehicle height will be very low. If you drive with snow chains anyway, the wheel housings and other vehicle components can be severely damaged.

Tips

When using snow chains, it may be advisable to limit the ESC ⇨ *page 108*.

Low-profile tires

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tires

Compared to other tire/rim combinations, low-profile tires offer a wider tread surface and a larger rim diameter with shorter tire sidewalls. This results in an agile driving style. However, it may reduce the level of comfort and increase road noise when driving on roads in poor condition.

Low-profile tires can become damaged more quickly than standard tires when driving over large bumps, potholes, manhole covers, and curbs. Therefore, it is particularly important to maintain the correct tire pressure ⇨ *page 250*.

To reduce the risk of damage to the tires and rims, drive very carefully on poor roads.

Check your wheels regularly every 2,000 mi (3,000 km) for damage. For example, check for bulges/cracks on the tires or deformations/cracks on the rims. ▶

After a heavy impact or damage, have the tires and rims inspected or replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Low-profile tires can wear out faster than standard tires.

Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear
– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 241, fig. 158*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

⚠ WARNING

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

Tire pressure monitoring system

(!) General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on ▶

the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

If the tire pressure monitoring indicator appears

The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If the pressure changes in one or more tires, this is indicated in the instrument cluster display with an indicator light (!) and a message. If only one tire is affected, the location of that tire will be indicated.

The tire pressures must be stored again each time you change the pressures (switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 259*. The tire pressure monitoring system only monitors the tire pressure you have stored. Refer to the tire pressure label for the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 250, fig. 161*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

- The tire pressure in one or more tires is too low
- The tires have structural damage
- The tire was replaced or the tire pressure was changed and it was not stored ⇨ *page 259*
- Tires that are only partially used are replaced with new tires

Indicator lights

(!) – Loss of pressure in at least one tire ⇨ ⚠. Check the tires and replace or repair if necessary. Check and correct the pressures of all four tires and store the pressure again ⇨ *page 259*.

TPMS (**T**ire **P**ressure **M**onitoring **S**ystem) **Tire pressure: malfunction! See owner's manual**. If TPMS appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the (!) indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is system malfunction. Try to store the correct tire pressures ⇨ *page 259*. In some cases, you must drive for ▶

several minutes after storing the pressures until the indicator light turns off. If the indicator light does turn off or turns on again after a short period of time, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– If the tire pressure indicator appears in the display, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressure.
– The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressure. You must check the tire pressure regularly.
– Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions, or unpaved roads), the tire pressure monitoring system indicator may be delayed.

Tips

– The tire pressure monitoring system can also stop working when there is an ESC malfunction.
– Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
– The tire pressure monitoring system in your Audi was calibrated with “Audi Original Tires” ⇨ *page 247*. Using these tires is recommended.

Tips

Do not store the tire pressures if snow chains are installed.

Storing tire pressures

If the tire pressure changes or a tire is replaced, it must be confirmed in the MMI.

► Before storing the tire pressures, make sure the tire pressures in all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 250*.
► Switch the ignition on.
► Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Store tire pressure** > **Yes, store now**.

Care and cleaning

General information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The required cleaning and care products can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

For the sake of the environment

- Purchase environmentally-friendly cleaning products if possible.
- Do not dispose of cleaning and care products with household trash.

Car washes

The longer that deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap or road salt remain on the vehicle, the more the surface can be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

Pressure washers

When washing your vehicle with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not aim the spray directly at the seals on the side windows, doors, hood, luggage compartment lid, or sunroof*, or at tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors*, camera lenses*, or the laser scanner*. Keep a distance of at least 16 in (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use cone nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

Automatic car wash

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows and roof* are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working downward using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To reduce the risk of damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots, and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To reduce the risk of damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a chamois. ▶

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of accidents, only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car wash operator.
- To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
- After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. This increases the risk of an accident. The brakes must be dried with a few careful brake applications.

Note

- If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must retract the rear spoiler if necessary, and fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the rims and tires, compare the width between the wheels on your vehicle with the distance between the guide rails in the car wash.
- To reduce the risk of damage, compare the height and width of your vehicle with the height and width of the inside of the car wash.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of damage, do not wash decorative decals* with a pressure washer.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges, or similar items.
- When washing matte finish painted vehicle components:
  - To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  - Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  - Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle components painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windshield wiper blades	Deposits	Soft cloth with glass cleaner, ⇨ *page 55*
Headlights/ Tail lights	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Sensors/ camera lenses	Deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with a solvent-free cleaning solution Camera lenses: soft cloth with an alcohol-free cleaning solution
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray

Component	Situation	Solution
Laser scanner	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free special cleaning solution
Exhaust tail pipes	Road salt	Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Rear spoiler	Deposits	Clean similar to painted parts ⇨ *page 260*; remove dust in the rear spoiler compartment
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Decorative parts/ trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], a cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Paint	Paint damage	Refer to the paint number on the vehicle data label, repair with touch up paint ⇨ *page 291*
	Spilled fuel	Rinse with water immediately
	Surface rust	Rust remover, then protect with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Corrosion	Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint	Protect with hard wax (at least twice per year)
	No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor	Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant
	Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap, and road salt	Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth
	Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock	Remove immediately with a mild soap solution [a)] and a soft cloth
Carbon components	Deposits	Clean the same way as painted components ⇨ *page 260*
Decorative decals	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

Interior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Window glass	Deposits	Glass cleaner, then wipe dry
Decorative parts/ trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a)]

Component	Situation	Solution
Plastic parts	Deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier deposits	Mild soap solution [a], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary
Displays/instrument cluster	Deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed using a soft brush.
Controls	Deposits	Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a]
Safety belts	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a], allow to dry before letting them retract
Textiles, artificial leather, Alcantara	Deposits adhering to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a]
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a mild soap solution [a], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary
	Specific types of deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary[a]
Natural leather	Fresh stains	Cotton cloth with a mild soap solution[a]
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather Dried stains: oil cleaning spray
	Specific types of deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Spot remover suitable for leather
	Care	Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use special colored conditioning cream, if necessary.
Carbon components	Deposits	Clean the same way as plastic components

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

WARNING

The windshield must not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions such as wetness, darkness, or low sun can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible. ▶

Note

- **Headlights and tail lights**
  - Never clean headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  - Do not use any cleaning products that contain alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.
- **Wheels**
  - Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  - Damage to the protective layer on the rims, such as stone chips or scratches, must be repaired immediately.
- **Camera lenses**
  - Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
  - Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.
- **Laser scanner**
  - Never use abrasive cleaning materials to clean the laser scanner. This could cause scratches and cracks.
- **Door windows**
  - Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To reduce the risk of scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
  - Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
  - To reduce the risk of damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.
- **Decorative parts and trim**
  - Never use chrome care or cleaning products.
- **Paint**
  - To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
  - To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
  - To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
  - Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately because they could damage the paint.
- **Decorative decals**
  - To reduce the risk of damage, do not use any rough powder or abrasive cleaning products.
  - To reduce the risk of damage, do not polish decorative decals that have a matte or printed finish.
  - Due to the risk of damage, do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice on windows with decorative decals on them.
- **Displays and instrument cluster**
  - Make sure that the display and instrument cluster are switched off and have cooled down before cleaning. To switch off the upper and lower display, select on the MMI home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **MMI** > **Screen cleaning**.
  - Displays, the instrument cluster, and the trim surrounding it must not be cleaned with dry cleaning methods because they could become scratched.
  - Make sure no fluids enter the spaces between the instrument cluster and the trim, because that could cause damage.
- **Controls**
  - Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.
- **Safety belts**
  - Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
  - Never clean safety belts or their components with chemicals or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
  - If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors, or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- **Textiles, artificial leather, and Alcantara** ▶

– Never treat artificial leather or Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover, or similar products.
– Have a cleaning specialist remove stubborn stains to reduce the risk of damage.
– Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
– Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
– Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
– Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.

– **Natural leather**
  – Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
  – Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
  – Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
  – Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
  – To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

Tips

– Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
– Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.
– Decorative decals can age due to environmental conditions, which can result in damage such as brittleness. The color may fade if exposed to excessive sunlight.

Taking your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. They will advise you of important measures, such as corrosion protection, service, and storage procedures. Also follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 236*.

Emergency assistance

General information

- ▸ Park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic in the event of a breakdown. In the event of a flat tire, park the vehicle on a level surface. If you are on a steep hill, be especially careful.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Switch the emergency flashers on.
- ▸ Have the passengers exit the vehicle. They should move to a safe place, for example behind a guard rail.

WARNING

Follow the steps given above. This is for your protection and the for the safety of others on the road.

Equipment

Vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit, and vehicle jack

Applies to: vehicles with the vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit, and vehicle jack



Fig. 162 Luggage compartment: cargo floor cover

The vehicle tool kit, vehicle jack*, tire mobility kit*, and compressor* are stored in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

- ▸ Lift the cargo floor using the handle.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with spare tire: Turn the handle counter-clockwise and remove the spare tire.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle tool kit* may be located under the spare tire*, under another cover, or in the tool box.

Tips

The vehicle jack* does not require any maintenance.

Tire mobility kit

Preparation

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- ▸ Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ *page 266*.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select the “P” position.
- ▸ Check if a repair with the tire mobility kit is possible ⇨ *page 266*.

Using the tire mobility kit

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit



Fig. 163 Tire: tire damage that cannot be repaired

The tire repair is only meant for temporary use. Change the damaged tire as soon as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tire is pierced by an object such as a nail, do not remove the object from the tire.

The tire mobility kit can be used at temperatures as low as -4 °F (-20 °C).

The tire mobility kit must not be used:

– If the tire has cuts or punctures that are larger than 0.16 in (4 mm) ① ⇨ *fig. 163*
– If the rim is damaged ②
– If you have driven with very low tire pressure or without air in the tire ③

See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance in these situations. ▶

WARNING

- Please note that the tire mobility kit cannot be used in all situations, and that it may only be used temporarily.
- The tire sealant must not come in contact with skin, eyes, or clothing.
- If tire sealant comes into contact with your eyes or your skin, thoroughly rinse the affected area immediately with clean water.
- Do not inhale the fumes.
- If you swallow any of the tire sealant, thoroughly rinse your mouth immediately and drink a lot of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical attention immediately.
- Change your clothing immediately if it comes into contact with tire sealant.
- If an allergic reaction occurs, seek medical attention immediately.
- Keep the tire sealant away from children.

Tips

- If sealant leaks, allow it to dry in place. You can then peel it off like a sticker.
- Note the expiration date on the sealant bottle. Replace the tire sealant at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Radio reception can be interrupted when operating the compressor.
- Follow the legal regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle.

Repairing tires

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

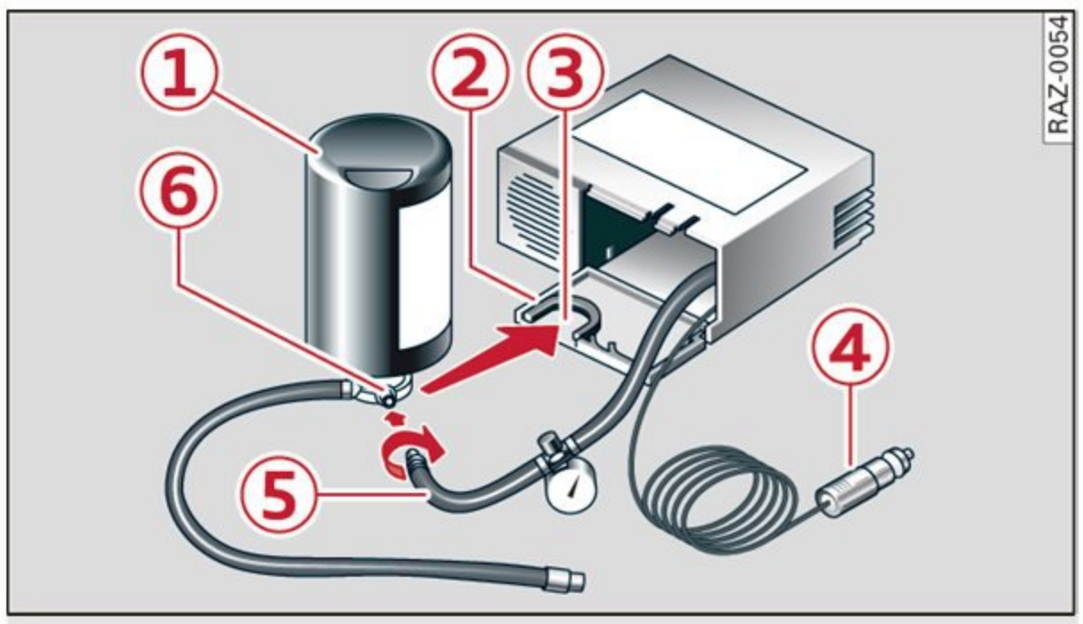


Fig. 164 Diagram: components of the tire mobility kit

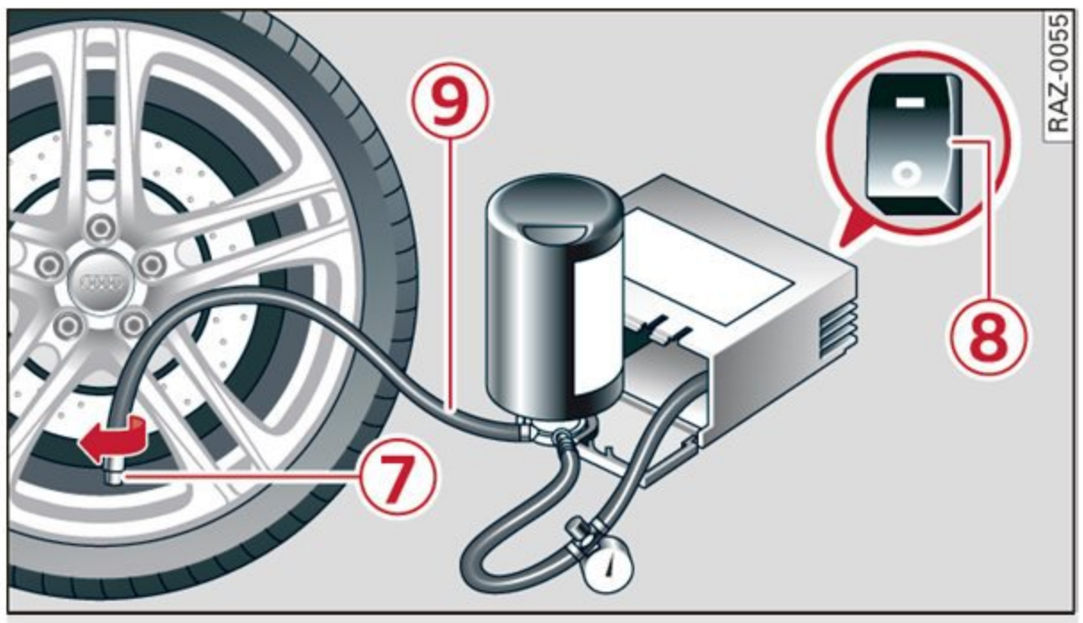


Fig. 165 Diagram: tire mobility kit connection

Requirement: the tire mobility kit must be laid out and ready for use ⇨ *page 266*.

Setting up the tire mobility kit

- ▸ Open the cover (2) on the compressor[1] ⇨ *fig. 164*.
- ▸ Remove the connector (4) and pressure hose (5) from the housing.
- ▸ Connect the compressor pressure hose (5) to the flange (6) on the tire sealant bottle (1).
- ▸ Insert the sealant bottle with the flange at the bottom into the opening (3) on the compressor cover or the top side of the compressor housing.
- ▸ Remove the valve cap from the faulty tire.
- ▸ Install the filler hose (9) on the valve (7) ⇨ *fig. 165*.
- ▸ Connect the plug (4) ⇨ *fig. 164* to an outlet in the vehicle.
- ▸ Switch the ignition on.

1) The compressor may look different. However, the way it is operated is generally the same.

Inflating a tire

- ▸ Move the switch ⑧ ⇨ *fig. 165* on the compressor into position **I**.
- ▸ Inflate the tire to between 29 psi (200 kPA) and 36 psi (250 kPA) and read the pressure on the gauge.
- ▸ If this tire pressure is not reached, remove the filler hose. Drive slowly approximately 33 feet (10 m) forward or in reverse so that the sealant can be distributed in the tire. Inflate the tire again ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Read and follow the manufacturer's safety precautions on the compressor and in the instructions on the bottle of sealant.
– If a tire pressure of 29 psi (200 kPA) cannot reached after inflating for 6 minutes, then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.
– If the tire cannot be repaired with the tire sealant, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

Do not operate the compressor for more than six minutes continuously, or it can overheat. Once the compressor has cooled, you can continue to use it.

Completing

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- ▸ Affix the sticker that says "max. 50 mph (max. 80 km/h)" that is provided with the tire mobility kit within the driver's field of vision.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle after driving for about 10 minutes and check the tire pressure.
- ▸ If the tire pressure is lower than 19 psi (130 kPA), then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.

WARNING

Pay attention to the following after repairing the tire:
– Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
– Avoid hard acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering.
– The vehicle may become more difficult to control.
– If the tire is too severely damaged, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

For the sake of the environment

You can give the used tire sealant bottle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for disposal.

Tips

Remember to obtain a new bottle of sealant from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility after repairing a tire.

Changing a tire

Preparation

You must complete the preparation before changing a tire.

- ▸ Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ *page 266*.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select the “P” position.
- ▸ When towing a trailer: disconnect the trailer from your vehicle.
- ▸ Lay out the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 266* and the spare tire ⇨ *page 272*.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with air suspension: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Air suspension: wheel change**.
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.

WARNING

When using the vehicle jack* on a road with a steep hill or when offroad, you must take extra precautions to prevent the vehicle from rolling. Use suitable objects to block the front and back of the wheel that is diagonal from the wheel with the flat tire.

Removing the caps



Fig. 166 Wheel: wheel bolts with caps

- ▸ Slide the plastic clip from the vehicle tool kit onto the cap until it engages ⇨ *fig. 166*.
- ▸ Remove the cap with the plastic clip.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft wheel bolts

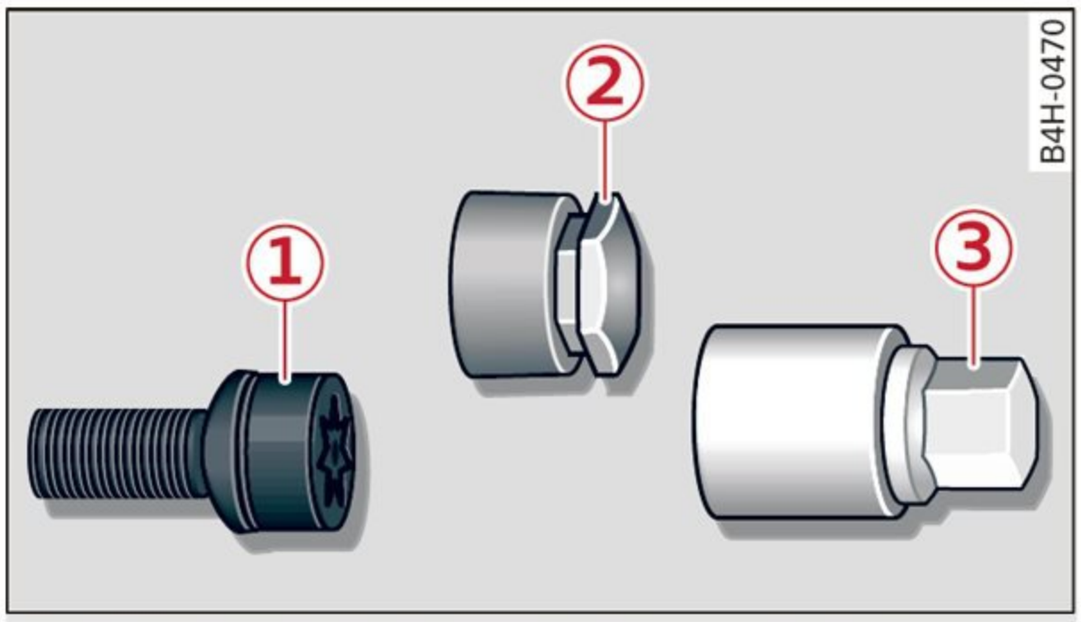


Fig. 167 Anti-theft wheel bolt with cap and adapter

You need a special adapter in the vehicle tool kit to remove the anti-theft wheel bolts.

- ▸ Remove the cap ②.
- ▸ Slide the adapter ③ all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt ①.
- ▸ Slide the wheel wrench from the vehicle tool kit all the way onto the adapter ③.
- ▸ Loosen the wheel bolt ⇨ *page 269*.

Tips

Note the code number for the wheel bolt adapter and store it in a safe place separate from the vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and give them the code number.

Loosening the wheel bolts

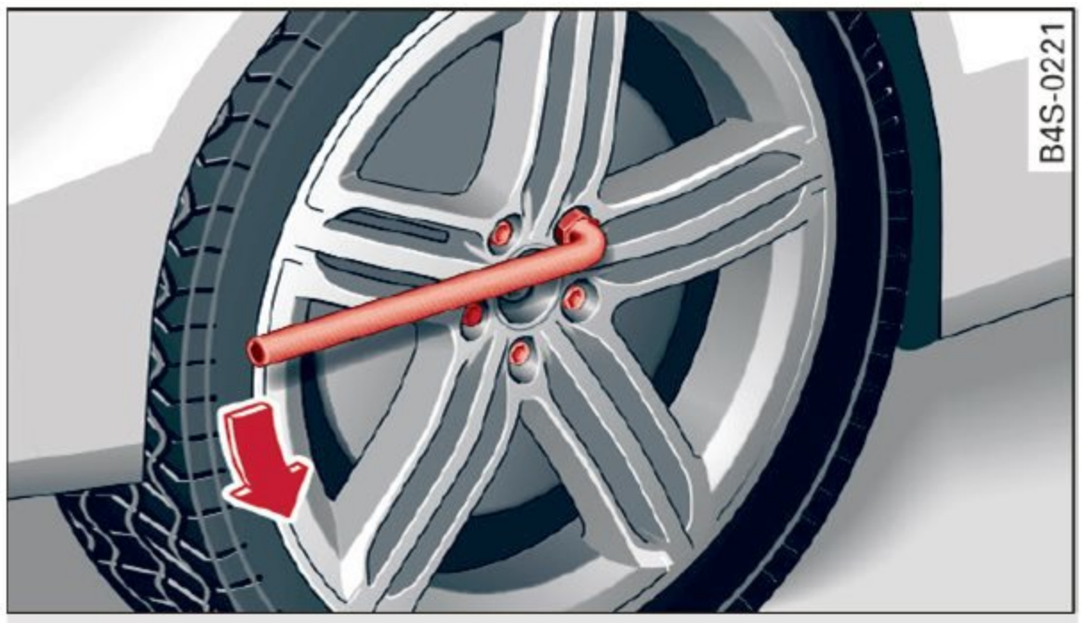


Fig. 168 Wheel: loosening the wheel bolt

- ▸ Slide the wheel wrench from the vehicle tool kit all the way onto the wheel bolt[1)].
- ▸ Turn the wheel bolt approximately one turn to the left -arrow-. To achieve the required torque, hold the end of the wheel wrench. If the wheel bolt will not loosen, press carefully on the wheel wrench with your foot. Hold onto the vehicle securely while doing this and make sure your footing is stable.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, only loosen the wheel bolts gently one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack*.

1) You need the matching adapter in order to loosen and tighten anti-theft wheel bolts* ⇨ *page 269*.

Raising the vehicle

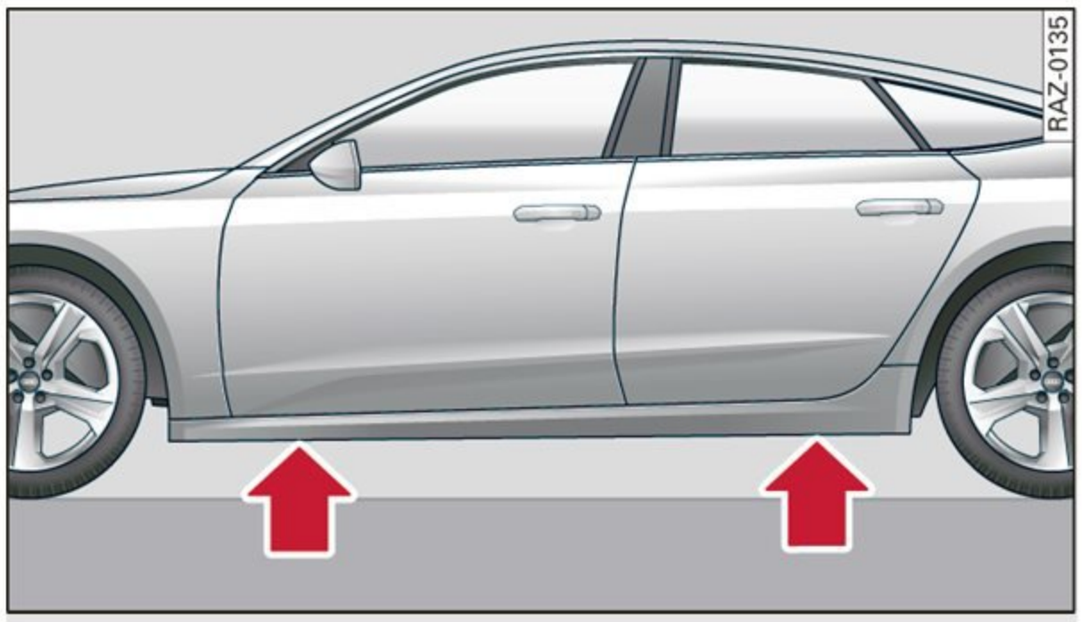


Fig. 169 Sill panels: markings

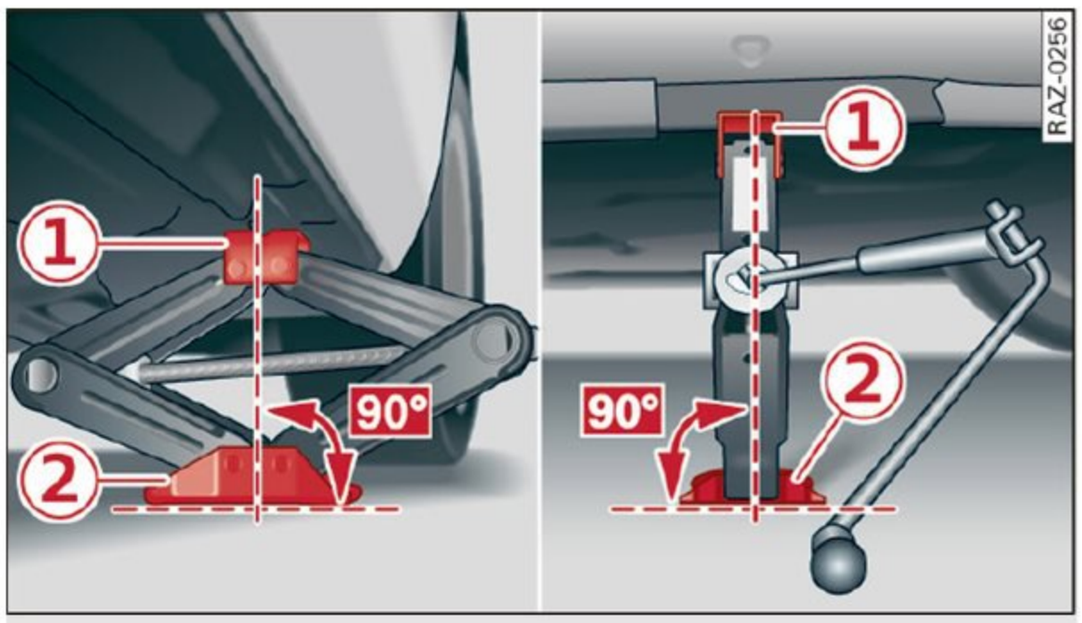


Fig. 170 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

- ▸ Place the vehicle jack* from the vehicle tool kit on a firm surface. Use a flat, stable support if necessary. On a slippery surface such as tile, you should use a non-slip pad such as a rubber mat ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Find the marking on the sill that is closest to the tire that will be changed ⇨ *fig. 169*. Behind the marking, there is a lifting point on the side sill for the vehicle jack*.
- ▸ Raise the vehicle jack* under the lifting point on the side sill until the bracket on the jack ① completely covers the notch on your vehicle.
- ▸ Align the vehicle jack* so the bracket ① covers the notch and the base ② is flat on the ground. The base ② must be directly under the mounting point ①.
- ▸ Mount the crank on the vehicle jack*: insert the crank into the opening on the handwheel. Turn the crank to the left or right to secure it.
- ▸ Continue raising the vehicle jack* with the crank until the wheel lifts off the ground slightly.

⚠ WARNING

– To reduce the risk of injury, make sure no one is in the vehicle before raising it.

– Make sure the vehicle jack* is stable. There is a risk of injury when the ground is slippery or soft, because the vehicle jack* could slide or sink.
– Only raise your vehicle with the vehicle jack* provided by the factory. If you use a vehicle jack designed for another vehicle, your vehicle could slip and cause injury.
– Position the vehicle jack* only at the designated mounting points on the side sill and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack* could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of injury, do not raise any other vehicles or other loads using the vehicle jack* provided by the factory.
– Applies to: vehicles with air suspension: Changes in temperature or load can affect the height of the stopped vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, never start the engine when the vehicle is raised.
– To reduce the risk of injury, support the vehicle securely with suitable stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle.

! Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack* only at the designated mounting points on the side sill. Otherwise, your vehicle could be damaged.

Removing and installing a wheel

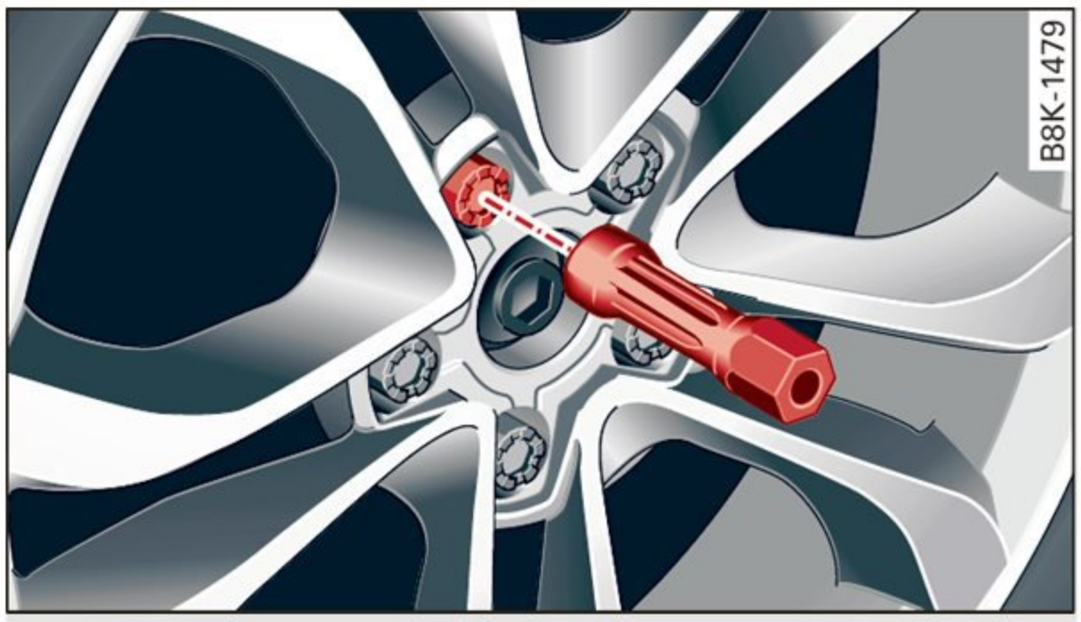


Fig. 171 Wheel: internal hex socket to turn the wheel bolts

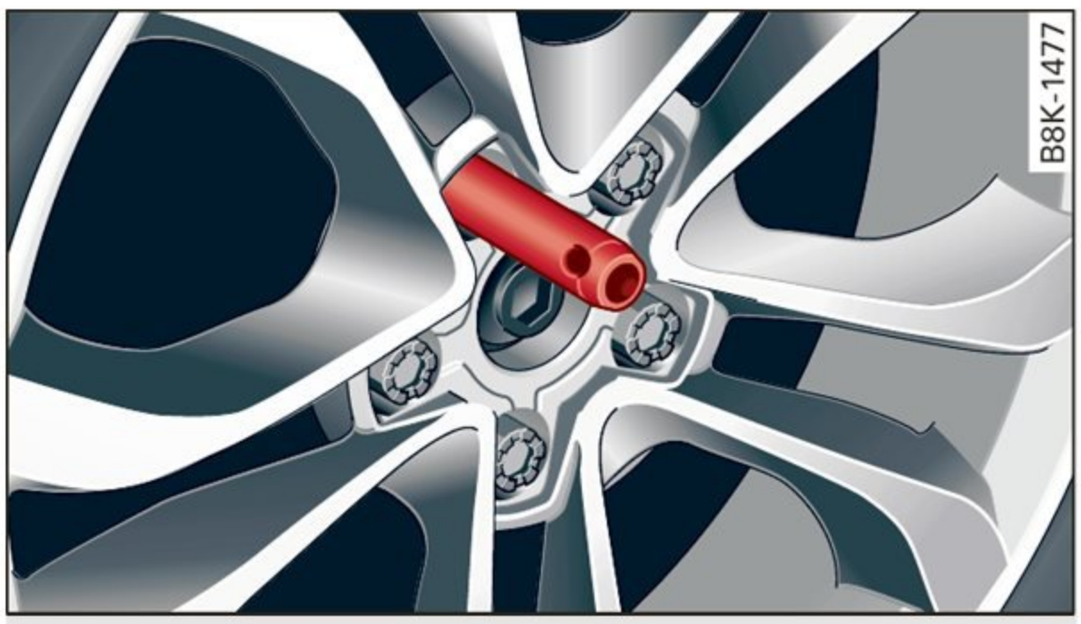


Fig. 172 Wheel: alignment pin in the top hole

Removing a wheel

- ▸ Remove the top wheel bolt completely using the hex socket in the screwdriver handle from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *fig. 171* and place it on a clean surface.
- ▸ Then install the alignment pin from the vehicle tool kit by hand in the empty wheel bolt hole ⇨ *fig. 172*[1)].
- ▸ Remove the rest of the wheel bolts.
- ▸ Remove the wheel ⇨ (!). The alignment pin remains in the hole while doing this.

Installing a wheel

Read the directions on ⇨ *page 271* when installing unidirectional tires.

- ▸ Slide the wheel on over the alignment pin ⇨ (!).
- ▸ Install the wheel bolts and tighten them gently using the hex socket.
- ▸ Remove the alignment pin and tighten the remaining wheel bolt.
- ▸ Carefully lower the vehicle using the vehicle jack*.
- ▸ Tighten the wheel bolts in a diagonal pattern using the wheel wrench.

The wheel bolts must be clean and loosen and tighten easily. Check the contact surfaces for the wheel and hub. Contaminants on these surfaces must be removed before installing the wheel.

WARNING

– Read and follow the important information and notes under ⇨ *page 247*.
– Never use the hex socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. Using the hex socket will not achieve the required tightening torque, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

Unidirectional tires

A unidirectional tire profile is identified by arrows on the tire sidewall that point in the running direction. You must always maintain the specified running direction. This is necessary to ensure the tire's optimum performance in regard to adhesion, running noise, and friction, and to reduce the risk of hydroplaning.

To benefit fully from the advantages of the unidirectional tire design, you should replace faulty tires as soon as possible and restore the correct running direction on all of the tires.

Finishing

- ▸ Reinstall the caps on the wheel bolts if necessary.

1) Applies to: vehicles with ceramic brake rotors*: use a second alignment pin* from the vehicle tool kit for the lowest hole according to the steps described for the first alignment pin.

- ▸ Store the vehicle tool kit in its designated place.
- ▸ If the removed wheel does not fit in the spare wheel well, store it securely in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 80*.
- ▸ Check the tire pressure on the installed wheel as soon as possible.
- ▸ Correct the tire pressure and store it in the MMI ⇨ *page 259*.
- ▸ The wheel bolt tightening specification must be 90 ft lbs (120 Nm). Have it checked it as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Drive carefully until then.
- ▸ Have the faulty wheel replaced as quickly as possible.

Space-saving spare tire

Applies to: vehicles with space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)

The spare tire is intended for short-term use only. Have the damaged tire checked and replaced if necessary by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.

There are some restrictions on the use of the compact spare tire. The compact spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. Do not replace it with the spare tire from another type of vehicle.

The compact spare tire is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover ⇨ *page 266*.

The tire pressure must be 61 PSI (420 kPA).

Snow chains

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains on the compact spare tire is not permitted.

If you have to drive with snow chains and a front tire fails, mount the spare tire in place of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire that you removed, and install that in place of the front tire that failed.

WARNING

– After installing a spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible.

– Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a compact spare tire. Driving faster than that increases the risk of an accident.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering with the compact spare tire.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, never drive with more than one compact spare tire.
– Normal summer or winter tires must not be mounted on the compact spare wheel rim.

Jump starting

Preparation

You should only perform the steps that follow if you have the necessary tools and technical expertise.

If the engine does not start because the vehicle battery is drained, you can jump start your vehicle using another vehicle. Jump start cables are needed to do this.

Both vehicle batteries must have 12 V nominal voltage. The voltage capacity (Ah) of the vehicle battery that is giving power must not be less than the capacity of the drained vehicle battery.

Jump start cable

Only use a jump start cable with a large enough diameter. Note the manufacturer's specifications.

Only use a jump start cable with insulated terminal clamps.

Positive cable - usually red.

Negative cable - usually black.

WARNING

– A drained vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 ºC). If the vehicle battery is frozen, it must be thawed before connecting the jump start cables. If it is not, the risk of an explosion and chemical burns increases. After jump starting the vehicle, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the vehicle battery checked. ▶

– Read the warnings when working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 227*.
– Handling the jump start cables incorrectly may cause the vehicle battery to explode and lead to serious injuries.

Note

Jump start cables can cause considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system if they are connected incorrectly.

Tips

– There must be no contact between the vehicles, or else voltage could flow when connecting the positive terminal and drain the vehicle battery of the vehicle providing the jump start.
– The drained vehicle battery must be connected correctly to the electrical system.
– Switch off electrical equipment that is not needed.

Starting the engine

Both jump start cables must be connected in the correct order.

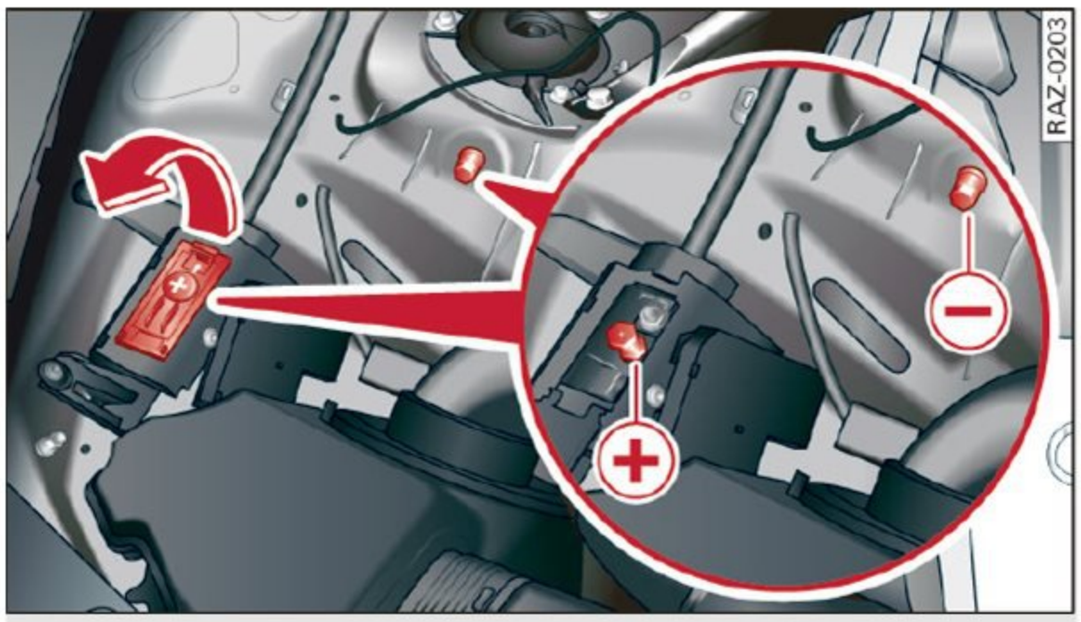


Fig. 173 Engine compartment: connectors for jump start cables or a charger

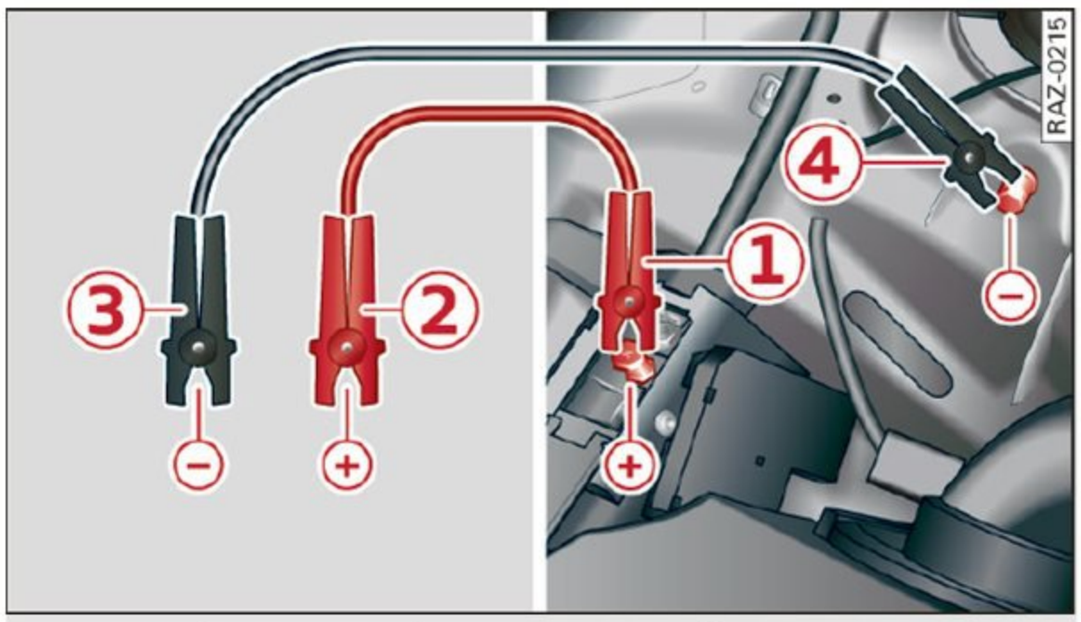


Fig. 174 Connecting the jump start cables

The jump start cable connections are located in the engine compartment.

Follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 236*.

Connecting the positive cable (red) to the positive terminal

▸ Open the red cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 173*.
1. Attach one end of the positive cable (red) to the jump-start pin ① ⇨ *fig. 174* on your vehicle.
2. Attach the other end of the positive cable (red) to the positive terminal ② on the power source.

Connecting the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal

3. Attach one end of the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal ③ on the power source.
4. Attach the other end of the negative cable (black) to the jump-start pin ④ on the vehicle.

Starting the engine

▸ Start the engine in the vehicle giving the charge and let it run at idle.
▸ Now start the engine in your vehicle, which has the drained battery.
▸ If the engine does not start, stop the starting procedure after 10 seconds and then repeat it after approximately 30 seconds.
▸ Turn on the rear window defogger in your vehicle in order to reduce any voltage peaks that may occur when disconnecting the jump start cables. The headlights must be switched off.
▸ With the engines running, remove the cables in reverse order of the way they were installed.
▸ Close the red cover on the positive terminal.

WARNING

– Never connect the jump start cable directly to your vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment.
– Do not touch the non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps. The cable must also not come into contact with vehicle components ▶

that conduct electricity when it is connected to the positive vehicle battery terminal. This can cause a short circuit.
– The plugs on the battery cells must not be opened.
– Keep ignition sources (such as open flames, burning cigarettes, etc.) away from the vehicle batteries to reduce the risk of an explosion.
– Route the jump start cables so they cannot get caught in the moving parts in the other vehicle's engine compartment.

Note

Please note that the connecting process previously described for the jump start cables is intended for when your vehicle is being jump started. If you are jump starting another vehicle, connect the negative cable (–) to a large metal component that is bolted securely to the engine block, or to the engine block itself. If the vehicle battery in the vehicle being jump started is not vented to the outside, there is a risk of explosion due to hydrogen gas.

Tips

Make sure that the connected jump start cables have sufficient contact with metal.

Towing

General information

You should only perform the steps that follow if you have the necessary tools and technical expertise.

Towing requires a certain amount of practice. Audi recommends contacting a towing company to have the vehicle transported.

You should only have your vehicle towed by another vehicle when disabled in exceptional circumstances. Inexperienced drivers should not tow.

Notes on towing

When the engine is stopped, the transmission will not be sufficiently lubricated if traveling at high speeds and long distances:

– The maximum permitted towing speed is 30 mph (50 km/h).
– The maximum permitted towing distance is 30 miles (50 km).

Additional information on towing with a tow truck

The vehicle may only be towed with the front axle raised. Do not wrap any safety chains or cable winches around the brake lines.

Tow bar and towing cable

The vehicle can be towed with a tow bar or towing cable. Both drivers should be familiar with the special considerations when towing, especially when using a towing cable.

Always make sure the traction force does not exceed the permitted level and there are no shock loading conditions. There is always the risk of the coupling becoming overloaded when driving off-road.

For the most safety and security, drive with a tow bar. You should use a towing cable only if a tow bar is not available. Use a towing cable made of synthetic elastic cable similar elastic material.

WARNING

– Towing highly increases the risk of an accident, for example from colliding with the towing vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, do not allow anyone to remain inside the vehicle when it is being transported by a tow truck or a special transporter.

Note

– If normal towing is not possible, for example if the transmission is faulty or if the towing distance is greater than 30 miles (50 km), then transport the vehicle on a special carrier.

– If the vehicle is towed by a tow truck at the axle that is not permitted, this can cause severe damage to the transmission.
– The vehicle must not be tow started for technical reasons.

Tips

– If the power supply is interrupted, then it will not be possible to move the selector lever out of the "P" position. The parking lock must be released using the emergency release before towing the vehicle ⇨ *page 93*.
– Switch Audi pre sense* off ⇨ *page 142* when loading the vehicle onto a vehicle carrier, train, ship, or other type of transportation ⇨ *page 276*, or when towing the vehicle. This can prevent an undesired intervention from the pre sense* system.
– Follow the local legal regulations for towing.

Towing

Read and follow the important information under ⇨ *page 274*.

Preparations

► Only secure the towing cable or tow bar at the designated towing loops ⇨ *page 275*, ⇨ *page 276*.
► Make sure the towing cable is not twisted. Otherwise it could disconnect from the towing loop while towing.
► Switch the emergency flashers on in both vehicles ⇨ *page 50*. However, do not do this if it prohibited by law.

Towing vehicle (front)

► Only start to drive when the towing cable is taut.
► Press the brake pedal very carefully.
► Avoid sudden braking or driving maneuvers.

Vehicle being towed (rear)

► Make sure the ignition is switched on so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that you can use the turn signals, the horn, and the windshield wipers if needed ⇨ ⚠.
► The brake booster only works when the engine is running. Power steering only works when the ignition is switched on and the vehicle is rolling [1]. If the brake booster and power steering are not functioning, you must press the brake pedal much harder and use more force to steer.
► Release the parking brake ⇨ *page 99*.
► Select the "N" selector lever position.
► Make sure the towing cable is always taut.

WARNING

Never tow a vehicle using a tow bar or towing cable if the vehicle does not have electrical power.

Front towing loop

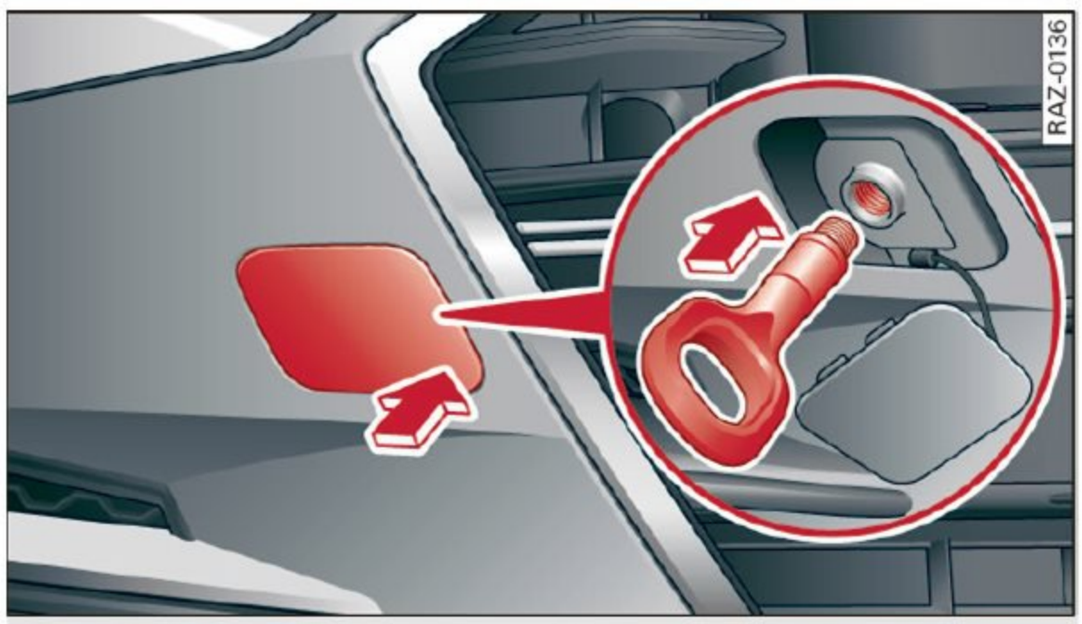


Fig. 175 Front bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located on the right side of the front bumper.

► Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 266*.
► Press the cap inward with brief, strong pressure ⇨ *fig. 175*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
► Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops and then tighten it with a wheel wrench. ▶

[1] Requirement: the vehicle battery must have a sufficient charge level.

▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and result in an accident.

Rear towing loop

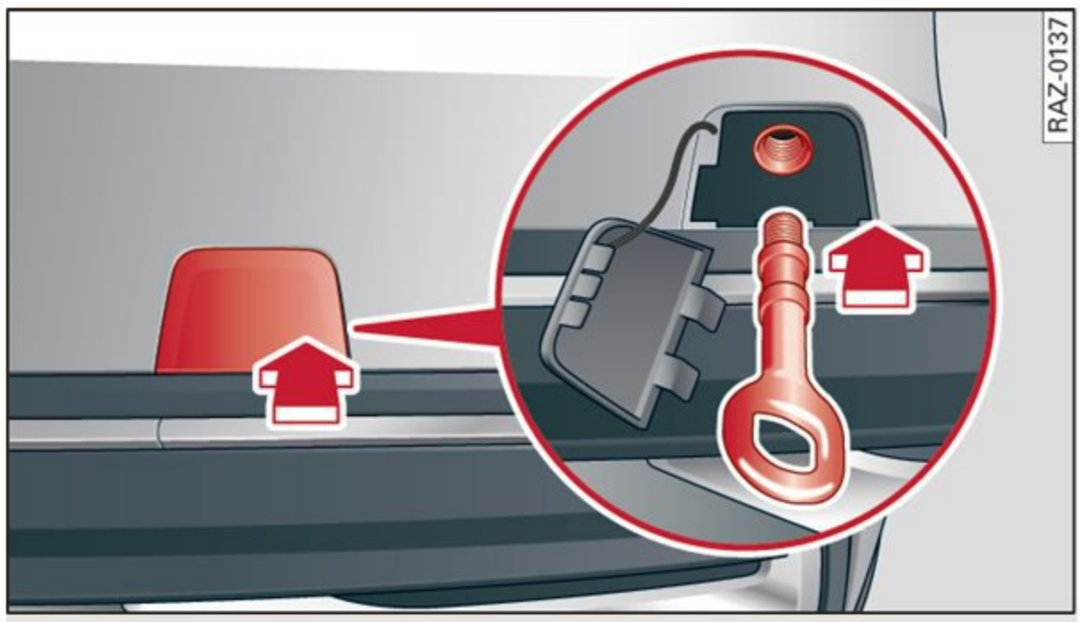


Fig. 176 Rear bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located on the right rear of the bumper.

▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 266*.
▸ Press the cap inward with brief, strong pressure ⇨ *fig. 176*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
▸ Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and result in an accident.

Vehicle transport

Applies to: vehicles with air suspension

Note

When transporting the vehicle on a car carrier, train, ship, or by other means, only secure the vehicle at the outer circumference of the tires (the tread surface). Securing the vehicle at the axle components, suspension struts, or towing eyes is not permitted because the pressure in the air suspension struts can change during transport. The vehicle might not be secured sufficiently if this happens.

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Replacing fuses

A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through.

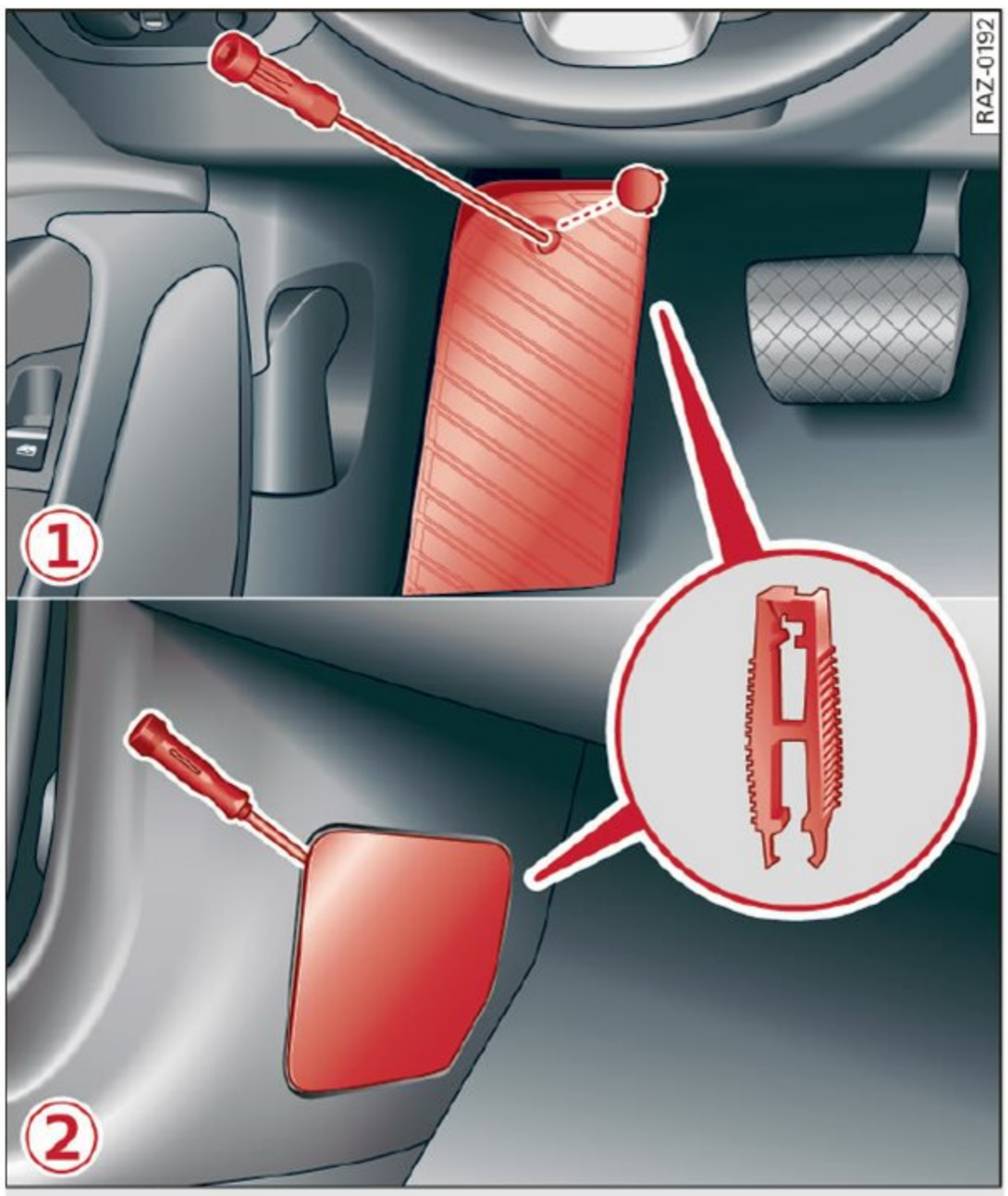


Fig. 177 Driver side footwell: footrest ①, front passenger side footwell (right-hand drive vehicles): cover ②

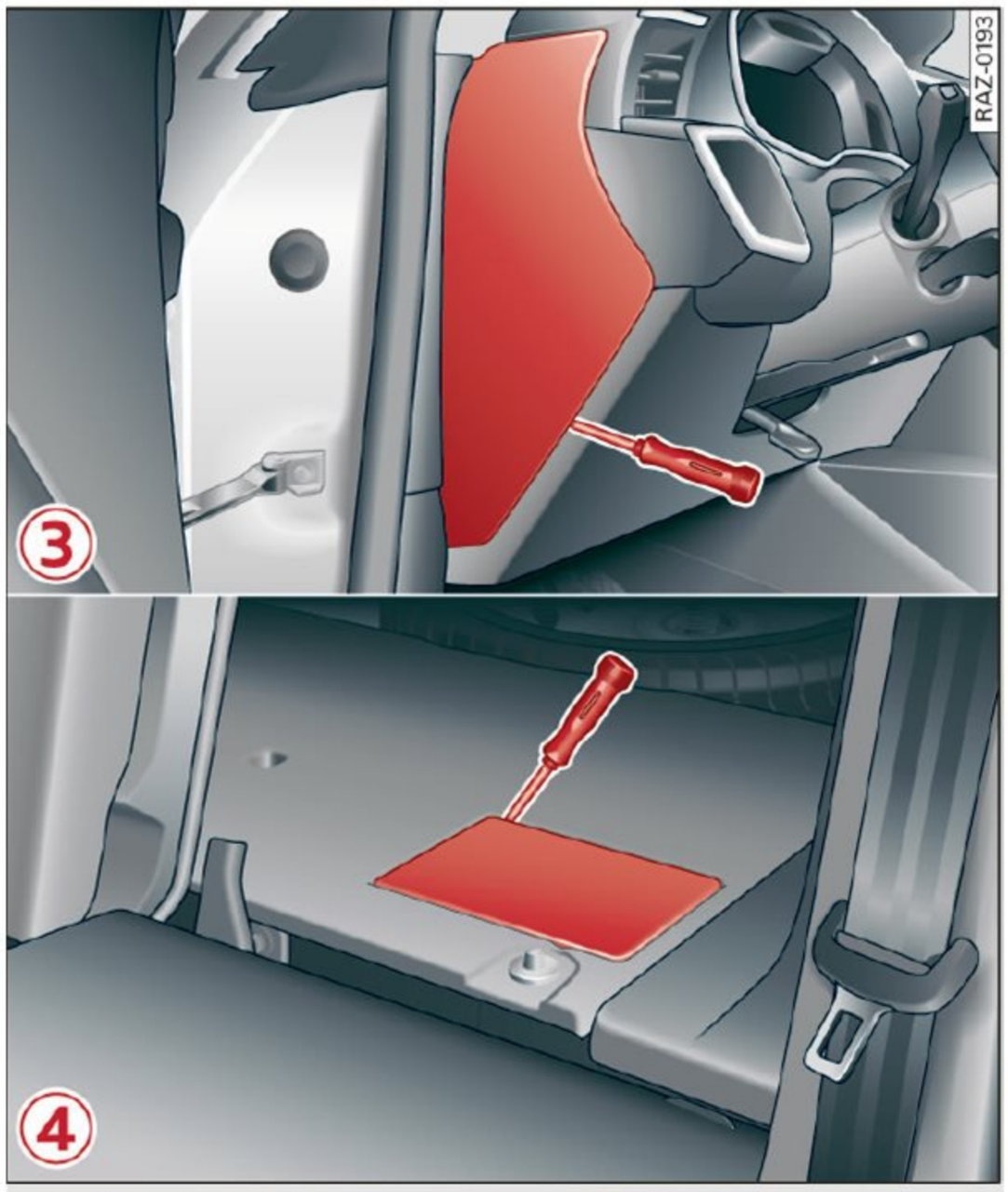


Fig. 178 Left side of cockpit: cover ③, luggage compartment floor: fuse panel cover ④

The fuses are located in the left footwell under the footrest ① or a cover ② (right-hand drive vehicles), on the left front side of the cockpit ③, and in the luggage compartment floor ④.

- ▸ Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- ▸ Check the table that follows to see which fuse belongs to the equipment.
- ▸ Remove the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 266*.
- ▸ Remove the appropriate cover.
- ▸ Remove the colored plastic clip from the fuse panel, if necessary. You can dispose of the plastic clip.
- ▸ Remove the clamps from the fuse panel cover in the footwell ① or ②.
- ▸ Remove the fuse using the clip.
- ▸ Replace the blown fuse only with a fuse that has the same current rating.
- ▸ Install the cover.

Fuse color identification

Color	Current rating in amps
Black	1
Gray	2

Color	Current rating in amps
Purple	3
Pink	4
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Light blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Light green	30
Teal	35
Orange	40

WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and a fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

– The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.
– Some of the equipment listed in the following tables applies only to certain model versions or certain optional equipment.

Fuse assignment - left side of cockpit

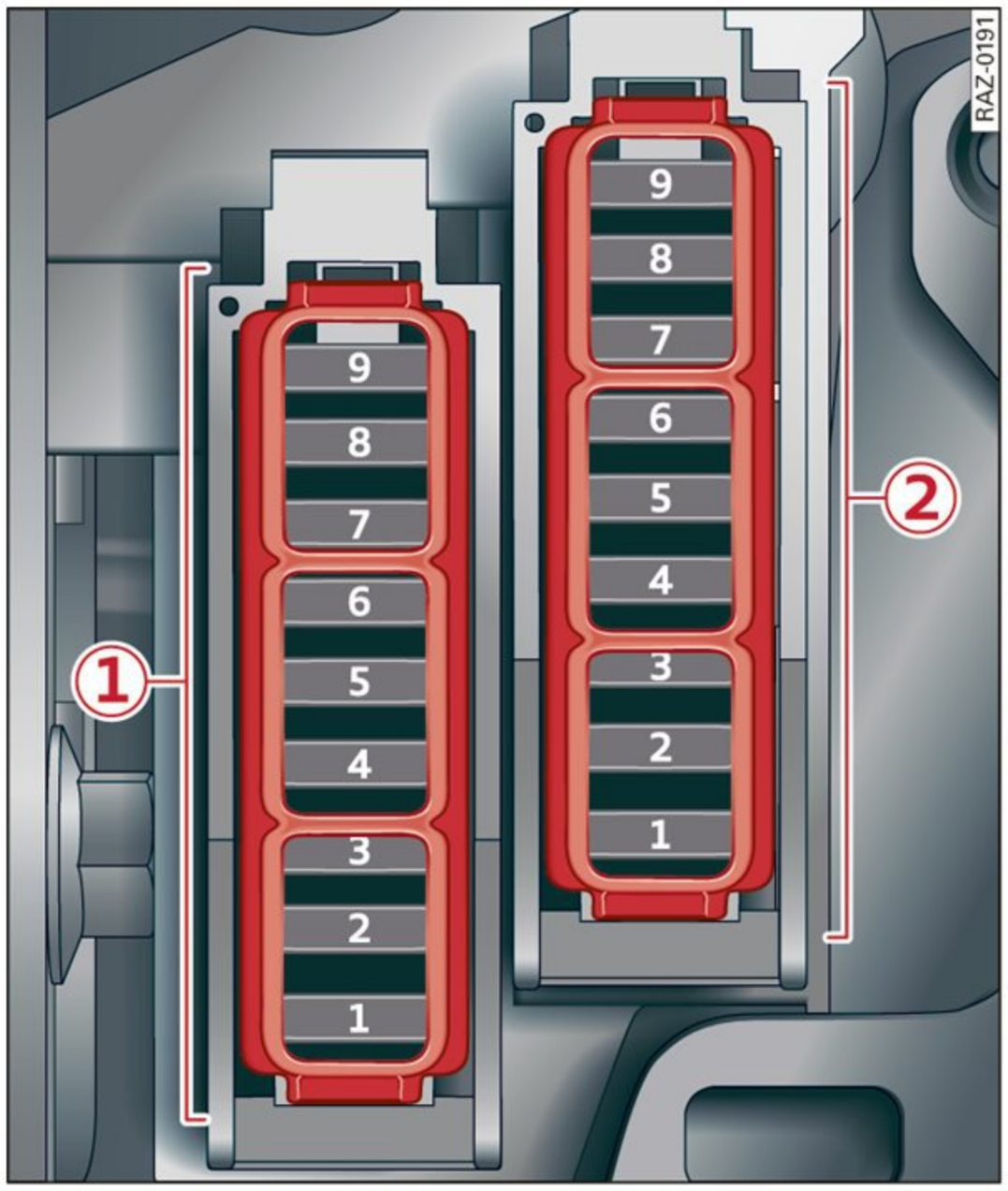


Fig. 179 Left side of the cockpit: fuse panel with plastic clip

Fuse panel ① (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
2	Steering column adjustment
3	CD/DVD player
4	Steering column electronics
5	Light switch, switch panels
6	Volume control
7	Instrument cluster
8	Front MMI display
9	Steering wheel heating

Fuse panel ② (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
2	MMI Infotainment system control module
3	Audi music interface
4	Head-up display
5	Climate control system, fragrance system, ionizer
9	Steering column lock

Fuse assignment - left footwell

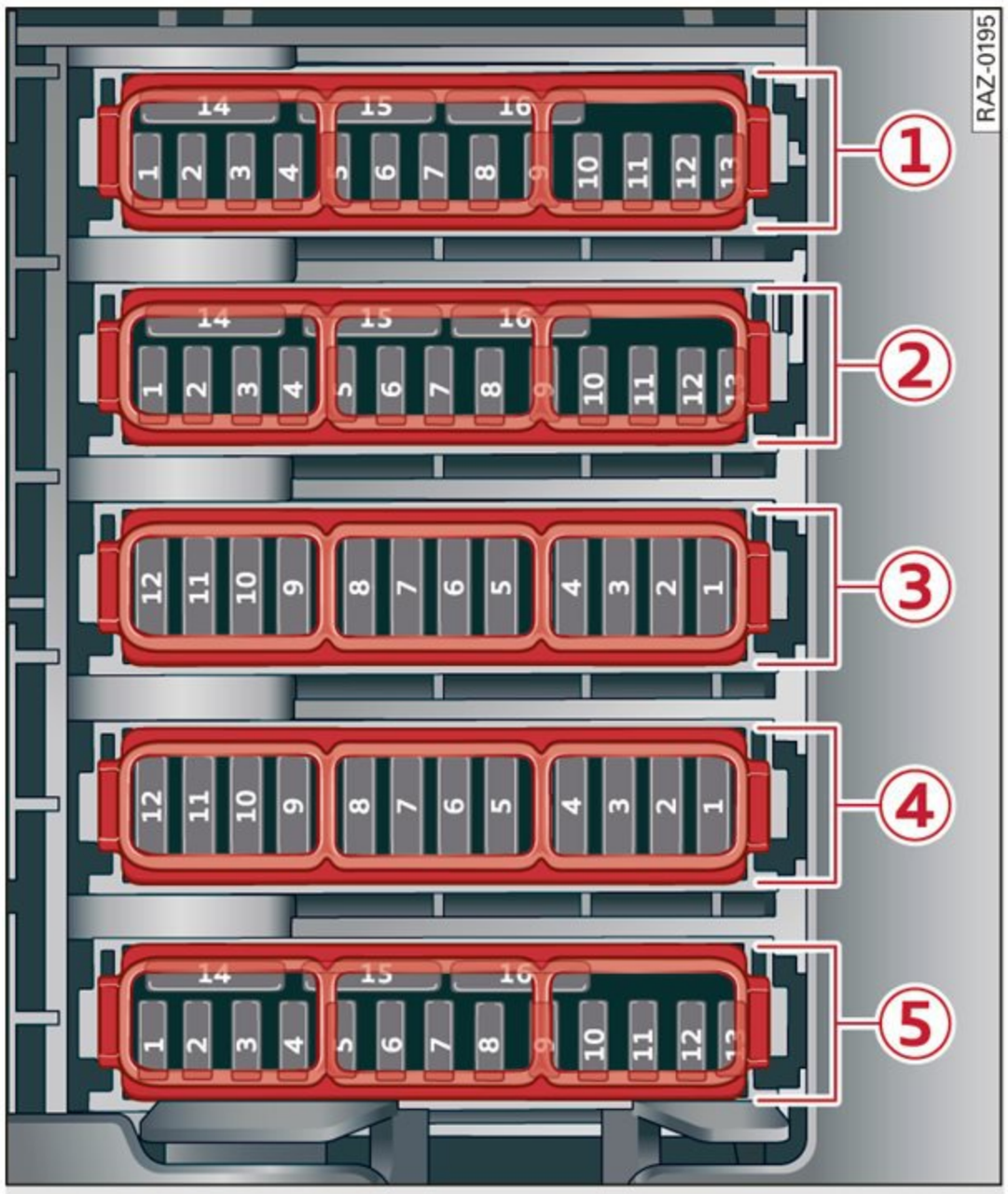


Fig. 180 Left footwell: fuse panel with plastic clip

The fuse assignment ③ and ④ is in the opposite order on right-hand drive vehicles.

Fuse panel ① (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
2	Engine components
3	Engine components
4	Engine components
5	Brake light sensor
6	Engine components
7	Engine components
8	Engine components
9	Engine components
10	Oil pressure sensor, oil temperature sensor
11	Engine start
12	Engine components
13	Radiator fan
14	Engine control module
15	Engine sensors
16	Fuel pump

Fuse panel ② (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Anti-theft alarm system
2	Engine control module
3	Left front lumbar support
5	Horn
6	Parking brake
7	Gateway control module (diagnosis)
8	Interior headliner lights
9	Driver assist systems control module
10	Airbag control module
11	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)
12	Diagnostic connector, light/rain sensor
13	Climate control system
14	Right front door control module
15	Climate control system, body electronics
16	Auxiliary battery control module

Fuse panel ③ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Engine ignition coils
5	Engine mount
6	Automatic transmission
7	Instrument panel
8	Climate control system blower
9	Windshield wiper control module
10	Dynamic steering
11	Engine start

Fuse panel ④ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Front seat heating
2	Windshield wipers
3	Left headlight electronics
4	Panoramic glass roof
5	Left front door control module
6	Sockets
7	Right rear door control module
8	All-wheel drive control module (quattro)
9	Right headlight electronics

Fuse panel ④ (black)	
10	Windshield washer system/headlight washer system
11	Left rear door control module
12	Parking heater

Fuse panel ⑤ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Seat ventilation, seat heating, rearview mirror, climate control system, rear climate control system controls
2	Climate control system
3	Sound actuator/exhaust sound tuning
4	Transmission heating valve
5	Starter
8	Night vision assist
9	Adaptive cruise assist
11	Intersection assistant, driver assist systems

Fuse assignment - luggage compartment

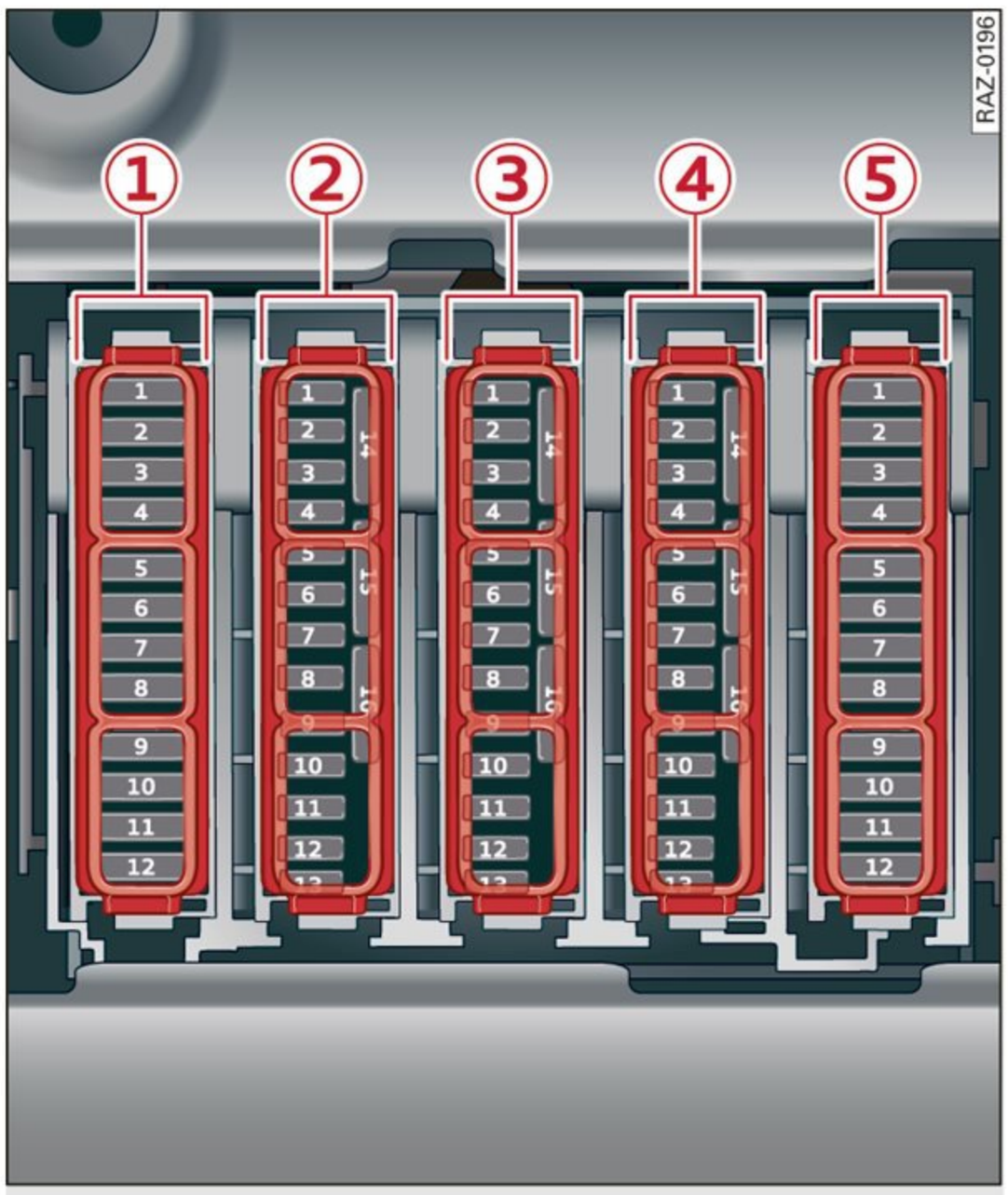


Fig. 181 Luggage compartment floor: fuse panel with plastic clip

Fuse panel ① (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
3	Passenger's side rear safety belt tensioner
4	Driver's side rear safety belt tensioner
5	Air suspension
6	Automatic transmission
7	Rear sliding sunroof, rear spoiler
8	Rear seat heating
9	Central locking, tail lights
10	Left front safety belt tensioner
11	Central locking, rear blind
12	Luggage compartment lid

Fuse panel ② (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
5	Brake system
9	Auxiliary battery control module

Fuse panel ③ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Driver assist systems control module
2	Audi phone box, park assist antenna
3	Right front lumbar support
4	Side assist
6	Tire pressure monitoring system
7	Emergency call system
9	Automatic transmission selector lever
10	TV tuner
11	Vehicle opening/start (NFC)
12	Garage door opener
13	Rearview camera, peripheral cameras
14	Central locking, tail lights
16	Right front safety belt tensioner

Fuse panel ④ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
	Not assigned

Fuse panel ⑤ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
3	Exhaust treatment
4	Rear climate control system control panel ▶

Fuse panel (5) (red)	
5	Right trailer hitch light
7	Trailer hitch
8	Left trailer hitch light
9	Trailer hitch socket
10	Sport differential
11	Exhaust treatment

Bulbs

Note

Your vehicle is equipped with maintenance-free headlights and tail lights. However, if a light bulb needs to be replaced, please contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Data privacy

Image recording

Surrounding area monitoring

Applies to: vehicles with surrounding area monitoring

Some vehicle functions require the vehicle's path to be detected and evaluated. This is done by cameras installed permanently on the vehicle that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (such as obstacles or guard rails). The live images from the cameras are transmitted to the applicable control module.

The camera images are transmitted to the applicable control module and stored for processing. The control module analyzes the current camera image using image evaluation software. This image evaluation software detects anonymized technical measurements, such as distances to objects. The control module evaluates these technical measurements and makes it possible for the assist systems to control the vehicle, if necessary.

Tips

The live camera images and anonymous technical measurements are stored in a short-term memory for a few seconds. They do not provide any information about the identity of people or vehicles.

Data memories

General information

Many electronic components in your vehicle contain a data memory. These data memories store technical information temporarily or permanently.

Vehicle control modules

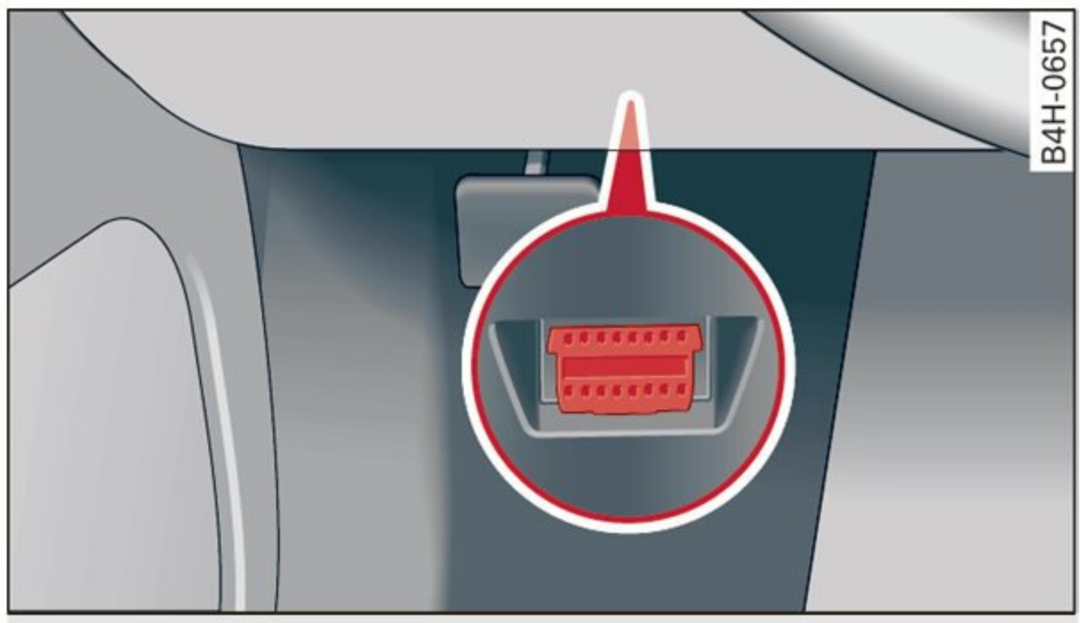


Fig. 182 Driver's side footwell: connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control modules for various vehicle systems such as the engine, exhaust system, airbags, etc. These vehicle control modules store data while driving normally that is required by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for diagnosis and repair purposes. Only certain types of data are recorded for a very short period of time if a control module has detected a system event. No noises, conversations, or images will be recorded in the vehicle.

The data may include information such as the vehicle speed, the direction of travel, and information about the brake system, or also the behavior of the restraint system in the event of an accident. The stored data can be exported and downloaded with special devices, which must be connected directly to the vehicle.

On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

There is a diagnostic connector socket in the driver's side footwell to read out the various control modules and the event data recorder. Data regarding the function and condition of the electronic control modules is stored in the event memory. Only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility read out and delete the event memory.

WARNING

– Incorrect use of the connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System can cause malfunctions, which can then result in accidents and serious injuries. ▶

– Only allow an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to read out the engine data.

Crash data recorder

Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's system performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

– How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
– Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
– How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
– How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g. name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Assist system monitor

This vehicle is equipped with an Assist System Monitor (ASM). The ASM collects data that is not stored by the EDR in the event of an accident. The main task of the ASM is to make it possible to understand the role and the behavior of the assist systems in these accident situations. In addition to the data that the EDR stores, the ASM records data related to the assist systems starting several seconds before the accident or near-accident. The data collected by ASM depends on the equipment and may include the following information: status information of the assist systems (for example, if they are switched on or off, system events, etc.), control interventions (for example, by ESC, ABS, Audi pre sense*, etc.), and assist systems settings (such as speed settings).

Special devices and access to the vehicle or to the ASM are necessary in order to read the data from the ASM memory. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement authorities can also read and analyze the stored data if they have access to the vehicle or to the ASM.

Data usage

Audi can read out the information stored in the data memories or similar data, or give this information to third parties, especially in the following situations:

– If the vehicle owner or lessee agrees
– If there is an official request from the police
– If a court or authorities request it

If legally permitted, Audi can also use the data for analysis of vehicle operation and safety performance or provide this data to third parties for research purposes.

Transmitted information

Start/Stop system

Statistical information may be recorded and transmitted to Audi in order to develop and optimize the Start/Stop system. You can find additional information in the MMI:

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal notes** > **About Audi connect**.

Privacy settings

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > (**Data management**) > **Privacy settings**

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

Location, vehicle, and personal data are transmitted when using Audi connect services.

Allowing sending of data

When this function is switched on, the data module for using all Audi connect services is active.

When this function is switched off, the data connection will be limited or deactivated depending on vehicle equipment. The majority of Audi connect services will not be available.

The following interfaces are not affected by this setting: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi connection, Audi smartphone interface (ASI), Near Field Communication (NFC), charging communication (e-tron), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC), if equipped.

Note

You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection, and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Tips

– If the transmission of data is limited, data will still be transmitted to verify subscriptions.
– If the transmission of data is limited, it will have the following effects on the exchange of data for Audi connect services and emergency calls, if equipped:
  – The emergency call function will remain available without restrictions and will continue to transmit data.
  – The Audi connect Stolen Vehicle Locator system will remain available without restrictions and will continue to transmit data.
– If an Audi connect key is already assigned to a user, data will still be transmitted to maintain data security.
– If an online roadside assistance call is initiated, no data will be transmitted, but a call will be made.
– If the Geofencing Alert, Speed Alert, and/or Valet Alert services have been activated by the key user, then they will remain available without restrictions and continue to transmit data.

Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

AUDI AG collects, uses, stores and shares your personal information, such as contact data, vehicle data, usage data, driving data and precise geolocation, in order to provide you with the products and services you have purchased or requested, and for a number of other purposes, for example, to track quality issues, to performance and safety, to meet our internal compliance or legal requirements and to market to customers and potential customers. For a more complete list of the data we collect, how we use it and with whom we share it, please visit your Audi national/sales region website at www.audi.com.

The collection, use and sharing may vary depending on your model and model year, your subscription status, or the service offering. For example, collection, use and sharing may vary between Audi connect services, if you have designated a key user, or if you are driving a model equipped with persistent data logging. Please review the complete Privacy Statement to understand our data handling practices with respect to a particular service.

You can find additional information about our data privacy practices in your MMI.

▸ On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal notes** > **About Audi connect**.

Information about our privacy practices in conjunction with the mobile Audi connect application can be found in the Application's Privacy Statement. ▶

For additional information about the privacy practices relating to Audi connect, myAudi, or other websites, applications or online services as well as your obligations with respect to using these services, and for additional information regarding Audi connect terms and conditions, please visit your Audi national/sales region website at www.audi.com.

Accessories and technical modifications

Warranty

Your vehicle is covered by various warranties:

– New Vehicle Limited Warranty
– Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation
– Emissions Control System Warranties: *Federal Emissions Control System Defect Warranty, Federal Emissions Performance Warranty*
– Applies to: USA models: Kansas Safety Belt Limited Warranty
– Applies to: USA models: California Emissions Control Warranties: *Short-term Emissions Defects Warranty, Long-term Emissions Defects Warranty, TZEV models Emissions Defects Warranty, California Emissions Performance Warranty*

You can find detailed information in your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet and in the California Emissions Booklet*.

Audi Literature Shop

Service information is made available as soon as possible after a model is introduced and can be ordered in the Audi Literature Shop: http://literature.audiusa.com

Driving in other countries

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require motor vehicles to comply with emissions regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles that were produced for the U.S. and Canadian markets are different from vehicles produced for other countries.

If you plan to use your vehicle outside of the United States or Canada, it is possible that:

– Fuel may have a significantly lower octane rating. Unsuitable fuels can cause engine damage.
– Proper maintenance and repair work may not be possible because special service equipment, tools, or measuring devices needed for your vehicle may not be available.
– Replacement parts may not always be available.
– Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries.

Note

Audi is not liable for damage to the vehicle resulting from these country-specific differences.

Maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications

Note the safety precautions ⇨ *page 227, Working in the engine compartment* and ⇨ *page 270, Raising the vehicle*.

General information

Due to the increasing complexity of technology in these vehicles, as well as the safety and environmental standards that apply, you can only perform a very limited amount of repairs and modifications to the vehicle yourself.

Proof of maintenance work may be required to submit a claim within the warranty period.

We recommend that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and that Audi Genuine Parts and Audi Genuine Accessories are used. This helps to ensure that your vehicle's functionality, performance, and safety are not impaired.

Maintenance and repairs

Your vehicle was designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. Some regular maintenance is required to help ensure that your vehicle runs in a safe, economical, and reliable manner. Please refer to your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet for more detailed information about vehicle maintenance.

When operating the vehicle under more extreme operating conditions, for example when outside temperatures are very low or in very dusty environments, certain maintenance should be performed between the specified intervals. ▶

Usually maintenance and repair work requires special tools, measuring devices, and other equipment that is available to trained vehicle technicians in order to help ensure that your vehicle and all of its systems operate correctly, reliably, and safely. Performing work on the vehicle incorrectly can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may void one or more of your vehicle's warranties.

Technical Modifications

Interference with electronic components, their software, the wiring, and data transfer may cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected, such malfunctions can also impair systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and increased wear of vehicle components.

Some convenience functions, such as the convenience turn signal function, individual door opening function, and displays, can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If functions are reprogrammed, the information and descriptions about these functions in this Owner's Manual may no longer apply to the changed functions. Audi recommends that an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility perform and verify any reprogramming procedures.

WARNING

Maintenance procedures, repairs, or technical modifications that are performed incorrectly increase the risk of an accident and can lead to serious injuries.

WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

- Always use extreme caution when doing any work in the engine compartment. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and use common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Never perform any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct technical information and the correct tools.
- If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer, an authorized Audi Service Facility, or another qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

Note

- Maintenance procedures, repairs or technical modifications that are performed incorrectly can cause damage to the vehicle, such as corrosion.
- If emergency repairs must be performed, take your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.
- Audi is not liable for damage to the vehicle resulting from failure to comply with these guidelines.

For the sake of the environment

- Regular maintenance can help protect the environment.
- Technical modifications to the vehicle can have a negative impact on fuel consumption and vehicle emissions.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners are classified as Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Tips

Because of your vehicle's aluminum body design, all service and repair procedures affecting the body should be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi ▶

Service Facility, who will perform the work according to Audi factory specifications. Only Audi Genuine Parts are used when Audi experts perform repair or service procedures. Failure to use Audi Genuine Parts or Audi Genuine Accessories or performing repairs incorrectly may result in severe vehicle damage, such as corrosion.

Accessories and parts

Consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before purchasing accessories or replacement parts. We recommend that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and that Audi Genuine Parts and Audi Genuine Accessories are used.

Audi does not endorse the use of products and accessories that it has not evaluated, even if the product is approved by a certified testing agency or government agency.

WARNING

- Installing unapproved accessories or incorrect replacement parts can cause vehicle damage and can increase the risk of an accident.
- Never attach accessories, such as telephone holders or cup holders, to the airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zone, because this increases the risk of injury if the airbag deploys.
- Do not use a license plate bracket on the front bumper that is different from the bracket installed at the factory, and do not attach any additional brackets.

Note

A correctly-installed exterior antenna is required for operating radio equipment in the vehicle. Otherwise, the increased electromagnetic waves can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Observe the regulations in the country where the vehicle is being operated and the instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

Reporting Safety Defects

Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying

Audi of America, Inc.
2200 Ferdinand Porsche Drive
Herndon, VA 20171

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1–888–327–4236 (TTY: 1–800–424–9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; ▶

or write to:

Administrator NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Ave.,
S.E. West Building
Washington, DC
20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Audi Canada.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired:
1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

English:
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/menu.htm

French:
http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/securiteautomobile/menu.htm

Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems

The manufacturer is not liable for radio malfunctions that are caused by unauthorized changes to the equipment.

Equipment

The following equipment complies with FCC section 15 and RSS-Gen:

– Adaptive cruise assist*
– Remote control key
– Garage door opener (HomeLink)*
– Intersection assistant*
– Side assist*
– Exit warning*
– Rear cross traffic assist*

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any ▶

4K8012721BA

interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen

This device complies with Industry Canada's licence-exempt RSSs. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference; and

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Technical data

Identification data

Vehicle identification label

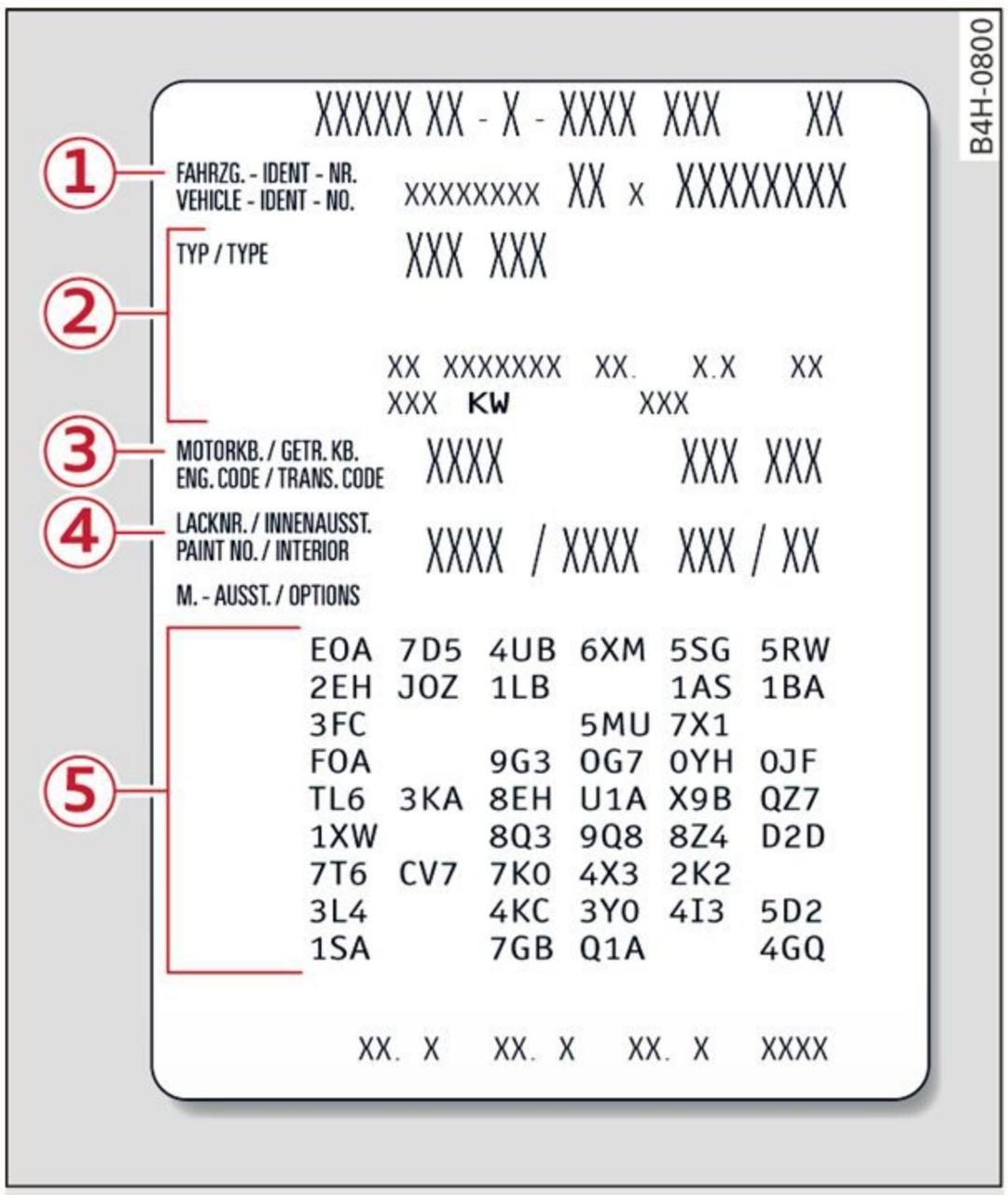


Fig. 183 Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label ⇨ *fig. 183* is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

The vehicle identification label information can also be found in the Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

The sticker contains the following vehicle data:

① Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
② Vehicle type, engine output, transmission
③ Engine and transmission codes
④ Paint and interior codes
⑤ Optional equipment numbers

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The VIN is located in the following areas:

– Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Vehicle information**.
– On the vehicle identification label
– At the front behind the windshield
– in the engine compartment on the right side

Notes about technical data

The values may vary based on special equipment as well as market-specific equipment and measuring methods.

Please note that the specifications listed in the vehicle documentation always take precedence.

Tips

Any technical data that is missing was not available at the time of printing.

Vehicle data

Dimensions

	Length (in (mm))	Width (in (mm))	Width across the mirrors (in (mm))	Height at curb weight (in (mm))
A7 Sportback	195.6 (4,969)	75.1 (1,908)	83.4 (2,118)	56.0 (1,422)

Capacities

	Approximate capacities
Fuel tank	19.3 gal (73 L)
Windshield and headlight washer system*	6.6 qt (6.2 L)

Weights

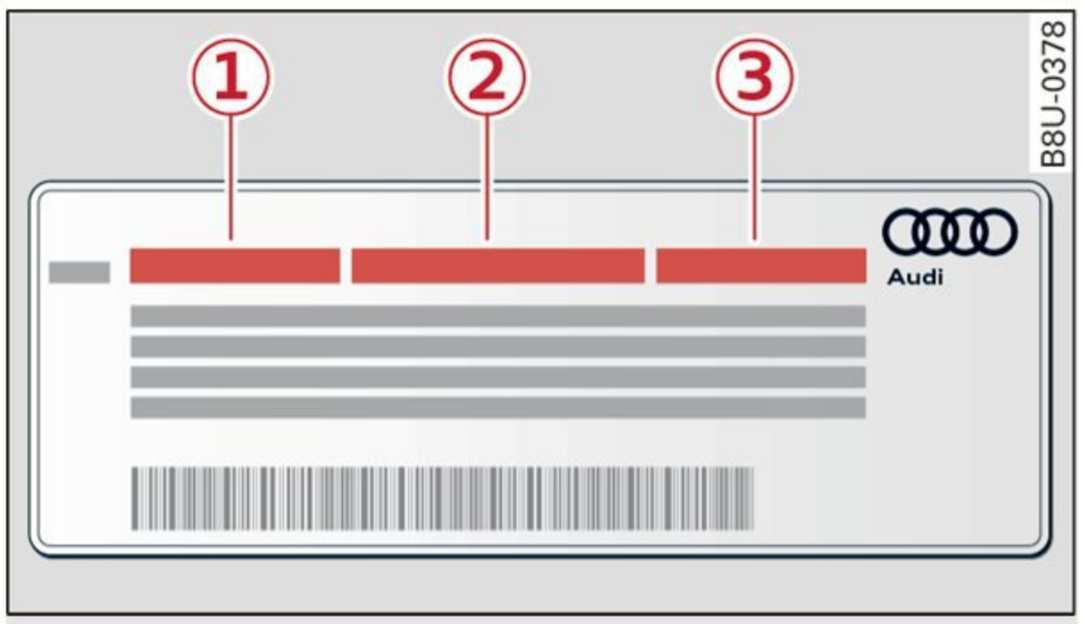


Fig. 184 Safety certificate

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The maximum permitted total weight (1) of the vehicle is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The maximum permitted load on the front axle (2) or the rear axle (3) is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

Load

The maximum permitted load is listed on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Roof load

The maximum permitted roof load is 198 lb (90 kg).

A

A/C (climate control system) 85
Accelerator pedal 92
also refer to Accelerator pedal 92
Accessories 286, 288
Active lane assist
refer to Lane departure warning 137
refer to Lane guidance 137
Adaptive cruise assist 129
Cleaning the sensors 261
Predictive control 127
Adaptive dampers 104
Adjusting air distribution (climate control system) 85
Adjusting the brightness 52
Adjusting the sound 218
Adjusting the temperature (climate control system) 85
Adjusting the volume 27
Adjusting the volume (announcements) 218
Adjusting the welcome sound 218
Airbag system 67
Air quality display 87
Air suspension 104
Alarm system
refer to Anti-theft alarm system 33
Alignment pin (changing the wheel) 266
All-weather lights 47
All season tires 255
All wheel drive
refer to quattro 106
AMI
refer to Audi music interface 207
Android Auto
refer to Audi smartphone interface 216
Anti-freeze
Windshield washer system 238
Anti-lock braking system 107
Anti-Slip Regulation 107
Anti-theft alarm system 33
Anti-theft wheel bolts 269
Apple CarPlay
refer to Audi smartphone interface 216
Aspect ratio (video) 210, 212
ASR
refer to Anti-Slip Regulation 107
Audi adaptive light 47
Audi connect Infotainment
Data Privacy 284
Audi connect key 30, 37
Safelock 33
Audi connect key card 30, 34, 37
Audi drive select 103
Audi music interface 207
Audio files 208
Audi phone box 161
Audi pre sense 139
Messages 143
Audi side assist
refer to Side assist 143
Audi smartphone interface 216
Audi virtual cockpit
refer to Instrument cluster 11
AUTO
Automatic headlights 47
Climate control system 85
Automatic luggage compartment lid 39, 40
Automatic transmission 90
Launch Control 92
Parking lock emergency release 93
Automatic wipe/wash system 54
Auto supplementary heater 87
Average consumption 15
Average speed 15

B

Bag hooks 79
Battery 236
Charging 238
Winter operation 236
Blinds
refer to Sunshade (roof) 43
Block route 189
Blower (climate control system) 85
Bluetooth
Audio player 205
Connecting a mobile device 158
Deleting a device 220
Device overview 219
Disconnecting a device 220

4K8012721BA

Displaying profiles 220
Searching for a device 220
Selecting a device 220
Specifying a favorite 220
Brake fluid
Checking the brake fluid level 235
Brakes 97
Brake assist 107
Brake fluid 235
Electromechanical parking brake 99
Emergency braking function 100
New brake pads 97
Break-in security feature 33
Breaking in
New brake pads 97
New tires 247
Browser
refer to Media center 209
Bulb replacement 281
Business address 190

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 228
Battery specific 237
Call list 165
Call options 169
Canceling route guidance 186
Capacities
Fuel tank 291
Washer fluid reservoir 291
Cargo net 83
Car key 34
Car phone 157, 169
Car wash 260
Catalytic converter 226
Cell phone
refer to Telephone 157
Cell phone compartment
refer to Audi phone box 161
Central locking 30
Convenience key 35
Convenience opening and closing 42
Luggage compartment lid 39
Mechanically unlocking and locking 32
Messages 32
Remote control key 35
Setting 31
Vehicle key 35
Central locking switch 32
Ceramic brakes 98
Certification 289
Changing light bulbs 281
Charging
refer to Power sources 78
Charging the battery (mobile devices) . 161, 207
Child safety lock
Climate control system controls in the rear . 41
Power windows 41
Rear doors 41
Child safety seats 72
Securing to the top tether anchor 75
Securing with a safety belt 75
Securing with LATCH 74
Cleaning 260
Cleaning Alcantara 263
Cleaning artificial leather 263
Cleaning carbon components 262, 263
Cleaning controls 263
Cleaning decorative parts/trim 262
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes 262
Cleaning plastic parts 263
Cleaning textiles 263
Climate control system 84
Air quality display 87
Auto supplementary heater 87
Ionizer 86
Operating 84
Residual heat 86
Settings 85
Settings (MMI) 87
Climate control system controls in the rear
Child safety lock 41
Closing
Automatic luggage compartment lid 39
Convenience closing 42
Hood 228
Luggage compartment lid 39
Luggage compartment lid with foot motion . 40
Panoramic glass roof 43
Sunshade (roof) 43
Windows 42
Closing aid (power closing doors) 30

Cockpit dimming 52
Cockpit (overview) 6
Color number 291
Coming home/Leaving home
refer to Entry/exit lighting 50
Compact spare tire 272
Compartments 79
Compass in the mirror 56
Compliance 289
Configuration wizard 18
connect 173
Data plans 177
Emergency call and service 179
Infotainment 173
Infotainment services 174
Online roadside assistance 180
Vehicle control services 175
Connection manager 219
Connections
refer to Media 204, 208
Connect key
refer to Audi connect key 37
Consumer information 286
Consumption (fuel) 15
Contacts 163
Add destination 190
Importing/exporting 170
Memory capacity 170
Convenience key 30
Convenience closing 42
also refer to Vehicle key 34
Convenience opening and closing
Windows or roof 42
Coolant temperature display 13
Cooling mode (climate control system) 85
Cooling system
Adding coolant 234
Coolant 233
Coolant level checking 234
Cornering light 47
Cruise control system 124
Cup holders 78
Current consumption 15

D

Data plans 177
Data Privacy 284
Date 15
Daytime running lights 47
Declaration of compliance 289
DEF (instrument cluster) 11
Deluxe automatic climate control
refer to Climate control system 84
Demo mode
refer to Presentation mode 195
Destination on the map 186
Details 185
Determining correct load limit 254
Digital compass 56
Dimensions 291
Dimming the exterior mirrors 53
Dimming the rearview mirror 53
Directory
refer to Contacts 163
Display
Cleaning 263
Disposal 286
Distance 15
Distance warning 137
Doors
Child safety lock 41
Door contact switch 51
Mechanically unlocking and locking 32
Power closing/closing aid 30
Driver information system 12
Drives
refer to Media 204, 208
Drive select
refer to Audi drive select 103
Drive system 95, 97
Audi drive select 103
Driving program 91, 136
Driving through water 102
Driving time 15
Driving tips
Driving through water 102
Efficient driving 95
Inclines and hills 102
Dust filter
refer to Pollutant filter 87
DVD drive (media drives) 205
Dynamic all-wheel steering 105

4K8012721BA

E

E-mail 168
EDL
refer to Electronic Differential Lock 107
EDR
Event Data Recorder 283
Efficiency assist 125
Electrical system 236
Electromechanical parking brake 99
Electronic Differential Lock 108
Electronic immobilizer 34
Electronic Stabilization Control 107
Embedded SIM card 173
Emergency assist 147
Emergency assistance 266
Emergency braking function 100
Emergency call 179
Emergency flashers 50
Emergency fueling 225
Emergency mode 94
Emergency operation
Doors 32
Fuel filler door 225
Luggage compartment lid 41
Panoramic glass roof 43
Emissions control systems 226
Energy consumers 15
Energy management 96
Engine
Breaking in 95
Coolant 233
Emergency stop 88
Engine will not start 88
Jump starting 272
Start/Stop system 96
Starting and stopping 88
Engine compartment
Cover (pedestrian protection system) 226
Opening and closing the hood 228
Overview 229
Safety precautions 227
Engine oil
Adding 230
Changing 232
Checking oil level 230
Consumption 230
Indicator light 230
Replacement interval 239
Temperature display 14
Engine Start/Stop mode
refer to Start/Stop system 96, 97
Engine stop
refer to Start/Stop system 96, 97
Entry/exit lighting 50
Entry assistance 61
Environment
Unleaded gasoline 222
eSIM
refer to Embedded SIM card 173
Evasive steering assist 142
Event Data Recorder (EDR) 283
Exit warning 145
Exterior lighting 47
Exterior mirrors 52
Folding settings 31
External voice operation 26

F

Factory default settings
Multi Media Interface 219
Fast forwarding and rewinding (audio/video file) 208
Fast forwarding (audio/video file) 208
Fast route 182
Favorites
Bluetooth 220
Navigation 184
Telephone 163
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) . 289
File formats (media drives) 214
Fog (windows) 86
Folding the rear seats 82
Footwell temperature 87
For the sake of the environment
Disposing of engine oil 232
Fueling 223
Free text search
Media 212
Radio 199
also refer to Intelligent search 182
Freeze protection
Coolant 233

Front center armrest 61
Front passenger's seat adjustment
Rear 61
Front passenger's seat adjustment
Front 61
Fuel 222
Additives 223
Current consumption 15
Fuel gauge 11
Fuel tank capacity 291
Gasoline 222
Saving fuel consumption 95
Fueling
Fuel filler door 223
Fuel filler door emergency release 225
Fuel tank capacity 291
With reserve canister (emergency fueling) . 225

G

Garage door opener 44
Garment hooks 79
Gasoline 222
Additives 223
Gasoline mixture 222
GAWR
refer to Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) . 292
Gear 90
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . . 243
Glove compartment 79
Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) 292
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 292
GVWR
refer to Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 292

H

Handsfree 157
Head-up display
Adjusting 24
Adjusting the brightness 52
Operating 24
Headlight range control 47
Headlights
Cleaning 261
Headlight range control 47
Washer system 54
Head restraints
Adjusting 63
Removing and installing 63
Heating 84
High beams
High beam assistant 48
Highway lights 47
Hill descent control 102
Hill hold assist 101
also refer to Hill hold assist 101
Hills 102
Home
refer to Home address 190
Home address 190
HomeLink
refer to Garage door opener 44
Home screen 17
Horn 6

I

Ignition
Switching on and off 88
Imbalance (wheels) 249
Immobilizer
refer to Electronic immobilizer 34
Importing and exporting (contacts) 170
Inclines 102
Indicator lights 7
Inspection interval 239
Instrument cluster 11
Cleaning 263
On-board computer 15
Operating 12
Personal profile 12
Service interval display 239
Switching tabs 12
Switching views 13
Vehicle functions 15
Instrument illumination 52
Integrated assistance 18
Intelligent search
Navigation 182
Interior lighting 51, 52
Interior monitoring 33
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) 54

4K8012721BA

Internet
refer to connect 173
Internet radio
refer to Online radio 200
Intersection assistant 146
Ionizer 86
iPhone
refer to Audi music interface 207

J

Jump starting 272

K

Key 30, 34
Audi connect key 34, 37
Audi connect key card 34, 37
Convenience opening and closing 42
Key not detected 88
Key replacement 34
Mechanical key 34
PANIC key 34
Replacing the battery 36
Unlocking and locking 35
Vehicle code 34
Key card
refer to Audi connect key card 37
Kick-down 92

L

Lane assist
refer to Lane departure warning 137
refer to Lane guidance 137
Lane departure warning 137
Cleaning the camera area 261
Lane guidance 132
Laser lighting 49
Laser scanner 114
Cleaning 262
LATCH (securing child safety seats) 74
Launch Control 92
Leather care and cleaning 263
License plate bracket 226, 288
Lifting points (vehicle jack) 270
Light/rain sensor
Headlights 47
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) 54
Lighting
Exterior 47
Interior 51
Lights 47
Listening to music
refer to Media 204, 208
Load 292
Locking and unlocking
By remote control 35
Using the lock cylinder 32
With the convenience key 35
Low beam headlights 47
Luggage compartment 80
Cover 82
Increasing the size 82
also refer to Luggage compartment 80
Luggage compartment lid
Closing button 39
Emergency releasing 41
General information 38
Opening and closing 39
Opening and closing with foot motion 40
Power opening and closing 39

M

Maintenance 286
Maintenance intervals 239
Making an emergency call 165
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 226
Manual shifting 92
Map
Changing the scale 186
Display 188
Operating 187
Setting the destination 186
Map preview 185
Map update 192
Online 192
SD card/USB connection 192
Massage function 59
Front 60
Matrix LED headlamps 48
Mechanical key 34

Media 204, 208
Drives 204
Supported formats 214
Media center 209
Memory capacity
MMI 170
Memory card
SD card reader (MMI) 204
Supported types and formats 214
Memory function 67
Menu language
refer to Setting the language 218
Messages 167
Mirror compass 56
Mirrors
Adjusting exterior mirrors 52
Dimming 53
Vanity mirror 54
MMI
refer to Multi Media Interface 18
Mobile device
refer to Telephone 157
Mountain passes 102
Mountain roads 102
Multifunction steering wheel
Buttons 12, 27
Operating 12
Programming buttons 27
Voice recognition system 25
Multi Media Interface 18
Menus and symbols 19
Operating 16, 19
Switching the displays on or off 18
Muting (mute) 27
myAudi 174
myAudi navigation 185
myAudi Navigation 181

N

Narrow area 136
Natural leather care and cleaning 263
Navigation 181
Better route 194
Calling 185
Changing the scale 185
also refer to Map 187
Navigation (instrument cluster) 188
Neutral 91
NHTSA 288
Night vision assist 121
Cleaning the camera 261
Notification center 20

O

Octane rating (gasoline) 222
Odometer 14
Resetting 14
Office address
refer to Business address 190
OFF (climate control system) 85
Oil
refer to Engine oil 230
On-board computer 15
On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) . . . 226, 282
Online destination
refer to Point of interest 184
Online map
refer to Satellite map 191
Online media 206
Online radio 200
also refer to Online radio 200
Online roadside assistance 180
Online services
refer to connect 173
Online system update 219
Opening 30
Automatic luggage compartment lid 39
Convenience opening 42
Fuel filler door 223
Hood 228
Luggage compartment lid 39
Luggage compartment lid with foot motion . 40
Panoramic glass roof 43
Sunshade (roof) 43
Windows 42
Opening and closing
refer to Unlocking and locking 30, 35
Operating
Head-up display 24
Instrument cluster 12
Multifunction steering wheel 12
Multi Media Interface 16, 19

Text input 22
Touch display 16
Voice recognition system 25
Optional equipment number 291
Options
Media 212
Navigation 194
Radio 202
Overview (cockpit) 6

P

Paint damage 262
Paint number 291
Panic button 35
PANIC button 34
Panoramic glass roof 43
Convenience opening and closing 42
Emergency closing 43
Quick opening and closing 43
Parental control
DVD 213
Parking aid 149
Cleaning the sensors and camera 261
Peripheral cameras 151
Rearview camera 151
Parking aids
Adjusting 156
Parking and maneuvering 149
Parking brake
refer to Electromechanical parking brake . . 99
Parking lights 47
Parking lock 91
Parking lock emergency release 93
Parking systems
Parking system plus 149
Pass-through 82
Paths 17
Pause (audio/video file) 208
Pedals 92
Pedestrian detection 121
Pedestrian protection system 226
Perchlorate 286
Peripheral cameras 151
Personal route assistance 189
Phonebook
refer to Contacts 163
Playback (media) 208
Point of interest 184
Point of interest search 184
also refer to Point of interest 184
Polishing 262
Pollen filter
refer to Pollutant filter 87
Pollutant filter 87
Power closing (doors) 30
Power sources 78, 161, 207
Power windows 42
Malfunction 42
Power windows malfunction 42
pre sense
refer to Audi pre sense 139
Presentation mode 196
Presets 199
Presets list
refer to Presets 199
Pressure
Tire pressure monitoring system 258
Tires 250
Progressive steering 105
Protecting 262
Pyrotechnic elements 286

Q

quattro 106
Selective wheel torque control 108

R

Radio 197, 199
Radio text 201
Station list 197
Radio communications equipment 288
Radio equipment 288
Radio Standards Specification (RSS) 289
Rail carrier 276
Rain/light sensor
Headlights 47
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) 54
Range (fuel level) 15
Reading lights 51

Rear cross-traffic assist 155
Rear fog lights 47
Rear lid
refer to Luggage compartment lid 39
Rear shelf 82
Rear spoiler 109
Cleaning 262
Rearview camera 151
Rear window defogger 86
REAR (climate control system) 85
Reception range 197
Recirculation mode (climate control system) . 86
Recuperation 15
Refueling 223
Remote control
Garage door opener 44
Remote control key 34
Remote control key 30, 34
Convenience opening and closing 42
Key replacement 34
LED 36
Replacing the battery 36
Unlocking and locking 35
also refer to Vehicle key 34
Removing the caps (wheel bolts) 269
Repairs 286
Replacement key 34
Replacement parts 288
Replacing fuses 277
Reporting Safety Defects 288
Residual heat (automatic climate control) . . . 86
Rewinding (audio/video file) 208
Rims 254
Cleaning 262
Road carrier 276
Roof
refer to Panoramic glass roof 43
Roof load 79, 292
Roof rack 79
also refer to Roof rack 79
Route guidance
refer to Navigation 181
Running direction (tires) 271

S

Safety belts 64
Cleaning 263
Locking 76
Securing child safety seats 75
Safety belt tensioners 61
Satellite map 191
Saving fuel
Energy consumers 15
Recuperation 15
Screen
refer to Touch display 16
Screwdriver 266
SD card reader (MMI) 204
Search area (point of interest) 184
Search function
refer to Free text search 212
Seat heating 86
Seats
Adjusting the front seats 59
Cleaning 263
Folding 82
Front passenger's seat adjustment 61
Head restraints 63
Massage function 59
Memory function 67
Resetting the position 61
Storing a seat profile 67
Seat ventilation 86
Selecting a source (media) 208
Selector lever position
refer to Gear 90
Self-learning navigation
refer to Personal route assistance 189
Sensor view 114
Service interval display 239
Setting measurement units 218
Settings 218
Announcements and tones 218
Bluetooth 219
Contacts 170
Date and time 218
Language 218
Measurement units 218
Media 213
Navigation 195

4K8012721BA

Radio 202
Sound 218
Telephone 169
Time zone 218
Setting the date 218
Setting the language 218
Setting the time 218
Shift paddles 92
Ship carrier 276
Shortcut
refer to Shortcuts 21
Shortcuts 21
Shuffle 210
also refer to Shuffle 210
Side assist 143
Cleaning the sensors 261
SIM card 173
SIM card reader 160
SiriusXM alert notifications 201
Sliding/tilting sunroof
refer to Panoramic glass roof 43
Smart favorites 200
Smartphone
refer to Telephone 157
Snow chains 256
Socket 78
Software
Update 219
Sound
refer to Adjusting the sound 218
Space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire) . 272
Spare tire 272
Speed limit information
refer to Traffic sign recognition 118
Speed limits
refer to Traffic sign recognition 118
Speedometer 11
Speed warning system 118
Spoiler 109
Sport differential 106
Start/Stop system 96
Messages 97
Switching off and on 97
START ENGINE STOP (Taste) 88
Starting to drive 101
Starting (engine) 96
Steering 105
Audi drive select 103
also refer to Steering 105
Steering wheel
Adjusting 62
Adjusting manually 62
Shift paddles 92
also refer to Multifunction steering wheel . . 12
Steering wheel heating 86
Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 254
Stopover (navigation) 186
Stopping (engine) 96
Storage 79, 82
Storage compartment 79
Storage net 79
Stored stations
refer to Presets 199
Streaming
refer to Online media 206
Subtitles (DVD) 212
Sunshade
refer to Sunshade (roof) 43
Sunshade (roof) 43
Sun visors 54
Surface heating 86
Suspension 104
Audi drive select 103
Swap call 166
Symbols
Navigation 187
Traffic 193
also refer to Indicator lights 7
SYNC (climate control system) 85
System settings 218

T

Tachometer 11, 14
Tail lights
Cleaning 261
Technical data 291
Technical modifications 286
Telephone 157
Audi phone box 161
Connecting 158
Dialing a number 165
Options during a phone call 166

Playing music 205
Settings 169
SIM card 160
Telephone 2 159
Temperature display
Coolant 11
Temperature display (outside temperature) . . 14
Text input 22
Text messages 167
also refer to Text messages 167
Tie-downs 83
Tightening specification
Wheel bolts 271
Tightening specification (wheel bolts) 271
Time 15
tiptronic
refer to Manual shifting 92
Tire Mobility System (tire repair set) 266
Tires 240
Changing 268
Loose wheel warning 255
Low-profile tires 256
Repair set 266
Service life 249
Tire pressure 250
Tire pressure monitoring system 257, 258
Tire pressure table 251
Tire pressure (trailer towing) 110
Treadwear indicators 249
Unidirectional 242, 271
Uniform tire quality grading 257
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 243
Tires and vehicle load limits 252
Tool 266
Tool tips 18
Top tether anchor (securing the child safety seat) 75
Touch display
Adjusting feedback 18
Operating 16
Towing 274
Towing loop 275, 276
Towing protection monitor 33
TPMS
Tire pressure monitoring system 258
Traffic information 193, 194
Traffic jam assist
refer to Adaptive cruise assist 129
Traffic sign recognition 118
Trailer mode (navigation) 196
Trailer towing 110
Air suspension 110
Trailer load 110
Turn assist 142
Turn signal 48

U

Unable to pass 136
Uniform tire quality grading 257
Unlocking and locking 30
By remote control 35
Using the lock cylinder 32
With the Audi connect key 37
With the Audi connect key card 38
With the central locking switch 32
With the convenience key 35
Update (software) 219
Updating stations (radio) 197
USB charging port 78
USB stick
refer to Audi music interface 207

V

Vanity mirror 54
Vehicle
Care/cleaning 260
Dimensions 291
Identification data 291
Out of service 265
Raising 270
Transporting 276
Vehicle care 260
Vehicle identification number 291
Vehicle jack 266
Lifting points 270
Tire change mode 268
Vehicle key 30, 34
Vehicle start system 97
Vehicle tool kit 266
Ventilation 84

4K8012721BA

VIEW button 12
Voicemail 165
Voice recognition system 25
External 26
Operating 25

W

Warning lights
refer to Indicator lights 7
Washing matte finish paint 260
Weights 292
Wheel bolts 254
Changing a tire 268
Wheels 240
Cleaning 262
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 243
Loose wheel warning 255
Replacing 268
Tire pressure monitoring system 258
Tires and vehicle load limits 252
Wheel wrench 266
Wi-Fi
Hotspot 176
Online media 206
Wild animal recognition 121
Windows
Child safety lock 41
Cleaning and removing ice 262
Convenience opening and closing 42
Defrosting 86
Opening and closing 42
Power windows 42
Windshield
Cleaning 54
also refer to Windshield 54
Windshield washer system 54, 238
Reservoir capacity 291
Windshield wipers 54
Winter operation
Battery 236
Car washes 260
Cooling system 233
Defrosting the windows 86
Removing ice from windows 262
Seat heating 86
Snow chains 256
Tires 255
Windshield washer system 238
Winter tires 255
Wiper blades 55
Wireless CarPlay
refer to Audi smartphone interface 216

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. AUDI AG reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. This owner's manual is based on the current data available when it was printed. Text, illustrations, and specifications in this owner's manual are based on the most current information available at the time of printing, and shall not constitute a basis for liability claims.

These instructions may not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG.

For the sake of the environment

Printed on eco-friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Owner's Manual
Englisch Nordamerika 06.2018
4K8012721BA

4K8012721BA

www.audi.com